Elements of Language

FIRST COURSE

Grammar, Usage, and Mechanics

Language Skills Practice

- Lesson Worksheets
- Chapter Reviews

HOLT, RINEHART AND WINSTON
Contents

Grammar, Usage, and Mechanics Language Skills Practice
USING THIS WORKBOOK ....................................................... ix

Chapter 1
THE SENTENCE:
SUBJECT AND PREDICATE, KINDS OF SENTENCES
Sentences and Sentence Fragments A ................. 1
Sentences and Sentence Fragments B ................. 2
Sentences and Sentence Fragments C ................. 3
Subjects and Predicates ...................................... 4
Simple and Complete Subjects ......................... 5
Simple and Complete Predicates ....................... 6
Verb Phrases ................................................................. 7
Complete and Simple Subjects and Predicates ..... 8
Compound Subjects ............................................... 9
Compound Verbs ....................................................... 10
Compound Subjects and Verbs ......................... 11
Subjects and Verbs ............................................... 12
Subjects and Verbs ............................................... 13
Classifying Sentences by Purpose A ................. 14
Classifying Sentences by Purpose B .................. 15
REVIEW A: Sentences and Sentence Fragments ..... 16
REVIEW B: Subjects and Predicates .................. 17
REVIEW C: Compound Subjects and
Compound Verbs ...................................................... 18
REVIEW D: Kinds of Sentences and
Sentence Fragments .............................................. 19

Chapter 2
PARTS OF SPEECH OVERVIEW:
NOUN, PRONOUN, ADJECTIVE
The Noun ................................................................. 20
Common and Proper Nouns .............................. 21
Concrete Nouns, Abstract Nouns, and
Collective Nouns ..................................................... 22
Identifying Kinds of Nouns ................................. 23
Pronouns and Antecedents .................................. 24

Personal, Reflexive, and Intensive Pronouns ........ 25
Demonstrative Pronouns and Relative
Pronouns ................................................................. 26
Indefinite Pronouns and Interrogative
Pronouns ................................................................. 27
Identifying Kinds of Pronouns .............................. 28
Adjectives and Articles ......................................... 29
Noun or Adjective? ................................................... 30
Demonstrative Adjectives ...................................... 31
Common and Proper Adjectives ....................... 32
Noun, Pronoun, or Adjective? ............................ 33
REVIEW A: Nouns ...................................................... 34
REVIEW B: Pronouns and Antecedents ............... 35
REVIEW C: Adjectives and Articles ..................... 36

Chapter 3
PARTS OF SPEECH OVERVIEW:
VERB, ADVERB, PREPOSITION, CONJUNCTION,
INTERJECTION
The Verb ................................................................. 37
Action Verbs ............................................................ 38
Linking Verbs ........................................................... 39
Helping Verbs and Main Verbs ......................... 40
Transitive and Intransitive Verbs ....................... 41
Identifying Kinds of Verbs ................................. 42
The Adverb ............................................................... 43
Adverbs and the Words They Modify ................... 44
Adverb or Adjective? ................................................. 45
The Preposition ......................................................... 46
Prepositional Phrases .............................................. 47
Preposition or Adverb? .......................................... 48
The Conjunction A ..................................................... 49
The Conjunction B ..................................................... 50
The Interjection ......................................................... 51
Determining Parts of Speech .............................. 52
REVIEW A: Verbs ...................................................... 53
REVIEW B: Adverbs, Prepositions, Conjunctions,
Interjections ........................................................... 54
REVIEW C: Verbs, Adverbs, Prepositions,
Conjunctions, Interjections ............................. 55
Contents

Chapter 4
COMPLEMENTS: DIRECT AND INDIRECT OBJECTS, SUBJECT COMPLEMENTS
Complements ................................................................. 56
Direct Objects ................................................................. 57
Indirect Objects ................................................................. 58
Direct Objects and Indirect Objects A ................................. 59
Direct Objects and Indirect Objects B ................................. 60
Subject Complements ...................................................... 61
Predicate Nominatives ..................................................... 62
Predicate Adjectives ....................................................... 63
Predicate Nominatives and Predicate Adjectives A ............. 64
Predicate Nominatives and Predicate Adjectives B ............. 65
REVIEW A: Identifying Complements .................................. 66
REVIEW B: Identifying Complements .................................. 67
REVIEW C: Identifying Complements .................................. 68

Chapter 5
THE PHRASE: PREPOSITIONAL AND VERBAL PHRASES
Phrases ............................................................................ 69
The Prepositional Phrase .................................................. 70
The Adjective Phrase ....................................................... 71
The Adverb Phrase .............................................................. 72
Adjective and Adverb Phrases A ........................................... 73
Adjective and Adverb Phrases B ........................................... 74
The Participle ................................................................. 75
The Participial Phrase .............................................................. 76
Participles and Participle Phrases A ..................................... 77
Participles and Participle Phrases B ..................................... 78
The Infinitive ................................................................. 79
The Infinitive Phrase .............................................................. 80
Infinitives and Infinitive Phrases A ...................................... 81
Infinitives and Infinitive Phrases B ...................................... 82
Verbal Phrases A .............................................................. 83
Verbal Phrases B .............................................................. 84
REVIEW A: Identifying Phrases ............................................ 85
REVIEW B: Identifying Phrases ............................................ 86
REVIEW C: Identifying Phrases ............................................ 87

Chapter 6
THE CLAUSE: INDEPENDENT AND SUBORDINATE CLAUSES
Clauses ............................................................................ 88
The Independent Clause .................................................... 89
The Subordinate Clause ...................................................... 90
Independent and Subordinate Clauses A ................................. 91
Independent and Subordinate Clauses B ................................. 92
The Adjective Clause A ...................................................... 93
The Adjective Clause B ....................................................... 94
Relative Pronouns ............................................................... 95
The Adverb Clause A .............................................................. 96
The Adverb Clause B .............................................................. 97
Subordinating Conjunctions ................................................ 98
Adjective and Adverb Clauses A ........................................... 99
Adjective and Adverb Clauses B ........................................... 100
REVIEW A: Clauses ............................................................ 101
REVIEW B: Clauses ............................................................ 102
REVIEW C: Clauses ............................................................ 103

Chapter 7
KINDS OF SENTENCE STRUCTURE: SIMPLE, COMPOUND, COMPLEX, AND COMPOUND-COMPLEX SENTENCES
Simple Sentences .......................................................... 104
Compound Sentences ....................................................... 105
Simple or Compound? ...................................................... 106
Complex Sentences ............................................................ 107
Compound or Complex? .................................................... 108
Compound-Complex Sentences ........................................... 109
Complex or Compound-Complex? ....................................... 110
REVIEW A: Kinds of Sentence Structure ............................... 111
REVIEW B: Kinds of Sentence Structure ............................... 112
REVIEW C: Kinds of Sentence Structure ............................... 113
## Contents

### Chapter 8
AGREEMENT: SUBJECT AND VERB, PRONOUN AND ANTECEDENT

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Number</td>
<td>114</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Subject-Verb Agreement A</td>
<td>115</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Subject-Verb Agreement B</td>
<td>116</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Subject-Verb Agreement C</td>
<td>117</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Subject-Verb Agreement D</td>
<td>118</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Subject-Verb Agreement E</td>
<td>119</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Subject-Verb Agreement F</td>
<td>120</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Subject-Verb Agreement G</td>
<td>121</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Subject-Verb Agreement H</td>
<td>122</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Subject-Verb Agreement I</td>
<td>123</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Subject-Verb Agreement J</td>
<td>124</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Subject-Verb Agreement K</td>
<td>125</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pronoun-Antecedent Agreement A</td>
<td>126</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pronoun-Antecedent Agreement B</td>
<td>127</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pronoun-Antecedent Agreement C</td>
<td>128</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pronoun-Antecedent Agreement D</td>
<td>129</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pronoun-Antecedent Agreement E</td>
<td>130</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>REVIEW A: Subject-Verb Agreement</td>
<td>131</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>REVIEW B: Pronoun-Antecedent Agreement</td>
<td>132</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>REVIEW C: Agreement</td>
<td>133</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>REVIEW D: Agreement</td>
<td>134</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Chapter 9
USING VERBS CORRECTLY: PRINCIPAL PARTS, REGULAR AND IRREGULAR VERBS, TENSE, VOICE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Principal Parts of Verbs</td>
<td>135</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Regular Verbs</td>
<td>136</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Irregular Verbs A</td>
<td>137</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Irregular Verbs B</td>
<td>138</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Irregular Verbs C</td>
<td>139</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Irregular Verbs D</td>
<td>140</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Irregular Verbs E</td>
<td>141</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Verb Tense</td>
<td>142</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Verb Tense Consistency</td>
<td>143</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Chapter 10
USING PRONOUNS CORRECTLY: NOMINATIVE AND OBJECTIVE CASE FORMS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Case</td>
<td>153</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Case Forms of Personal Pronouns</td>
<td>154</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Nominative Case A</td>
<td>155</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Nominative Case B</td>
<td>156</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Objective Case A</td>
<td>157</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Objective Case B</td>
<td>158</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nominative and Objective Case Pronouns A</td>
<td>159</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nominative and Objective Case Pronouns B</td>
<td>160</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Who and Whom</td>
<td>161</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Appositives and Reflexive Pronouns</td>
<td>162</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Special Pronoun Problems</td>
<td>163</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>REVIEW A: Nominative Case</td>
<td>164</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>REVIEW B: Objective Case</td>
<td>165</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>REVIEW C: Special Pronoun Problems</td>
<td>166</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Chapter 11
USING MODIFIERS CORRECTLY: COMPARISON AND PLACEMENT

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Modifiers</td>
<td>167</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>One-Word Modifiers</td>
<td>168</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Phrases Used as Modifiers</td>
<td>169</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clauses Used as Modifiers</td>
<td>170</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Phrases and Clauses Used as Modifiers</td>
<td>171</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Contents

Regular Comparisons .............................................. 172
Irregular Comparisons ............................................ 173
Regular and Irregular Comparisons A ................. 174
Regular and Irregular Comparisons B ................. 175
Degrees of Comparison A ............................................ 176
Degrees of Comparison B ............................................ 177
Degrees of Comparison C ............................................ 178
Good and Well .......................................................... 179
Choosing Adjectives or Adverbs .............................. 180
Double Comparisons .............................................. 181
Double Negatives .................................................... 182
Misplaced Prepositional Phrases .............................. 183
Misplaced Participial Phrases ................................... 184
Misplaced Adjective Clauses ................................... 185
Misplaced Phrases and Clauses A ......................... 186
Misplaced Phrases and Clauses B ......................... 187
REVIEW A: Comparative and Superlative
Forms ................................................................. 188
REVIEW B: Special Problems in Using
Modifiers .................................................................. 189
REVIEW C: Misplaced Modifiers .............................. 190
REVIEW D: Modifiers .............................................. 191

Chapter 12
A GLOSSARY OF USAGE:
COMMON USAGE PROBLEMS
Glossary of Usage A .................................................. 192
Glossary of Usage B .................................................. 193
Glossary of Usage C .................................................. 194
Glossary of Usage D .................................................. 195
Glossary of Usage E .................................................. 196
REVIEW A: Common Usage Problems .................... 197
REVIEW B: Common Usage Problems .................... 198
REVIEW C: Common Usage Problems .................... 199

Chapter 13
CAPITAL LETTERS:
RULES FOR CAPITALIZATION
First Words and I ....................................................... 200
Proper Nouns A ....................................................... 201
Proper Nouns B ....................................................... 202
Proper Nouns C ....................................................... 203
Proper Nouns D ....................................................... 204
Proper Nouns E ....................................................... 205
Proper Nouns F ....................................................... 206
Proper Nouns G ....................................................... 207
Proper Adjectives and Course Names .................... 208
First Words, I, and Proper Nouns and
Adjectives A .......................................................... 209
First Words, I, and Proper Nouns and
Adjectives B .......................................................... 210
Personal Titles and Titles Showing Family
Relationships ......................................................... 211
Titles and Subtitles ................................................ 212
Titles A ................................................................. 213
Titles B ................................................................. 214
REVIEW A: Using Capital Letters ......................... 215
REVIEW B: Using Capital Letters ......................... 216
REVIEW C: Using Capital Letters ......................... 217

Chapter 14
PUNCTUATION:
END MARKS, COMMAS, SEMICOLONS, COLONS
End Marks ........................................................... 218
Abbreviations ......................................................... 219
End Marks and Abbreviations ......................... 220
Commas A .............................................................. 221
Commas B .............................................................. 222
Commas C .............................................................. 223
Commas D .............................................................. 224
Commas E .............................................................. 225
Commas F .............................................................. 226
Commas G .............................................................. 227
Commas H .............................................................. 228
Commas I .............................................................. 229
Commas J .............................................................. 230
Semicolons A .......................................................... 231
Semicolons B .......................................................... 232
Colons ................................................................. 233
REVIEW A: End Marks and Abbreviations .................. 234
REVIEW B: Commas .............................................. 235
Contents

REVIEW C: Semicolons and Colons ........................................... 236
REVIEW D: End Marks, Commas, Semicolons, and Colons ............. 237

Chapter 15
PUNCTUATION:
UNDERLINING (ITALICS), QUOTATION MARKS,
APOSTROPHES, HYPHENS, PARENTHESES,
BRACKETS, AND DASHES
Underlining (Italics) A ........................................... 238
Underlining (Italics) B ........................................... 239
Underlining (Italics) C ........................................... 240
Punctuating Direct and Broken Quotations ......................... 241
Quotation Marks and Paragraph Breaks ......................... 242
Quotation Marks in Dialogue ................................ 243
Quotation Marks with Titles .................................. 244
Quotation Marks Review ...................................... 245
Apostrophes A ..................................................... 246
Apostrophes B ..................................................... 247
Apostrophes C ..................................................... 248
Apostrophes D ..................................................... 249
Apostrophes E ..................................................... 250
Apostrophes F ..................................................... 251
Hyphens ............................................................. 252
Parentheses, Brackets, and Dashes .............................. 253
REVIEW A: Underlining (Italics) and Quotation Marks ............... 254
REVIEW B: Apostrophes ............................................ 255
REVIEW C: Hyphens, Parentheses, Brackets, and Dashes .......... 256
REVIEW D: Punctuation Marks .................................. 257

Chapter 16
SPELLING:
IMPROVING YOUR SPELLING
Good Spelling Habits .............................................. 258
Words with ie and ei ............................................ 259
Words with –cede, –ceed, and –cede ......................... 260
Prefixes .............................................................. 261
Suffixes A ........................................................... 262
Suffixes B ........................................................... 263
Suffixes C ........................................................... 264
Suffixes D ........................................................... 265
Suffixes Review .................................................. 266
Plurals of Nouns A .............................................. 267
Plurals of Nouns B .............................................. 268
Plurals of Nouns C .............................................. 269
Plurals of Nouns D .............................................. 270
Plurals of Nouns Review ..................................... 271
Words Often Confused A ..................................... 272
Words Often Confused B ..................................... 273
Words Often Confused C ..................................... 274
Words Often Confused D ..................................... 275
Words Often Confused E ..................................... 276
REVIEW A: Spelling Rules ..................................... 277
REVIEW B: Words Often Confused .......................... 278
REVIEW C: Spelling Rules ..................................... 279
REVIEW D: Words Often Confused and Spelling Rules .......... 280

Chapter 17
CORRECTING COMMON ERRORS
Sentence Fragments and Run-on
Sentences A ..................................................... 281
Sentence Fragments and Run-on
Sentences B ..................................................... 282
Sentence Fragments and Run-on
Sentences C ..................................................... 283
Subject-Verb Agreement A .................................... 284
Subject-Verb Agreement B .................................... 285
Pronoun-Antecedent Agreement A ............................. 286
Pronoun-Antecedent Agreement B ............................. 287
Verb Forms A ..................................................... 288
Verb Forms B ..................................................... 289
Pronoun Forms A ................................................ 290
Pronoun Forms B ................................................ 291
Comparative and Superlative Forms A ....................... 292
Comparative and Superlative Forms B ....................... 293
Double Comparisons and Double Negatives ................. 294
Misplaced Modifiers A .......................................... 295
Misplaced Modifiers B .......................................... 296

vii
Contents

Standard Usage A ....................................................... 297
Standard Usage B ....................................................... 298
Capitalization A ........................................................ 299
Capitalization B ........................................................ 300
Commas A ................................................................... 301
Commas B .................................................................... 302
Semicolons and Colons ............................................ 303
Quotation Marks and Other Punctuation A ............ 304
Quotation Marks and Other Punctuation B .......... 305
Apostrophes ................................................................ 306
All Marks of Punctuation A ........................................ 307
All Marks of Punctuation B ........................................ 308
Spelling A .................................................................... 309
Spelling B .................................................................... 310
Words Often Confused ............................................ 311
Spelling and Words Often Confused .................... 312
REVIEW A: Standard Usage ........................................ 313
REVIEW B: Mechanics ................................................ 314
REVIEW C: Standard Usage and Mechanics .......... 315
Using This Workbook

The worksheets in this workbook provide practice, reinforcement, and extension for Chapters 1–17 of *Elements of Language*.

The worksheets you will find in this workbook are traditional worksheets providing practice and reinforcement activities on every rule and on all major instructional topics in the grammar, usage, and mechanics chapters in *Elements of Language*.

The Teaching Resources include the Answer Key, located on the Teacher One Stop.
sentences and sentence fragments A

1a. A sentence is a word or word group that contains a subject and a verb and that expresses a complete thought.

A sentence fragment is a group of words that looks like a sentence but that does not contain both a subject and a verb or does not express a complete thought.

Sentences and Sentence Fragments

Exercise A Decide whether each group of words is a sentence or a sentence fragment. Write S if the group of words is a sentence or F if the group of words is a sentence fragment.

Examples [F] 1. The whales identified by markings on their tails.

[F] 2. The whales were identified by the markings on their tails.

1. Water supports the gigantic body of the whale.
2. Unable to survive on land.
3. A beached whale's lungs may be crushed.
4. Prevented by its tremendous weight.
5. Blue whales are the largest mammals.
6. The blue whale, which can weigh over 150 tons.
7. Although some whales have simple teeth.
8. Others have no teeth.
9. The sievelike whalebone in the roof of their mouths.
10. Straining krill from the water for food.

Exercise B Each item below shows a sentence fragment. On the line provided, show one way the fragment can be corrected.

Example 1. A walk in the rain. Let's go for a walk in the rain.

11. After she spoke.
12. Her research on whales.
13. Seen from shore.
14. The girl in the boat.
15. Walking on the beach.
Sentences and Sentence Fragments B

**Exercise A** Write **S** if the group of words is a sentence or **F** if it is a sentence fragment.

*Example* 1. Trombones, trumpets, and two bass drums.

_____ 1. Marching down the street in perfect rows.

_____ 2. Their helmets were topped by tall red plumes.

_____ 3. Royal blue uniforms with gold braid.

_____ 4. The drum major’s baton was keeping the beat.

_____ 5. Is that one of John Philip Sousa’s marches?

_____ 6. The clash of the cymbals and the beat of the drums.

_____ 7. The color guard marched in front of the band.

_____ 8. Then came a float covered with flowers.

_____ 9. People sitting on the float, waving to the people in the crowd.

_____ 10. What a surprise that was!

**Exercise B** On the line provided, rewrite each of the following sentence fragments as a complete sentence.

*Example* 1. The freshly washed sheets hanging on the line. From her room she could see the freshly washed sheets hanging on the line.

11. Yesterday, a fortunate turn of events. ..............................................................

12. The rain dripping from the edge of the roof. ......................................................

13. Waited just inside the front door. .................................................................

14. His remarkable hat, with a wide brim and a pheasant feather in the hatband. ........

15. The castle, built with huge, gray stones. .........................................................
Sentences and Sentence Fragments C

**1a.** A *sentence* is a word or word group that contains a subject and a verb and that expresses a complete thought.

A *sentence fragment* is a group of words that looks like a sentence but that does not contain both a subject and a verb or does not express a complete thought.

**EXERCISE A** Write **S** if the group of words is a sentence or **F** if the group of words is a sentence fragment.

*Example* 1. The leaves floating slowly down the stream.

_____ 1. Hoping for good news, she shut her eyes tightly.

_____ 2. Finished with the job.

_____ 3. Climbing carefully from branch to branch.

_____ 4. The young deer at the edge of the clearing.

_____ 5. Fireworks lit the sky.

_____ 6. Called the electrician after the storm.

_____ 7. Want to read the newspaper every morning.

_____ 8. Here comes the train!

_____ 9. When we thought about his statement for a while.

_____ 10. The bird sat on a branch high in the tree, singing merrily.

**EXERCISE B** On the lines provided, rewrite each of the following sentence fragments as a complete sentence.

*Example* 1. Disappeared into the woods.  *The deer looked around and disappeared into the woods.*

11. At dawn, the mountains in the east.

12. Was tossed and turned by the wind.

13. Because it’s snowing.

14. Whenever I see a sunset.

15. The colorful tropical fish.
Subjects and Predicates

Sentences consist of two basic parts: subjects and predicates.

1b. The **subject** tells whom or what the sentence is about.

**EXAMPLE** In English class the **highlight of the day** was the discussion of Davy Crockett.

1d. The **predicate** of a sentence tells something about the subject.

**EXAMPLE** The class **read several tall tales about this adventurous frontiersman.**

**EXERCISE A** Decide whether the underlined word or word group is the subject or the predicate. Write **S** if the word or word group is the subject or **P** if it is the predicate.

**Examples**

1. **P** Across America, Davy Crockett is a popular legendary hero.
2. **S** This native of Tennessee died at the battle of the Alamo.
3. Whether young or old, many people enjoy legends about Davy Crockett.
4. In one story, a wild stallion carries Davy on his back for three days.
5. Did you ever hear the story about Davy’s conversation with a raccoon?
6. Most of the remarkable stories about Crockett are obviously not true.
7. Still, the legendary Davy Crockett continues to capture our imaginations.

**EXERCISE B** In each sentence below, draw one line under the complete subject and two lines under the complete predicate.

**Example** 1. When did the first explorer reach the South Pole?

6. Roald Amundsen led the first successful expedition to the South Pole in 1911.
7. The well-seasoned Amundsen was nearly forty years old at the time.
8. Much earlier in life, Amundsen had planned for a career in medicine.
9. By age twenty-five, the adventurous young man had changed his goal to a life at sea.
10. Who first reached the North Pole?
11. Claiming to be first was the United States explorer Robert E. Peary.
12. Another U.S. explorer, Frederick Cook, made the same claim.
13. Peary’s claim was accepted by Congress.
14. The American admiral Richard Byrd made the first flight over the South Pole in 1929.
15. Byrd had made the first flight over the North Pole in 1926 with Floyd Bennett.
for CHAPTER 1: THE SENTENCE pages 52-53

Simple and Complete Subjects

1c. The **simple subject** is the main word or word group that tells *whom* or *what* the sentence is about.

The complete subject consists of all the words that tell *whom* or *what* a sentence is about.

**SIMPLE SUBJECT** This book on ecology will provide information for my report.

**COMPLETE SUBJECT** This book on ecology will provide information for my report.

Sometimes the simple subject and the complete subject are the same.

**EXERCISE A** Decide whether the underlined word or word group is the complete subject or the simple subject. Write **CS** for complete subject or **SS** for simple subject.

**Example** **CS** 1. The study of wildlife is fascinating and fun.

____ 1. This particular course concentrates on endangered species.

____ 2. A large variety of plants and animals are endangered.

____ 3. The U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service provides information on endangered animals.

____ 4. Some animals are threatened by a change in their surroundings.

____ 5. Considered the greatest threat to animals are the activities of human beings.

**EXERCISE B** Underline the complete subject in the following sentences. Then, circle the simple subject.

**Example** 1. The carnivorous **Tasmanian devil** grows up to thirty-one inches in length.

6. One fascinating nocturnal animal is the aardvark.

7. That strange name always makes me laugh.

8. Another animal with a strange name is the platypus.

9. One of the biggest moths in the world was named for Hercules, a mythological hero.

10. The ant lion captures ants and other insects in its sand traps.

11. The armadillo lives as far north as Texas and as far south as Argentina.

12. Some armadillos may be up to five feet long.

13. The wingspan of the American crow can reach up to three feet.

14. An intelligent bird, the crow can sometimes learn simple words and phrases.

15. Like the parrot, the crow mimics phrases of human speech.
**Simple and Complete Predicates**

1e. The **simple predicate**, or **verb**, is the main word or word group that tells something about the subject.

The **complete predicate** consists of a verb and all the words that modify the verb and complete its meaning.

**SIMPLE PREDICATE**  
Aidan **goes** to the movies every weekend.

**COMPLETE PREDICATE**  
Aidan **goes to the movies every weekend**.

---

**EXERCISE A**  
Decide whether the underlined word or word group is the complete predicate or the verb (simple predicate). Above each, write **CP** for complete predicate or **V** for verb.

**Examples**  
1. One hundred years ago, families **entertained themselves**.
   
   **CP**
   
   **V**
   
2. They **would have been astonished** by television.
   
   **V**
   
3. Motion-picture cameras and projectors **were invented** in the mid-1890s.
   
   **V**
   
4. Thomas Edison **helped develop** the movie projector.
   
   **V**
   
5. At first, movies **must have amazed** people.
   
   **V**
   
6. For many years, moviegoers **watched newsreels at movie theaters**.
   
   **V**

**EXERCISE B**  
In each of the following sentences, draw one line under the complete predicate, and then circle the verb.

**Example**  
1. **Will the temperature reach** seventy degrees before breakfast?

6. Our trip **took us through** misty mountains and shady, green forests.

7. Dairy cows **were grazing** on the lower slopes of the hills.

8. We **arrived at** our destination before late afternoon.

9. The whole family **was looking forward to** a pleasant vacation.

10. Have you ever **breathed air** as pure as country air?

11. We **planned as many outdoor activities** as possible.

12. My personal favorite was the daily canoe trip upriver.

13. My older brother **had never canoed before**.

14. Did he **catch fish** from the stream for breakfast?

15. My sister **caught several trout**.
Verb Phrases

Some simple predicates, or verbs, consist of more than one word. Such verbs are called **verb phrases** (verbs that include one or more helping verbs).

**EXAMPLES**

1. I will be using the computer for the next hour.
2. What does this error message **mean**?
3. *Have* you contacted the technical service center?

**EXERCISE A**

Underline the verb phrase in each sentence.

**Example 1.** Trish **didn’t have** an e-mail account until today.

1. I had used a computer only a few times before this school year.
2. My classmates and I will soon be computer experts.
3. Shouldn’t every student have experience with the latest technology?
4. We have been using the computer for research assignments.
5. For example, yesterday I was researching Mark Twain.
6. I had not yet read *The Adventures of Tom Sawyer*.
7. I was surfing the Internet in the computer lab.
8. I had quickly found a complete copy of the book on the Internet.
9. Since then, I have read as much of the story as possible.
10. Can you believe my good fortune?

**EXERCISE B**

In each sentence below, the underlined word group contains a word or part of a word that is not part of the verb phrase. Circle this word or word part.

**Example 1.** Dylan hasn’t **checked** his e-mail today.

11. Please don’t forget my e-mail address.
12. Every day during the holidays, I **will check** my messages.
13. I have always enjoyed your friendly notes.
14. We will probably exchange e-mails all summer long.
15. *Isn’t* technology **becoming** part of everyone’s social life?
Complete and Simple Subjects and Predicates

The **simple subject** is the main word or word group that tells *whom* or *what* the sentence is about.

The **complete subject** consists of all the words that tell *whom* or *what* a sentence is about.

**SIMPLE SUBJECT**
- The study of small insects is a hobby of mine.

**COMPLETE SUBJECT**
- The study of small insects is a hobby of mine.

The **simple predicate**, or **verb**, is the main word or word group that tells something about the subject.

The **complete predicate** consists of a verb and all the words that modify the verb and complete its meaning.

**SIMPLE PREDICATE (VERB)**
- Many people will listen with interest to facts about bugs.

**COMPLETE PREDICATE**
- Many people will listen with interest to facts about bugs.

### Exercise A
Underline each complete subject once and each complete predicate twice.

**Example 1.** Are any of your friends allergic to the dust mite?

1. The microscopic dust mite was discovered less than three decades ago.
2. This eight-legged pest is related to the tick and the spider.
3. Do you ever wash your pillow in very hot water?
4. Someone in your household should probably do so as soon as possible.
5. The daily diet of the dust mite consists of tiny skin flakes on your pillow and sheets.
6. The creatures leave tiny waste droppings in your bed.
7. These microscopic droppings mix with dust in your bedroom and in the house.
8. Unfortunately, this tainted dust may cause an allergic reaction in you or a family member.
9. How can a concerned person remove these pesky flesh-eaters from bedding?
10. Any person with laundry skills can wash bedding in the hottest wash cycle possible.

### Exercise B
Underline each simple subject once and each simple predicate (verb) twice.

**Example 1.** The tiny bedbug has often found its home in humans’ beds.

11. The body of the bedbug is flat and wingless.
12. This bloodthirsty bug belongs to the insect class.
13. The blood of mammals such as humans forms the bedbug’s diet.
14. A bedbug may grow to a length of a quarter of an inch.
15. The little insect usually sucks the blood of its host at night.
Compound Subjects

1f. A compound subject consists of two or more subjects that are joined by a conjunction and that have the same verb.

Example Numerous trees and bushes respond to seasonal weather changes.

EXERCISE A Underline the compound subject in each sentence.

Example 1. The live oak and the Douglas fir remain green year-round.

1. Live oaks and white oaks should not be confused with one another.
2. The redwood and the sequoia are found in California.
3. Douglas firs and other trees of the pine family appeal to Christmas tree shoppers.
4. Most conifers and many broad-leaved plants are evergreen.
5. Does the cypress or the magnolia bear cones?
6. Maples and elms are deciduous trees.
7. In the autumn these and other deciduous trees lose their leaves.
8. Do the reds and golds of autumn trees appeal to your sense of beauty?
9. During the fall my best friend and I always gather colorful leaves.
10. These fragile, beautiful leaves and our original poems make special cards for friends.

EXERCISE B Add a compound subject to each of the following predicates. Use and or or to join the parts of your compound subjects.

Example 1. Posters of my favorite singers and photos of my family decorate the walls of my room at home.

11. Tucked away in my school bag are ________________________________
12. Either ________________________________ will be voted Funniest Student of the Year.
13. Will ________________________________ be at your party on Saturday?
14. ________________________________ came bounding out of the murky darkness straight toward me.
15. In the school cafeteria today, ________________________________ are the two main dishes.
Compound Verbs

A compound verb consists of two or more verbs that are joined by a conjunction and that have the same subject.

**Example** Which mammal has wings and can fly like a bird?

**Exercise A** Underline each compound verb or verb phrase.

**Example 1.** Can a mammal move as fast as a car and rise as high as an airplane?

1. Some bats can fly sixty miles per hour and can also soar to a height of ten thousand feet.
2. Some species of bats fly much slower and cannot reach the same heights as others.
3. In all, more than nine hundred species of bats exist and find habitats worldwide.
4. Bats are the world’s only flying mammals and may have wingspans of over five feet.
5. The flying fox hangs in trees and can have a wingspread more than five feet across.
6. The bumblebee bat has a five-inch wingspan and weighs less than a dime.
7. All mammals, including bats and humans, grow fur or hair and nurse their young.
8. Honduran white bats grow long white fur and eat only fruit.
9. The vampire bat drinks cows’ blood but seldom consumes human blood.
10. This bat bites its prey and then hungrily laps blood from the wound.

**Exercise B** Add a compound verb to complete each of the following sentences. Use and, or, or but to join the parts of your compound verb.

**Example 1.** bats fly and roost in the darkness of the cave?

11. In the backyard, my puppy .
12. Keisha during lunch period?
13. Every so often, I .
14. We at the track after school.
15. the seventh graders ?
16. Birds and squirrels with each other at the bird feeder.
17. The runners before they went to the starting line.
18. you and Suzi before dinner?
19. Each student a paper on a topic of his or her choice.
20. The ball toward the end zone.
Compound Subjects and Verbs

**Exercise A**  Underline the compound subject or compound verb in each of the following sentences. On the line provided, write **CS** for compound subject or **CV** for compound verb.

**Examples**

1. **CS**  Salty peanuts and chewy raisins make a tasty snack.

2. **CV**  Should I eat a peanut butter sandwich or try a different filling?

3. Peanuts and soybeans are the two most important sources of vegetable oil.

4. The U.S. scientist George Washington Carver researched the peanut and found more than three hundred uses for it.

5. Aren’t China and India the two major producers of peanuts in the world today?

6. Peanut plants are native to South America and belong to the pea family.

7. Does your family ever make old-fashioned peanut butter or buy it at the supermarket?

**Exercise B**  Combine each pair of sentences to create one sentence with a compound subject or a compound verb. Write the new sentence on the line provided. When you create a sentence with a compound subject, you may need to change the verb, too.

**Example**

1. Than’s father is an excellent cook. Lily’s mother is an excellent cook, too. 

   Than’s father and Lily’s mother are excellent cooks.

2. The private eye ducked behind the bookcase. She listened to the suspects’ argument.

3. The birdbath attracts many birds. So does the small, wooden bird feeder.

4. The plumber fixed the pipe beneath the sink. He also checked the water pressure.

5. The plane lifted off. It soared quickly out of sight.

6. Tweedledum is a character created by Lewis Carroll. So is Tweedledee.
The subject tells whom or what the sentence is about.

The simple predicate, or verb, is the main word or word group that tells something about the subject.

A compound subject consists of two or more subjects that are joined by a conjunction and that have the same verb.

A compound verb consists of two or more verbs that are joined by a conjunction and that have the same subject.

Exercise A  In each of the following sentences, underline the subject once and the verb twice.

Example 1. A calculator or an abacus will help you and will speed your calculations.

1. Have you or one of your friends ever used an abacus?
2. The abacus is an ancient arithmetic tool and consists of a frame with vertical wires or slots.
3. Beads or balls may be moved up or down in the slots in various combinations.
4. In this way, the user quickly performs calculations such as addition and subtraction.
5. You and your friends can easily find more information about the abacus on the Internet.

Exercise B  Combine each pair of sentences to create one sentence. Write the new sentence on the line provided. Then, underline the subject once and the verb twice. When you create a sentence with a compound subject, you may need to change the verb, too.

Example 1. Volleyball is a popular sport at my school. Football is also popular.

Volleyball and football are popular sports at my school.

6. Basketball can give you a good cardiovascular workout. Track can do so, too.

7. Blue is our school color. Gold is our other school color.

8. When will you practice your trumpet? When will you finish your homework?

9. Will you go to the game with Sandra’s family? Will Bernard go with Sandra’s family?

10. Members of the yearbook staff take photographs at every game. Journalists on the newspaper staff take photographs at every game.
Subjects and Verbs B

1b. The subject tells whom or what the sentence is about.

1e. The simple predicate, or verb, is the main word or word group that tells something about the subject.

1f. A compound subject consists of two or more subjects that are joined by a conjunction and that have the same verb.

1g. A compound verb consists of two or more verbs that are joined by a conjunction and that have the same subject.

Exercise In each of the following sentences, underline the subject once and the verb twice. Then, on the line provided, write CV if the verb is a compound verb, CS if the subject is a compound subject, or CV, CS if both the subject and the verb are compound. Write N if neither is compound.

Example CS 1. My mother and brother want a new puppy.

1. Have you or Kimberly found your tap shoes yet?

2. Alec or James will wash and dry the dishes after dinner tonight.

3. In my school, both the Spanish club and the German club have at least twenty members.

4. Where are the batteries for this flashlight?

5. At the end of the school year, we will either take a class trip or have a party.

6. She added the numbers and then checked the answer.


8. Andrés and Clarence searched the room and looked on all the shelves.

9. You should wear sturdy shoes and pack a raincoat.

10. Are you expecting rain during the hike?

11. The newspaper and the radio carried stories about the weather.

12. Fog and rain are expected this afternoon.

13. We could cancel the hike and meet at the museum.

14. The new exhibit about Egypt is open and should be interesting.

15. Do you and your sister take the bus or walk to school?

16. We usually take the bus in the morning and walk home in the afternoon.

17. She has band practice and works in the library after school.

18. My friend Nita and I belong to several of the same clubs.

19. Nita walks home with my sister and me on Tuesdays and Thursdays.

20. Either Max or his brother Sam rented a boat and went fishing last summer.
Classifying Sentences by Purpose A

A declarative sentence makes a statement and ends with a period.

An imperative sentence gives a command or makes a request. Most imperative sentences end with a period. A strong command ends with an exclamation point.

An interrogative sentence asks a question and ends with a question mark.

An exclamatory sentence shows excitement or expresses strong feeling and ends with an exclamation point.

EXERCISE A On the line provided, write DEC if the sentence is declarative, IMP if it is imperative, INT if it is interrogative, or EXC if it is exclamatory.

Example  EXC 1. What a fascinating study ancient cultures are!

1. Use Roman numerals whenever you write an outline, Margo.
2. Did you know Roman numerals consist of seven individual letters used as numbers?
3. These letters are I, V, X, L, C, D, and M.
4. Imagine building a boat with no nails or screws.
5. What a difficult job that would be!

EXERCISE B On the line provided, write DEC if the sentence is declarative, IMP if it is imperative, INT if it is interrogative, or EXC if it is exclamatory. Then, add the correct punctuation to the end of the sentence.

Example  IMP 1. Consider these facts.

6. I have recently learned some interesting facts from American history
7. Consider the similarities between President Lincoln and President Kennedy
8. President Abraham Lincoln was elected in 1860
9. Did you know that John F. Kennedy was elected president in 1960
10. It is tragic that both Lincoln and Kennedy were assassinated
11. The vice presidents under both Lincoln and Kennedy were named Johnson
12. What a strange coincidence that is
13. Read about the investigations into the deaths of both men
14. How many people believe that there was a conspiracy in Kennedy’s assassination
15. There are still unanswered questions about these deaths
Exercise A On the line provided, write \text{DEC} if the sentence is declarative, \text{IMP} if it is imperative, \text{INT} if it is interrogative, or \text{EXC} if it is exclamatory. Then, add the correct punctuation to the end of the sentence.

Example \text{INT} 1. Does this pencil belong to you? 

\begin{align*}
&1. \text{This sculptor recycles metal in her work} \\
&2. \text{Isn’t that the rim of a bicycle wheel} \\
&3. \text{Try to identify as many items as possible} \\
&4. \text{She has transformed junk into animals and other recognizable forms} \\
&5. \text{What a sense of humor she has}
\end{align*}

Exercise B On the lines provided, rewrite each of the following sentences according to the instructions in parentheses. Be sure to use correct end punctuation in your new sentences. Hint: You may need to add or delete words.

Example 1. That piece of fabric is from India. (Rewrite as an interrogative sentence.) 

\text{Is that piece of fabric from India?}

6. The colors in the stained-glass windows are brilliant. (Rewrite as an exclamatory sentence.) 

7. Do I have time to get to the store before it closes? (Rewrite as a declarative sentence.) 

8. You forgot to bring the library books to school. (Rewrite as an interrogative sentence.) 

9. What an exciting race that was! (Rewrite as a declarative sentence.) 

10. You should turn off the lights when you leave the room. (Rewrite as an imperative sentence.)
Exercise  Decide whether each of the following word groups is a sentence or a sentence fragment.
Write  S  if the group of words is a sentence or  F  if the group of words is a sentence fragment.

Examples  \( \text{F} \) 1. Because Dan has a kayak.
\( \text{S} \) 2. Tatiana is listening to her new CD.

1. Thought Roseanne and Steve had missed their flight to Atlanta.
2. Pasta salad is especially good on a hot day.
3. In the bedroom closet behind the ironing board.
4. His latest excuse but definitely not his most original.
5. Please take this gift home to your stepsister Lorena.
6. I would appreciate some help with this art project.
7. The space shuttle on the launching pad.
8. Stretching for miles in every direction.
9. Whenever he goes out into the bright sunlight.
10. That was a dazzling display of fireworks!
11. Because of the loud noise.
12. After a short while, the beaver began building a dam.
13. You must have heard about the mysterious Bermuda Triangle.
14. When she wrote her story for the local newspaper.
15. Although everyone here had a good reason.
16. Scientists keep searching for the answer to the problem.
17. On the other side of the basketball court and under the scoreboard.
18. Very few people actually saw what happened.
19. Without the benefit of modern medicine.
20. The car swerved sharply to avoid hitting the pedestrian.
21. Mr. Liu, an organic farmer with a large farm in Texas.
22. What a sweet rabbit Scooter is!
23. Completion unlikely at any point in the near future.
24. Watch the satellite traveling across the night sky.
25. Saving money in a bank account.
**Exercise**  In each of the following sentences, underline the complete subject once and the complete predicate twice. Then, circle the simple subject and the verb.

**Example 1.** The playful, intelligent *dolphin* belongs to the toothed whale family.

1. An unusual event occurred at our beach last summer.
2. Two girls were jogging along the beach.
3. They heard a strange sound.
4. Thrashing around in the water was a dark object.
5. A helpless dolphin was being tossed around by the waves.
6. The worried joggers called the Center for Coastal Studies.
7. Two dolphin experts soon arrived at the beach.
8. They moved into the cold surf near the dolphin.
9. Scientists at the local aquarium cared for the dolphin.
10. The healthy dolphin was released into the ocean several months later.
11. Have you ever been to the ocean?
12. Dolphins and whales are mammals, not fish.
13. An aquatic mammal, such as a dolphin or whale, breathes air through a blowhole on top of the head.
14. Fish have gills.
15. Most salmon are born in fresh water but live part of their lives in the ocean.
16. The thousand-mile migration of the salmon fascinates me.
17. Fish “ladders” are built near dams and help the salmon on their voyage.
18. Leaps of more than ten feet have been recorded.
19. The longest spawning trip exceeds two thousand miles.
20. Salmon spawn in fresh water.
21. A Pacific salmon spawns in the stream of its birth and then dies.
22. An Atlantic salmon may spawn as many as three times in its lifetime.
23. The female fish digs several saucer-shaped nests in the bed of a stream.
24. One ten-pound female may deposit up to ten thousand eggs at spawning time.
25. A smolt is a young salmon.
Review C: Compound Subjects and Compound Verbs

**EXERCISE**  Underline the compound verb in each of the following sentences. Then, on the line provided, rewrite the sentence so that it has a compound subject as well. Use and or or to join the parts of the compound subject. You may need to change the verb, too.

Example 1. Before school each morning, Darnell has been doing push-ups and lifting weights.

Before school each morning, Jalinda and Darnell have been doing push-ups and lifting weights.

1. Today my cousin Luke will hike and take photographs of the land behind his house. ________

2. Before tests, Shanti reviews and summarizes all her notes from class. ________________

3. The pilot smiled and waved at her crew. __________________________________________________________________________

4. The sleet reduced visibility at the airport and delayed the flight. _____________________

5. The new bus driver joined us at Stonehenge and accompanied us to London. _____________

6. The table was cleaned thoroughly and given a fresh coat of paint. _____________________

7. Rachel is singing a song and dancing for the talent show. _____________________________

8. Cars filled the roadways and created a massive traffic jam. ___________________________

9. My brother Angelo frowned and sighed but finally did the yardwork. ___________________

10. Tara takes ice-skating lessons and hopes to skate professionally. _____________________
**EXERCISE**  Decide whether each group of words is a sentence or a sentence fragment. If it is a sentence fragment, write *F* on the line provided. If it is a sentence, write *DEC* if it is declarative, *IMP* if it is imperative, *INT* if it is interrogative, or *EXC* if it is exclamatory. Then, add the appropriate end punctuation to each sentence.

**Examples**  
1. Studying Spanish, German, and French next semester  
   *F*

2. By next semester, will you know the months of the year in three languages?
   *INT*

---

1. Named for the Roman goddess Juno

2. Please bring me that calendar

3. When will we plan the birthday party for Julio

4. How exciting it was to win a gold medal

5. Please be careful with the bleach, Suzi

6. After Emily and Rosa climbed slowly up the side of the hill

7. How magnificent the view of the valley is

8. Can you see the village from there

9. Hand me the binoculars, please

10. As a hawk soared gracefully over the valley

11. Waiting for fifteen minutes in the rain

12. Watch out

13. How often do you baby-sit for the McCluskys

14. I promise that I won’t forget about our next appointment

15. Since repairing the broken appliance

16. Please don’t stand so close to the curb

17. Carrying my little sister all the way across the rickety bridge and to safety

18. Put down your pencils and pass your papers forward

19. Will be sitting in front of you tomorrow after lunch

20. Would you volunteer
The Noun

A **noun** is a word or word group that is used to name a person, a place, a thing, or an idea.

A **compound noun** is a single noun made up of two or more words used together. The compound noun may be written as one word, as a hyphenated word, or as two or more words.

**PERSONS** Diana Chang, poet, police officer, Cherokees

**PLACES** living room, town, New South Wales, island

**THINGS** sandwich, television, Father’s Day, Statue of Liberty

**IDEAS** fear, self-control, truth, sympathy

---

**Exercise A** Underline each noun in the following sentences.

**Example 1.** A volcano is a **hole** in the **crust** of the earth through which lava and gases may erupt.

1. When a volcano erupted in the Sunda Strait of Indonesia, the whole world felt the effects.
2. The noise from the eruption of Krakatoa could be heard at great distances.
3. The force from the blast could be felt as far away as Hawaii.
4. A cloud of ash circled the globe and created spectacular sunsets.
5. Volcanic eruptions are powerful forces that can affect the entire planet and its living creatures.

**Exercise B** Underline each noun in the following sentences. Then, identify each compound noun by writing **CN** above it.

**Example 1.** A **letter** from **Uncle Rufino** arrived yesterday.

6. Please put these new books in the bookcase over there.
7. Takako Mioshi, an exchange student, is here from Japan for the year.
8. Mr. Morales was fascinated by the koalas at the San Diego Zoo.
9. Manuel is the new goalie on the team.
10. Stephanie is having a party after the football game.
11. Did your grandparents go to Hawaii for a convention or a vacation?
12. The storm interrupted the final game of the World Series.
13. The journalists learned to have faith in their editor in chief.
14. Lucy, a young chimpanzee, learned several words in sign language.
15. Ryan always puts a little humor into his term papers.
Common and Proper Nouns

A common noun names any one of a group of persons, places, things, or ideas and is generally not capitalized. A proper noun names a particular person, place, thing, or idea and begins with a capital letter.

COMMON  pilot, book  PROPER  Willa Brown, The Once and Future King

EXERCISE A  Underline each common noun once and each proper noun twice in the sentences below.

Example 1. My favorite book, Twenty Thousand Leagues Under the Sea, was written by Jules Verne.

1. Jules Verne must have loved adventure.
2. Born in France, he worked on a ship when he was a boy.
3. Later he studied law in Paris, but he preferred a career in literature.
4. He wrote a popular play, which provided only a little income.
5. Verne found a job as a stockbroker, but he also pursued his literary dreams.
6. He wrote books about imaginary adventures, such as A Journey to the Center of the Earth.
7. The public loved these stories and eagerly awaited each new novel.
8. Many of his books, including Around the World in Eighty Days, have been made into movies.
9. These novels by Verne influenced another famous writer, H. G. Wells.
10. Wells wrote over one hundred books, including The War of the Worlds.

EXERCISE B  Revise the following sentences by substituting a proper noun for each common noun. You might have to change some other words in each sentence. You may make up proper names.

Example 1. That parrot belongs to my sister. Oscar belongs to Lucinda

11. Don’t forget to take this book to your next class. ________________________________

12. I would love to travel to two other countries. ________________________________

13. To get to that city, you need to get on a highway. ________________________________

14. Before we go to the theater, I should tell my uncle where we’ll be. ________________________________

15. I am learning to speak two more languages. ________________________________

Grammar, Usage, and Mechanics: Language Skills Practice 21
Concrete Nouns, Abstract Nouns, and Collective Nouns

A **concrete noun** names a person, place, or thing that can be perceived by one or more of the senses (sight, hearing, taste, touch, smell). An **abstract noun** names an idea, a feeling, a quality, or a characteristic.

**Concrete**
- song
- hubcap
- dog

**Abstract**
- loyalty
- dishonor
- trust

A **collective noun** is a word that, even when it is singular, names a group.

**Collective**
- audience
- family
- batch
- herd
- class

**Exercise A**
Decide whether each of the following nouns is concrete or abstract. Identify each one by writing **CON** for concrete or **ABS** for abstract.

**Examples**

- **CON** 1. locker
- **ABS** 2. enthusiasm
- 3. humor
- 4. sympathy
- 5. Great Barrier Reef
- 6. bridge
- 7. dishonesty
- 8. Jupiter
- 9. procrastination
- 10. Queen Elizabeth II

**Exercise B**
Underline each collective noun in the following sentences.

**Example**
1. The choir practiced in the new auditorium.

11. I sing tenor in a quartet.
12. Everyone in the group received a door prize.
13. The team arrived early and went to the locker room.
14. As I watched, a flock of geese flew overhead.
15. The jury filed into their seats and listened to the judge’s instructions.
16. During lunch today the committee will meet to plan fund-raising events.
17. Can you find your way through this thick grove of trees?
18. The cat and her litter found a home in my dog’s abandoned doghouse.
19. When Jared hit the beehive with a stick, a swarm of angry bees flew out.
20. For this short flight, the plane needs a crew of only three.
Identifying Kinds of Nouns

A common noun names any one of a group of persons, places, things, or ideas and is generally not capitalized. A proper noun names a particular person, place, thing, or idea and begins with a capital letter.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>COMMON</th>
<th>PROPER</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>city, monarch</td>
<td>Boston, Queen Victoria</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

A concrete noun names a person, place, or thing that can be perceived by one or more of the senses (sight, hearing, taste, touch, smell). An abstract noun names an idea, a feeling, a quality, or a characteristic.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CONCRETE</th>
<th>ABSTRACT</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>hat, water, finger</td>
<td>shyness, fear, need</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Exercise**  Identify each underlined noun in the following sentences by writing above it COM for common or PRO for proper and CON for concrete or ABS for abstract.

**Example** 1. Have you ever seen a blindfish?

1. Mrs. Perry was planning a field trip to Carlsbad Caverns in New Mexico.
2. Parts of Carlsbad Caverns are still unexplored.
3. The giant formations produce feelings of awe in many visitors.
4. She captured our interest by describing cave-dwelling animals and fish.
5. Blindfish live in dark areas such as caves and underground streams.
6. A distinguishing characteristic of these fish is blindness.
7. They have nerves on their bodies that have a special sensitivity.
8. When tiny animals such as amphipods move, the blindfish senses the movement.
9. In this way, the fish can find and eat smaller animals without using sight.
10. A blindfish may eat its own offspring if it senses their movement.
11. These young fish stop moving when they feel something swimming nearby.
12. Blindfish may be found in Mammoth Cave in Kentucky and in other caves across the U.S.
13. Mammoth Cave is part of the longest known cave system in the world.
14. As a result of our field trip to the caves, I developed a desire to learn more.
15. I learned that geologists study caves and the stalactites and stalagmites within.
16. The Geology Department at Idaho State University has an interesting Web site.
17. It contains photos, information, and links to other Web sites about geology.
18. All of this fascinating information has increased my enthusiasm and curiosity.
19. My cousin belongs to a group of cave explorers.
20. Before I join, I will have to conquer my fear of the dark.
A pronoun is a word used in place of one or more nouns or pronouns.

The word or word group that a pronoun stands for (or refers to) is called its antecedent. Sometimes the antecedent is not stated.

**EXAMPLE**

John said he would wash his car this afternoon.
I told myself not to worry.

**EXERCISE A**

In the following sentences, underline each pronoun once. If a pronoun has a stated antecedent, draw an arrow from the pronoun to the antecedent.

**Examples**

1. Natasha forgot to bring her notebook.
2. I will tell you about interesting and funny moral tales.

1. You have probably read or heard Aesop’s fables.
2. Aesop was once a Greek slave; he may have lived on the island of Samos.
3. Aesop told stories about animals with human traits; they spoke and thought like people.
4. One well-known story is about a boy who cried “Wolf!” even though he saw no wolf.
5. Later, when the boy was in real danger from a wolf, he again cried “Wolf!”
6. The villagers had grown tired of the boy’s false alarms, and they ignored his cries.
7. Have you heard the story about the ant and the grasshopper?
8. The grasshopper chirps and plays during summer, and it does not prepare for winter.
9. The ant works hard at storing food, and this food saves it from starving in the winter.
10. Reading these tales is enjoyable, and it doesn’t take long.

**EXERCISE B**

Cross out the repeated word or word group in each of the following sentences, and write an appropriate pronoun above it.

**Example**

Riding a bike is good exercise, but riding a bike can be difficult in cold weather.

11. Larry, will Larry please work this math problem?
12. These plants do not bear flowers, nor are these plants poisonous.
13. My ten-year-old cat is jealous, and my ten-year-old cat has not accepted the new kitten.
14. When Amanda and Kirsten got to class, Amanda and Kirsten realized they were late.
15. Learning to type is slow, but learning to type is worthwhile.
Personal, Reflexive, and Intensive Pronouns

A personal pronoun refers to the one speaking (first person), the one spoken to (second person), or the one spoken about (third person). A reflexive pronoun refers to the subject and is necessary to the meaning of the sentence. An intensive pronoun emphasizes a noun or another pronoun and is unnecessary to the meaning of the sentence.

PERSONAL I would like to invite you to a party.

REFLEXIVE I allowed myself a budget of fifty dollars.

INTENSIVE She herself delivered the invitations.

EXERCISE Underline the pronoun or pronouns in each of the following sentences. Then, identify the kind of pronoun each is. Above each pronoun write P for personal, R for reflexive, or I for intensive.

Examples 1. I will call Farid after school myself.
   2. Lucia smiled at herself in the mirror.

1. Sara picked up a handout for herself.
2. Are you aware of the dangers of smoking?
3. We should not let ourselves overlook the plight of the homeless.
4. “I will not tolerate lateness,” the band leader told us.
5. The principal himself called me with the good news.
6. “Jogging is not for me,” said Dr. Wong.
7. The cat found a hiding place for itself.
8. After the twins frosted the cake, they looked for candles to put on it.
9. Before you mop the floor, please move the chairs.
10. Don’t wear the new boots until you waterproof them.
11. I can’t believe they won the contest!
12. Sometimes I make myself laugh.
13. Max asked, “Are you ready to come with me and do our homework now?”
14. Ms. Lin found herself looking forward to the afternoon classes.
15. Where will you find yourself a sweater like Kerry’s?
16. The choir director said that he himself would sing a solo.
17. If you want to join us, call him now.
18. The dog itself opened the gate!
19. Have you met them?
20. The climbers pulled themselves onto the narrow ledge.
Demonstrative Pronouns and Relative Pronouns

A *demonstrative pronoun* points out a person, a place, a thing, or an idea. A *relative pronoun* introduces a subordinate clause.

**DEMONSTRATIVE**

These are the best strawberries of the summer!

That was the worst movie I have ever seen.

**RELATIVE**

Apricots, which are smaller than peaches, make tasty pies.

The fence that borders our property needs repair.

**EXERCISE**

In each of the following sentences, underline the demonstrative or relative pronoun. Above each pronoun write *D* if it is demonstrative or *R* if it is relative.

**Examples 1.**

1. This is an updated map of Africa.

2. Africa, which is the second largest continent, has several deserts.

1. The equator, which crosses Africa, is at 0° latitude.

2. These are the Atlantic and the Indian Oceans.

3. Chinua Achebe, whose native country is Nigeria, won the Nobel Prize in literature in 1989.

4. The water that lies to the west of Africa is the Atlantic Ocean.

5. “That is the small African republic, Togo,” Mr. Lawson told us.

6. The Mediterranean Sea, which borders Africa to the north, is the largest inland sea in the world.

7. Commercial fishers who work in the Mediterranean Sea catch tuna, sardines, and anchovies.

8. These are among the four hundred species of fish in this sea.

9. Is that the Kalahari Desert or the Sahara?

10. The country in Africa that fascinates me most is Egypt.

11. Joseph Conrad, whom I studied in English class, wrote a novel about the Congo.

12. Captain Marlow, who is the main character of *Heart of Darkness*, is a sailor.

13. Libya, which lies south of the Mediterranean Sea, borders the western side of Egypt.

14. “Is this Madagascar?” I asked, pointing to an island east of Africa.

15. The map doesn’t show the Tropic of Capricorn, which runs through Madagascar.

16. That is not possible!

17. The Tropic of Capricorn is an imaginary line that marks the southern edge of the tropics.

18. That is the Tropic of Cancer, the northern boundary of the tropics.

19. They are the southernmost and northernmost points at which the sun is directly overhead.

20. These are really hard to see on this map.
Indefinite Pronouns and Interrogative Pronouns

An indefinite pronoun refers to a person, a place, a thing, or an idea that may or may not be specifically named. An interrogative pronoun introduces a question.

**INDEFINITE**
- He said that anyone can do this simple trick.
- Most of my friends drink milk.

**INTERROGATIVE**
- Who knows the words to the song?
- Which of these books have you read?

**Exercise A** Identify each underlined pronoun in the following sentences by writing above it **IND** if it is indefinite or **INT** if it is interrogative.

**Examples**
1. Do both of these costumes belong to you? **IND**
2. What did you and Tom do on Friday night? **INT**

3. Will many attend the school play? **IND**
4. Several of my friends are attending with me. **IND**
5. Who did you say is the lead actor? **INT**
6. Nobody is more excited about the play than I! **IND**
7. Which of the costumes do you prefer? **INT**

**Exercise B** In each sentence, underline the indefinite or interrogative pronoun. Identify each pronoun by writing above it **IND** if it is indefinite or **INT** if it is interrogative.

**Examples**
1. Did she say that either of these answers is correct? **IND**
2. “Whose is this sweater?” asked Ms. Martin. **INT**

3. Whom are you tutoring in Spanish? **IND**
4. Everything is starting to make sense now. **IND**
5. Few could restrain their laughter at the unexpected joke. **IND**
6. Will somebody erase the chalkboards, please? **IND**
7. Others are low-fat, such as the baked chicken and rice. **IND**
8. Who will volunteer as a tutor this semester? **IND**
9. Whose is this backpack blocking the aisle? **INT**
10. Many of the dishes in the cafeteria are vegetarian. **IND**
11. Which of these science experiments is yours? **INT**
12. The principal announced that all will participate in the fund-raising event. **IND**
Exercise

Underline the pronoun or pronouns in each of the following sentences. Identify each by writing above it \textit{PER} for personal, \textit{REF} for reflexive, \textit{INTEN} for intensive, \textit{DEM} for demonstrative, \textit{REL} for relative, \textit{IND} for indefinite, or \textit{INTER} for interrogative.

\textbf{Example 1.} What has she learned about peaches?

1. These are Elberta peaches, which are very popular in the United States.
2. Nobody really knows where the fruit came from originally.
3. We read a story that may or may not be true.
4. Who started the story?
5. A man in Georgia, whose name was Samuel Rumph, grew peaches.
6. One of them was particularly beautiful.
7. The man named the peach after his wife, Elberta.
8. He soon found himself at the forefront of commercial peach production in Georgia.
9. He developed ways to ship peaches so they would arrive in good condition.
10. The Elberta peach itself is very firm and ships well.
Adjectives and Articles

An adjective is a word that is used to modify a noun or a pronoun.

An adjective tells what kind, which one, how much, or how many.

WHAT KIND Anzu bought red shoes.

HOW MUCH There is no water there.

WHICH ONE Viktor is my oldest brother.

HOW MANY I discovered several photos.

The adjectives a, an, and the are called articles. A and an are called indefinite articles because they refer to any member of a general group. The is called the definite article because it refers to someone or something in particular.

INDEFINITE Julio went to see a movie.

DEFINITE The U.S. flag is red, white, and blue.

Exercise A In the following sentences underline each adjective once, and underline each article a second time. Then, above each article write D for definite or I for indefinite.

Example 1. The ripe berries attracted two birds and many squirrels.

1. Yes, Sylvia has an older brother.
2. The sudden wind chilled us.
3. Someday you may own a small electric car.
4. Edna ordered a large sandwich with extra onions.
5. The mysterious noises terrified everyone.

Exercise B Underline all the adjectives except the articles. Then, draw an arrow from each underlined adjective to the word that it modifies.

Example 1. I love scary stories!

6. Mary Shelley wrote a horror story.
7. The plot of the story was imaginative.
8. One rainy summer, she had listened to several stories about ghosts.
9. Friends had made up scary stories about monsters.
10. Someone challenged the group to write a ghost story.
11. Mary thought about the stories all night and had a strange nightmare.
12. She dreamed of a young scientist who created a monster.
13. Mary wrote a story of the ghastly nightmare and called it Frankenstein.
14. The eerie novel was very successful.
15. Several movies have been made from it.
Noun or Adjective?

Many words that can stand alone as nouns can also be used as adjectives modifying nouns or pronouns.

**NOUN** school, summer  **ADJECTIVE** school bus, summer vacation

**Exercise A**  Decide whether the underlined word in each of the following sentences is used as a noun or an adjective. Above each write \( N \) for noun or \( A \) for adjective.

**Example 1.**  Please place your lunch boxes on the shelf.

1. This town needs a good dress shop.
2. Allison bought a white dress for the dance.
3. The glass top on that table is difficult to clean.
4. This glass is still dirty.
5. Tomorrow is my birthday.
6. Ramona mailed a birthday card to her grandmother.
7. Put some of this good Texas barbecue sauce on your sandwich.
8. Sam Houston was the president of Texas before it became a state.
9. Many attended the holiday festival.
10. I received many cards during the holiday.

**Exercise B**  Use each of the following words in two sentences. In the first sentence, use the word as a noun. In the second sentence, use the word as an adjective.

**Example 1.**  apple  

11. Would you like an apple in your lunch? 
   I would prefer apple juice.

12. telephone 

13. paper 

14. mouse 

15. hat 

---

Elements of Language | First Course
Demonstrative Adjectives

This, that, these, and those can be used both as adjectives and as pronouns. When they modify a noun or pronoun, they are called demonstrative adjectives. When they are used alone, they are called demonstrative pronouns.

**ADJECTIVES**
- These bags are heavy.
- That sound is annoying.

**PRONOUNS**
- Please hold these for me.
- Why won't she stop that?

**EXERCISE A** Identify each underlined word in the following sentences by writing above it DA for demonstrative adjective or DP for demonstrative pronoun.

**Examples**
1. This wind cuts like a knife.
2. This must be the coldest day of winter.
1. Is that cloth as soft as silk?
2. Those peppers burn like fire!
3. These are as valuable as gold.
4. Listen to this girl sing.
5. That is as black as coal.

**EXERCISE B** Underline the demonstrative adjective or demonstrative pronoun in each of the following sentences. Then, identify each one by writing above it DA for demonstrative adjective or DP for demonstrative pronoun.

**Examples**
1. I asked whether that would be on the test.
2. Will you help me with this homework?
6. These marigolds are a rich shade of gold.
7. On the other hand, those are pale yellow.
8. My windowsill garden contains these herbs: chives, parsley, and basil.
9. Those pepper plants will provide us with plenty of jalapeños.
10. This is the perfect place for the bed of pansies.
11. That plant is poisonous, so don’t let the dog chew it.
12. How deeply should I plant these?
13. Should I plant those sunflowers near the fence?
14. That is where I’ll place the birdbath.
15. Will those survive the first frost?
Common and Proper Adjectives

*Common adjectives* are generally not capitalized. A *proper adjective* is formed from a proper noun. Like a proper noun, it is capitalized.

**COMMON ADJECTIVE**

Did you see beautiful butterflies?

**PROPER NOUN**

This butterfly is found in Africa.

**PROPER ADJECTIVE**

The African giant swallowtail is a large butterfly.

**Exercise A** In the following sentences, underline all common adjectives once and all proper adjectives twice. Do not underline the articles *a, an,* and *the.*

**Example 1.** I have learned to prepare delicious Japanese sushi.

1. I like melodious and eerie Celtic music.
2. Do you prefer Spanish architecture?
3. I’m fascinated by the stories from Greek mythology.
4. Would you come to my New Year’s Eve party?
5. Was T. S. Eliot American or English?
6. I love your Australian accent!
7. I am studying Roman architecture as well as modern styles of building.
8. I asked for a gray pony for my thirteenth birthday, but I didn’t get one.
9. Ashley Bryan is a master storyteller.
10. Bryan has also illustrated books such as *It’s Kwanzaa Time!*

**Exercise B** Change each of the following proper nouns into a proper adjective, and use the adjective to modify a noun.

**Example 1.** Asia

Asian friend

11. Italy

12. Buddhism

13. Midwest

14. Labor Day

15. California
**Exercise** Identify each underlined word in the following sentences by writing above it **N** for noun, **P** for pronoun, or **A** for adjective.

Example 1. The museum is featuring an exhibit on **A** Egyptian mummies.

1. Many have heard about how the pony express carried the mail in 1860 and 1861.
2. However, the pony express lasted only eighteen months.
3. Among its young riders was William Cody, later known as Buffalo Bill.
4. The arrival of transcontinental **A** telegraph lines put an end to the pony express.
5. Even the fastest riders could not compete with the **A** telegraph.
7. A scarf made of wool may be warmer than a **A** silk scarf.
8. **A** These plants have poisonous leaves.
9. I can’t believe you said that!
10. This is just a **A** summer shower, so it won’t last long.
11. **A** Louis Braille invented a special alphabet that allows people with visual impairments to read.
12. The alphabet uses raised dots that the visually impaired can feel.
13. The dots are arranged in patterns, with different patterns standing for individual letters or sounds.
14. A person reads Braille by rubbing one or two fingertips over the elevated dots.
15. Using a pointed stylus and a **A** metal slate, a person can write Braille by hand.
16. People also use **A** Braille typewriters and computers.
17. **A** These are the short stories that my friends and I wrote.
18. **A** This story is especially funny, and I wrote it.
19. **A** All of us are going to enter the annual short story contest.
20. **A** One of us is sure to win the prize, which is a scholarship to a summer writing workshop.

**Grammar, Usage, and Mechanics: Language Skills Practice**
Review A: Nouns

EXERCISE A  Underline the nouns in the following sentences.


1. William Sydney Porter had talent.
2. The man was a writer.
3. His pen name was O. Henry.
4. Porter spent three years in jail.
5. His first story was published by St. Paul Pioneer Press while he was a prisoner.
6. Owney was a stray dog found behind a post office in New York.
7. The clerks in the post office gave food to the friendly animal.
8. Owney traveled all over the United States, hitching rides on trains.
9. Soon, his collar jingled with metal tags from cities all over the country.
10. Owney traveled to Europe by boat and then was given a jacket to hold all the tags.

EXERCISE B  Decide whether each underlined noun in the following sentences is common or proper, concrete or abstract. Then, on the line provided, write COM for common or PROP for proper and CON for concrete or ABS for abstract.

Example 1. You can find maps in encyclopedias and on the Internet.

11. Maps change over time.
12. Some changes are caused by human beings.
13. Old maps do not show the Suez Canal.
15. The Caspian Sea is a good example.
16. This small inland sea is filling up with sediment.
17. Centuries ago, the Caspian Sea was larger.
18. The Red Sea seems to be growing.
19. Many different forces affect the surface of the earth.
20. Wind, water, and movement of the earth’s crust are powerful forces.
EXERCISE A In the following sentences, underline each pronoun once. If a pronoun has a stated antecedent, underline the antecedent twice. Then, identify the type of pronoun by writing above it P for personal, R for reflexive, or I for intensive.

Example 1. Did Maria buy herself a silver bracelet yesterday?

1. The instructor herself first demonstrated the dive.
2. Aaron cooked the entire meal himself.
3. The proud athlete will display her trophy in the school’s trophy case.
4. A frightened hedgehog curls itself into a ball.
5. The artist wanted you to come to the gallery opening.
6. Tyra baked two loaves and then sliced them.
7. The swim team outdid itself in the freestyle relay.
8. Consuela smiled and said, “I know the words to the song.”
9. The senator herself signed the letter.
10. Is the sponge you bought natural or artificial?

EXERCISE B Underline each pronoun in the following sentences. Then, identify each by writing above it DEM for demonstrative, INT for interrogative, IND for indefinite, or REL for relative.

Examples 1. This is the dog that Marcus found last weekend.

2. Who is the person most admired by all?

11. Who is the boy who wore the red wig in the first act?
12. Hairstyle is one of the personal details that Janet always notices.
13. Everyone who enters the lab must wear a coverall.
14. Whom will the class choose as a representative?
15. Lily was the only person who voted against the measure.
16. These are the best photographs that Pat has ever seen!
17. Jamal called the house, but no one answered.
18. Please put away the boxes that are on the floor, and then help Marvin move this.
19. What should Susan bring to the party?
20. Of all the fruits, these have the most vitamin C.
EXERCISE A  Underline each article in the following sentences. Identify each article by writing above it \( D \) for definite or \( I \) for indefinite. Then, circle each adjective that is not an article.

Example 1. Most people consider the rose a beautiful flower.

1. Have you ever seen the huge rosebush in Tombstone, Arizona?
2. Every spring, the bush is covered with white flowers.
3. The bush was brought over from Great Britain.
4. It is a specimen of the Lady Banksia rose.
5. It has a thick trunk and many branches.
6. The plant is very old now.
7. Many people travel to Tombstone to see this bush.
8. It grows beside the old Rose Tree Inn.
9. The rosebush covers a large area.
10. One source calls it the largest rosebush in the world.

EXERCISE B  In the following sentences, underline each adjective and draw an arrow from the adjective to the noun or pronoun it modifies. Do not include the articles \( a, an, \) and \( the \).

Example 1. Aunt Laurie has a beautiful cameo that is quite old.

11. A cameo is a carving on a striated gemstone, semiprecious gem, or shell.
12. A striated gem or shell has veins of different colors.
13. The artist cuts the carving on the lighter color.
14. The darker color forms a complementary background.
15. Nowadays most cameos feature the profile of a head.
16. The history of cameos traces back to ancient Egypt, Greece, and Etruria.
17. The ancient Egyptians placed carved stone seals in their tombs.
18. The carved pattern on these seals was the scarab beetle.
19. The scarab was a mystic symbol.
20. Ancient Egyptians sometimes wore a carving of a scarab as a charm.
The Verb

3a. A verb is a word that expresses action or a state of being.

**EXAMPLES**  The giraffes **munched** on fresh leaves.  
They **are** herbivores.

**EXERCISE**  Underline each verb in the following sentences.

**Examples 1.**  The giraffe **is** the tallest mammal in the world.

1. The giraffe’s neck forms about half of its height.
2. The giraffe has a short tufted mane on its long neck.
3. A mature giraffe is approximately eighteen feet tall.
4. All giraffes develop two to four horns.
5. Reddish brown splotches highlight their pale brown coats.
6. The glass snake is actually a legless lizard.
7. Some people call them glass lizards.
8. These lizards live in North America, Eurasia, and Africa.
9. Their smooth skins are usually brown or green.
10. A groove runs along each side of the glass snake’s body.
11. The glowworm is a wingless female beetle.
12. Organs inside these beetles and their larvae emit a glow.
13. **Firefly** is the term for the male.
14. The male, not the female, flies.
15. Hares are large members of the rabbit family.
16. Many adult hares weigh up to ten pounds.
17. The ears of a hare are longer than its head.
18. The fur of the arctic hare turns white in winter for camouflage.
19. Its ears are shorter than the ears of the Mediterranean brown hare.
20. The jack rabbit is a familiar North American hare.
EXERCISE A  Underline the action verb in each of the following sentences.

Examples 1. Jon and I hiked for several miles.
   2. Both of us admired the brilliant fall foliage.
   1. Jon collected gold, red, and yellow leaves.
   2. He carefully placed them in his backpack.
   3. I wondered why.
   4. Later, he told me about his plan.
   5. He knew of a market for these beautiful leaves.
   6. A local craft shop buys the leaves for craft classes.
   7. For example, the class on greeting cards uses colorful leaves regularly.
   8. The art classes always want leaves, too.
   9. Artists incorporate the foliage into collages.
  10. People enjoy the “back to nature” tone of this artwork.

EXERCISE B  Underline each action verb in the following sentences. Then, identify the type of action of the verb by writing above it P for physical action or M for mental action.

Examples 1. My mother makes delicious red beans and rice.
   2. Today, however, I crave Cajun gumbo.
   11. I remember my great-grandmother’s recipe for gumbo.
   12. The shrimp, vegetables, and spices simmer together.
   13. I always drop a little hot pepper sauce into the pot.
   14. Meanwhile, white rice steams until tender.
   15. I prefer this mild rice along with the spicy gumbo.
Linking Verbs

**3c.** A linking verb is a verb that expresses a state of being. A linking verb connects, or links, the subject to a word or word group that identifies or describes the subject.

**LINKING VERB**  
Your painting is beautiful!

Some verbs may be either action verbs or linking verbs, depending on how they are used.

**ACTION VERB**  
Paco tasted the soup.

**LINKING VERB**  
Those vegetables tasted fresh.

**EXERCISE A**  
Underline the linking verb in each of the following sentences. Then, draw an arrow showing which words are joined by the linking verb.

**Example 1.** The old house looked deserted.

1. The huge diamond mine is now a museum.
2. The computerized voice sounds human to me.
3. After the storm, the islanders grew nervous at the sight of all the dark clouds.
4. Some of the bristlecone pine trees are very old.
5. The farm animals looked quite content.

**EXERCISE B**  
Underline the verbs in the following sentences. Then, identify each as an action verb or a linking verb by writing above it A for action verb or L for linking verb.

**Example 1.** Aaron Burr was the third Vice President of the United States.

6. Burr became one of the most colorful characters in U.S. history.
8. At age twenty-one, he was a commanding officer of an entire regiment.
9. He resigned in 1779 because of ill health.
10. Later, Burr practiced law.
11. He almost always looked wealthy and successful.
12. Burr and Alexander Hamilton were longtime enemies.
14. Hamilton died from his wound.
15. Burr’s political career was soon over.
Helping Verbs and Main Verbs

3d. A helping verb (auxiliary verb) helps the main verb express action or a state of being.

EXAMPLE Christopher can sing beautifully.

A verb phrase contains one main verb and one or more helping verbs. Sometimes a verb phrase is interrupted by another part of speech.

EXAMPLES The code was hidden inside an old book. [The helping verb is was.]
Sparky will not bite you. [The helping verb is will.]

EXERCISE A Underline the verb phrase in each sentence. Then, draw another line under each helping verb.

Examples 1. People have celebrated birthdays in many different ways.
2. I didn’t forget your birthday.
1. Perhaps we should learn more about birthday celebrations in various countries.
2. Mexicans will sometimes buy a piñata for a birthday party.
3. The piñata is filled with small treats and gifts.
4. In Mexico, families will usually celebrate a girl’s fifteenth birthday with a special party.
5. This traditional celebration is called a quinceañera.
6. In the United States, a girl’s sixteenth birthday is often treated as a special birthday.
7. Some people do not like birthday celebrations.
8. They might not tell you their age.
9. Other people have celebrated in spectacular ways.
10. Maybe I will celebrate my birthday in a new way this year.

EXERCISE B Underline the verb phrases in the following paragraph. Then, draw a second line under the helping verb in each phrase. Hint: The paragraph contains ten verb phrases.

Example A storm will sometimes produce thunder and lightning.

Scientists can explain the causes of thunder. The sound of thunder is caused by the heat of lightning. A bolt of lightning can heat nearby air molecules. The air molecules will then expand, and they will also move. Their movement can create sounds and echoes. Because light can travel faster than sound, you will first see the lightning. The flash will occur almost immediately; only afterward will you hear the thunder.
**Transitive and Intransitive Verbs**

**3e.** A *transitive verb* is a verb that expresses an action directed toward a person, a place, a thing, or an idea.

**3f.** An *intransitive verb* expresses action (or tells something about the subject) without the action passing to a receiver, or object.

**Exercise A** Identify the underlined verb by writing above it T for *transitive* or I for *intransitive*.

*Example 1.* Ira finished his homework.

1. At this airport, no planes land after dark.
2. My sister and I planted tomatoes and onions.
3. Rick’s parrot screams all day long.
4. Everyone ran quickly toward the exit.
5. Of all the contestants, Ming Chin caught the largest fish.

**Exercise B** Add a word or word group to each of the following sentences to change each intransitive verb into a transitive one. Write your expanded sentences on the lines provided.

*Example 1.* Amos is driving to Seattle. *Amos is driving a truck to Seattle.*

6. Erin will not forget. ____________________________

7. Ernesto will recite next. ____________________________

8. Today we will draw with charcoal. ____________________________

9. While one partner works, the other watches. ____________________________

10. Michael, can you cook? ____________________________
## Identifying Kinds of Verbs

### 3b. **An action verb** is a verb that expresses either physical or mental activity.

**ACTION** I memorized the definitions and then wrote them perfectly on the test.

### 3c. **A linking verb** is a verb that expresses a state of being. A linking verb connects, or links, the subject to a word or word group that identifies or describes the subject.

**LINKING** The test was pretty hard.

### 3d. **A helping verb (auxiliary verb)** helps the main verb express action or a state of being.

**HELPING** Ms. Mandell will grade the tests tonight.

### 3e. **A transitive verb** is a verb that expresses an action directed toward a person, a place, a thing, or an idea.

**TRANSITIVE** Ms. Mandell wrote the answers on the chalkboard.

### 3f. **An intransitive verb** expresses action (or tells something about the subject) without the action passing to a receiver, or object.

**INTRANSITIVE** Ms. Mandell wrote on the chalkboard.

### Exercise A

Identify each underlined verb by writing above it **A** for action verb or **L** for linking verb. Then, circle any helping verbs.

**Example 1.** Please do paint the doghouse on Saturday.

1. We are late, Tony.
2. That **would** be wonderful!
3. Terrence **sings** in the school choir.
4. I **have traveled** to Scotland twice.
5. I **dreamed** vividly last night.
6. **Throw** the football!
7. **How far is the park?**
8. **Guess again, Lori.**
9. **She has become** quite famous.
10. **Will you come** to my party?

### Exercise B

Identify each underlined verb by writing above it **T** for transitive or **I** for intransitive.

**Example 1.** My parakeet has been quiet today.

11. Several songbirds chirped sweetly outside my window.
12. This weekend we will build a bird feeder.
13. I will fill it with birdseed daily.
14. Dozens of birds will visit our backyard soon.
15. I can relax while listening to bird songs.
grammAr

The Adverb

3g. An adverb is a word that modifies a verb, an adjective, or another adverb.

An adverb tells where, when, how, how often, how long, to what extent, or how much.

Example  Yesterday my next-door neighbor was extremely kind. [Yesterday modifies the verb was, and extremely modifies the adjective kind.]

Exercise A  Underline the adverb in each of the following sentences. Then, circle the word or words that each adverb modifies.

Example 1. You can rarely get tickets for this horse show.
1. Vivi Malloy rides her horse daily.
2. She has always wanted to make the U.S. Equestrian Team.
3. Vivi rides a very attractive chestnut horse named Penny Red.
4. Vivi usually cleans the horse’s stall after school.
5. Then she grooms her horse.
7. Penny Red trots briskly around the ring.
8. Penny Red and Vivi especially enjoy jumping.
9. They have competed successfully in several shows.
10. Vivi’s parents always attend her shows.

Exercise B  Provide appropriate adverbs to fill the blanks in the following sentences.

Example 1. Medieval castles have always fascinated me.
11. Castle walls were always thick.
12. Many medieval castles were protected always by moats.
13. The moats were always filled with water.
14. People always crossed the moats on drawbridges.
15. These bridges could always be raised.
Adverbs and the Words They Modify

An adverb is a word that modifies a verb, an adjective, or another adverb.

Adverbs may come before, after, or between the words they modify.

**EXAMPLES**

- Armand quickly mowed the yard.
- He rested briefly.
- He has faithfully worked in the Fosters’ yard all summer.

**EXERCISE**

On the line provided, rewrite each of the following sentences, adding one or more adverbs. Then, identify the word or words being modified and tell whether each is a verb, adjective, or adverb.

**Example 1.** Armand and I have been earning pocket money. **Armand and I have been earning** pocket money daily. *(Daily modifies have been earning, a verb.)*

1. Most of the kids we know are spending money. ___________________________________________

2. They are also complaining about not having enough money. ________________________________

3. They get their allowance. ____________________________________________________________

4. They spend it all. _________________________________________________________________

5. Armand and I do not want to spend every cent we have. _________________________________

6. Armand mows lawns in his neighborhood. ____________________________________________

7. Mowing lawns isn’t practical for me because I live in an apartment building. ______________

8. Instead, I walk dogs and run errands for people in my building. __________________________

9. I can earn extra money and meet new neighbors. _______________________________________

10. I am saving my earnings in a bank account. ____________________________________________
Adverb or Adjective?

Many adverbs end in –ly. These adverbs are generally formed by adding –ly to adjectives.

**ADJECTIVES**
- loud
- shocking
- great

**ADVERBS**
- loudly
- shockingly
- greatly

However, some words ending in –ly are used as adjectives.

**ADJECTIVES**
- early
- arrival
- friendly
- smile

**EXERCISE**

Draw an arrow from each underlined word to the word it modifies. Then, identify each underlined word by writing above it **ADV** for adverb or **ADJ** for adjective.

**Example 1.** The **ghastly** rodent frightened us all.

1. The **kindly** stranger helped the lost child.
2. At noon, the whistle blew **shrilly**.
3. I **carefully** tested the heat of the water.
4. My young niece’s **frilly** dress was handmade by her mother.
5. I rose **early** and jogged three miles.
6. The **early** bird catches the worm.
7. Candace had **rarely** been late.
8. For some reason, I laughed **uncontrollably**.
9. I **pack** my own lunch daily.
10. My **daily** lunch is fruit, pretzels, and a sandwich.
11. This **brightly** lit room will be perfect for my art studio.
12. The air over the city is **refreshingly** clear of smog.
13. The **timely** bell saved me from a dozen more sit-ups in gym class.
14. I was **extremely** tired by the end of the day.
15. The **monthly** meeting was held in the cafeteria.
16. The club meets **monthly**, doesn’t it?
17. With a **queenly** smile, she dismissed the knight.
18. John smiled **shyly** and then started to laugh.
19. Our **yearly** trip to Vermont was postponed.
20. He **easily** lifted the cabinet.
EXERCISE A  Underline the preposition in each of the following sentences.

Example 1. This article about oceans is surprisingly interesting.
1. The bottom of the ocean is very dark.
2. In most places, it is also cold.
3. However, in some places the ocean floor is warm.
4. One such place is near the Galapagos Islands.
5. Scientists discovered a crack in the ocean floor.
6. They found that heat poured from this crack.
7. The heat was rising from the earth.
8. Many plants and animals lived around this spot.
10. These life forms lived eight thousand feet below the water’s surface.

EXERCISE B  Write a preposition that correctly completes each blank in the following sentences.

Example 1. My pet lizard ran _______ the door.
11. Should the dog be allowed _______ the sofa?
12. You will find a patch of flowers _______ the bridge.
13. Please store the fruit _______ the vegetables, Gary.
14. _______ the water, I saw a faint light glowing.
15. I finished the race several seconds _______ Jay.
16. Both cats came racing _______ the corner.
17. Did your parents park the car _______ the building?
18. The squirrel quickly climbed the trunk _______ the tree.
19. _______ the beginning of the school year, we have been assigned to the same seats.
20. The runner _______ me almost tripped just before the finish line.
**Prepositional Phrases**

A **prepositional phrase** includes a preposition, a noun or pronoun called the *object of the preposition*, and any modifiers of that object.

**Example**

Dr. Okana peered **through the huge telescope**. *Through* is the preposition, and *telescope* is the object of the preposition. The adjectives *the* and *huge* modify *telescope*.

---

**Exercise A**

Underline the prepositional phrase in each sentence. Then, circle the preposition.

1. A copper-colored snake slithered along the rotting log.
2. During a crisis David sometimes loses his temper.
3. The pigs found their food under the shallow water.
4. That ancient bridge was built 155 feet above the Gard River.
5. The newscaster slipped on the ice as he hurried along.

---

**Exercise B**

Prepositional phrases can be used to add interesting information to sentences. Add prepositional phrases to the following sentences. Rewrite the sentences on the lines provided.

1. We sailed slowly.
   
   *At dawn, we sailed slowly through the rocky channel.*

2. The frightened soldier hid.

3. Canditha wore a beautiful scarf.

4. Suddenly, the prisoners heard a faint scratching noise.

5. The creature had hideous green tentacles.

6. The noisy helicopter landed.

---

Grammar, Usage, and Mechanics: Language Skills Practice
Preposition or Adverb?

Some words may be used either as prepositions or as adverbs. Remember that a preposition always has an object. An adverb never does.

**PREPOSITION** Please step aboard my boat.

**ADVERB** Please step aboard.

**EXERCISE** Identify the underlined word or word group in each sentence by writing above it *ADV* for adverb or *PREP* for preposition.

**Example 1.** Why did you tell me to get out?

1. The poison ivy climbed around the trunk of the tree.
2. I looked up but didn’t see the source of the noise.
3. The ship slowly sailed away.
4. Do not put the bread bag near the hot burner on the stove.
5. When did you say you are coming over?
6. I could go to your house instead.
7. If I inherited a million dollars, I would spread my wealth around a little.
8. For example, I would give all my friends a shopping spree in their favorite stores.
9. My brother got a ticket for parking in front of a fire hydrant.
10. He was able to pay the fine through the mail.
11. Should I flip the pancake over yet?
12. I could barely squeeze through.
13. Once upon a time, there was a very hungry dragon.
14. Without you and Jessie, I couldn’t have done it.
15. I can sprint to that tree or beyond it.
16. I have never seen anything like this before!
17. Our star party will last from dusk till dawn.
18. Is there really a ghost in *Wuthering Heights*?
19. Yes, the ghost of Catherine tries to get inside Heathcliff’s house during a storm.
20. With the dog close behind, the cat scrambled up the fence and out of its reach.
A conjunction is a word that joins words or word groups.

**COORDINATING CONJUNCTION**
You can eat or sleep first.

**CORRELATIVE CONJUNCTION**
Your tropical fish not only will survive but also will thrive.

**EXERCISE A** Underline the conjunctions in the following sentences.

**Example 1.** Neither the cantaloupe nor the pineapple appealed to me.
1. I pressed the button, but the elevator did not stop.
2. Either Eddie or Pang will deliver the furniture.
3. We wanted to go sledding, but the snow was starting to melt.
4. Jennifer repeated the caller’s number and wrote it on the pad.
5. Neither strawberries nor raspberries are in season right now.
6. Pandora was curious but frightened.
7. Don’t sail now, for the winds are too strong.
8. The children are not only tired but also cranky.
9. Leotie wondered whether she should go or stay home.
10. Do you want me to make the fruit punch or blow up the balloons?

**EXERCISE B** Provide an appropriate conjunction for each blank in the following sentences.

**Example 1.** Both Lewis and his sister like the taste of seafood.
11. I don’t know whether it’s too cool not cool enough in here.
12. Lightning bolts struck the tree, it remained standing.
13. I do not want a cat, do I want a dog.
14. a parrot a snake is the pet for me!
15. Parrots can speak, they can be very noisy.
16. the actor the director were exhausted by the end of the play.
17. I like to sew, getting the details right takes patience.
18. We will drive to Santa Fe, she decides to come with us not.
19. did she win the election, she won it by a huge margin!
20. Carrie knows this area better than anyone else, she will lead the expedition.
A conjunction is a word that joins words or word groups.

(1) Coordinating conjunctions join words or word groups that are used in the same way.
(2) Correlative conjunctions are pairs of conjunctions that join words or word groups that are used in the same way.

COORDINATING My dog Neptune is afraid of thunder, so he is hiding under the bed.

CORRELATIVE Whether we rent a movie or see one at the theater does not matter to me.

**Exercise** Combine each pair of sentences by using one or more conjunctions.

**Example 1.** You can bus the tables. You can wash the dishes. 
You can either bus the tables or wash the dishes.

1. Rudy plays the trumpet. Rudy plays the trombone.

2. The horse bucked. The horse reared.

3. Scott served the first course. Paco served the first course.

4. My sister does not speak Russian. My sister does not read Russian.

5. The building trembled. The building did not collapse.


7. The birds ate from the bird feeder. The squirrels ate from the bird feeder.

8. A large bear waded into the water. A large bear caught a salmon.

9. The candle flickered. The candle went out.

10. Shannon studied the trees in the forest. Shannon studied the plants in the forest.
The Interjection

An interjection is a word that expresses emotion. Usually an interjection is followed by an exclamation point. Sometimes an interjection is set off by a comma or by two commas.

**EXAMPLES**

- Hey! Come back here!
- Well, you could try a lighter bat.
- I'd guess, oh, twenty pounds.

**EXERCISE**

Underline the interjections in the following sentences.

**Example 1.** Yikes! A spider almost crawled on my foot.

1. Ouch! I stubbed my toe.
2. Oh, maybe we should wait.
3. Help! My experiment blew up!.
4. Well, it isn’t raining as hard now.
5. You won that much? Wow!
6. Eureka! I have found it!
7. Well, it sounds like fun, but I have to work.
8. Hooray! We won first place!
9. Oops! I spilled juice on the floor.
10. Shucks, that’s not so fast.
11. She swung the bat and, bam, the ball flew out of the park.
12. Pow! Every time he hits the bag it pops back.
13. Oh, that isn’t so impressive.
14. After it started raining, well, we went home.
15. Aha! So you’re the mysterious good Samaritan!
16. Okay, I’ll go to the park with you.
17. Uh-oh, here comes trouble.
18. Goodness! I hope everyone is unhurt.
19. You ran a marathon? Whew!
20. Wow, I didn’t even know that bird could whistle.
Determining Parts of Speech

The way a word is used in a sentence determines what part of speech it is.

**VERB** Please place the bowl of flowers on the table. [*Place* can also be a noun.]

**ADVERB** May we go within? [*Within* can also be a preposition.]

**PREPOSITION** All but one finished. [*But* can also be a conjunction.]

**CONJUNCTION** I wanted to but couldn’t. [*But* can also be a preposition.]

**INTERJECTION** Goodness! It’s completely dark in here. [*Goodness* can also be a noun.]

**EXERCISE** Each of the following sentences contains one or more underlined words. Identify the part of speech of each underlined word or word group by writing above it **V** for verb, **ADV** for adverb, **PREP** for preposition, **C** for conjunction, or **I** for interjection.

**Example 1.** Expertly following the map, she led us to the cave.

1. Maps are very popular with collectors.
2. Some have sold for very high prices.
3. High prices have encouraged the publication of special books and magazines.
4. Valuable maps must be carefully protected from light and dust.
5. Many of the most valuable maps are kept inside closed drawers.
6. Oh, that really is a treasure map.
7. The Library of Congress houses the world’s largest collection of maps.
8. Within its vault are more than 4.5 million maps.
9. In the Geography and Map Division, you may use either an atlas or a globe.
10. In this collection are many unusual maps.
11. Some of the maps there are on public display.
12. Carefully, the librarian opened the first volume of Ptolemy’s *Guide to Geography*.
13. Later, he showed us a globe from the eighteenth century.
14. The archaeologist looked inside the cave and thought she saw a map on the wall.
15. In ancient times, the Babylonians drew maps on clay tablets.
16. Wow! Look at this Inuit map painted on an animal skin!
17. This old map shows both the northern hemisphere and the southern hemisphere.
18. Say, do you know how to read this road atlas?
19. The bold print in the atlas can be read easily.
20. Yesterday we used the road atlas to find a route to St. Louis.
**EXERCISE A** Identify each underlined verb by writing above it *A* for action verb or *L* for linking verb.

Example 1. We **were** fearful of the unusually violent winds.

1. The apartment **has been** too warm all week.
2. Before diving, always **look** below you for possible hazards.
3. In his old age, my dog **has become** quite gray around the muzzle.
4. As he climbed the tower, Willis felt **totally confident**.
5. Most of the test subjects **dreamed** about flying or sailing.
6. My father **is** glad about it.
7. Quartz crystals **vibrate** at a constant rate.
8. Alicia **wore** kneepads and a helmet while she was in-line skating.
9. The baby rabbit **remained** still until the dog passed by.
10. We **may be lost**, because this area **doesn’t** look familiar to me.

**EXERCISE B** Identify each underlined verb by writing above it *T* for transitive verb or *I* for intransitive verb. Then, circle any helping verbs.

Example 1. The lion **was shaking** his mane in the wind.

11. The end of the rope **fell** into the water.
12. All the antelopes **raised** their heads.
13. Sean has received an award for bravery.
14. During the scavenger hunt, we **raced** into every store on Main Street.
15. Mu Lan **finished** her picture just in time for the show.
16. A chameleon’s body **may grow** to be twenty-five inches long.
17. The reptile’s tongue **can be as long as its body**.
18. This long tongue **stays rolled up inside the mouth**.
19. The chameleon **can unroll** its tongue very quickly.
20. Chameleons **have caught** insects many inches away.
**Exercise A** In each of the following sentences, underline the prepositional phrase. Then, draw a second line under each object of the preposition.

**Example 1.** The stadium was filled with shouting, enthusiastic fans.

1. Mildred Didrikson Zaharias came from Texas.
2. She was better known as Babe.
3. During her teens, she played basketball.
4. She also excelled in swimming and figure skating.
5. At eighteen, she was a major track star.
6. Before the year’s end, she won two Olympic medals.
7. Babe won one medal for the javelin throw.
8. She played baseball with equal skill.
9. Until her early death, she played golf.
10. She won seventeen straight golf tournaments in 1947.

**Exercise B** Identify the underlined word or word group in each of the following sentences by writing above it **ADV** for adverb, **C** for conjunction, or **I** for interjection.

**Example 1.** Walking energetically on the beach is fantastic exercise.

**ADV**

11. Sometimes beachcombers find interesting things on beaches.
12. They are likely to find both bottles and driftwood.
13. A woman found a narwhal tusk there.
14. People once thought the tusks were unicorn horns.
15. But aren’t narwhals really imaginary creatures?
16. No, a narwhal is a small arctic whale.
17. The males often grow a single, long tusk.
18. Wow! Some tusks are almost nine feet long.
19. The narwhal may use the tusk for play-fighting or digging.
20. That tusk is not only uncommon but also quite interesting.
Review C: Verbs, Adverbs, Prepositions, Conjunctions, Interjections

**Exercise**  In each sentence, identify the underlined word or word group by writing above it \( V \) for verb, \( ADV \) for adverb, \( PREP \) for preposition, \( C \) for conjunction, or \( I \) for interjection.

**Example 1.** I ate too much but, \( I \) oh, it was good!

1. Zap! The dragon’s breath burned the fence.
2. My sister \( trains \) police dogs.
3. A technician is fixing the computer \( now \).
4. A fire burned in the fireplace, \( but \) no one was in the room.
5. Three different Pharaohs \( built \) those pyramids.
6. During the operation, the nurse looked \( neither \) nervous \( nor \) pale.
7. Margarita \( grabbed \) the horse by its mane.
8. Breathlessly \( everyone \) watched the stunt parachutist.
9. Dr. Levine handed the new eyeglasses \( to \) the woman.
10. The mechanic checked the wires, \( yet \) he found nothing wrong.
11. Everyone \( wore \) a different kind of costume.
12. Yum, your entire house smells spicy.
13. Latrice \( is \) helping me catalog the books.
14. With one swift stroke, the chef chopped the onion \( into \) two pieces.
15. The students at my new school \( seem \) friendly.
16. In science, we are studying vampire bats.
17. These bats are found in Central America \( and \) South America.
18. Vampire bats \( rarely \) bite humans.
19. Instead, a vampire bat \( will \) make a tiny cut on an animal’s skin.
20. Usually, a bat \( will \) lap \( only \) a small amount of blood.
Complements

**Exercise A** Complete the meaning of each verb by adding a complement.

**Example 1.** Yesterday I read *Watership Down*.

1. This poem is _____________________________.
2. I greatly admire _____________________________.
3. I recently composed a _____________________________.
4. I’ll give _____________________________ the books they wanted.
5. My skills as an author are _____________________________.
6. In the ghost story, the weather was always _____________________________.
7. The ancient ghost haunted the _____________________________.
8. When I told you, did you believe ___________________________?
9. A mystery story should be _____________________________.
10. Tell _____________________________ the rest of the story.

**Exercise B** Underline the complements in each of the following sentences.

**Example 1.** Do you smell smoke?

11. John built these shelves.
12. Russell grows basil in his garden.
13. Spooky is our new cat.
14. Is Spike your pet iguana?
15. These pecans are very crunchy.
17. Marcia has a new kitten.
18. Last summer we built a birdhouse.
19. Was Rafael happy about his new bicycle?
20. Suzi and Eric gave us a ride to the park.
Exercise A  Underline the direct objects in the following sentences. Some sentences contain a compound direct object. If a sentence does not contain a direct object, write none on the line provided.

Example  1. Have you ever seen a cotton gin?

1. In 1793, Eli Whitney invented a machine for cotton farmers.
2. His machine was the cotton gin.
3. The machine separates seeds and small sticks from the cotton fibers.
4. It combs the fibers with tiny, fine-toothed rakes.
5. Whitney’s invention was important to the economy of the South.

Exercise B  Underline the direct objects in the following sentences. Some sentences contain compound direct objects.

Example  [1] Ms. Costa explained faults and earthquakes to my class.

[6] Thick plates of solid material form the earth’s crust, and sometimes these plates move.
Indirect Objects

**4c.** An indirect object is a noun, pronoun, or word group that sometimes appears in sentences containing direct objects.

Indirect objects tell to whom or to what, or for whom or for what, the action of the verb is done.

**EXAMPLES**  
1. He fed the **dog** a biscuit. [To what did he feed the biscuit?]  
2. I gave **Jaime** and **Alameda** their tickets. [To whom did I give the tickets?]  

**EXERCISE A** Each of the following sentences contains both a direct object and an indirect object. For each sentence, underline the direct object once. Then, underline the indirect object twice. Hint: Some sentences may contain a compound indirect object.

**Example 1.** I promised Hortensia and Mary two slices of cake.

1. The president gave the astronaut a medal.
2. The weather report promised us sunshine for the weekend.
3. After a long delay, the store sent Mr. Wong a refund.
4. Virgil and Mike sent Chim a birthday card.
5. Maria gave the carpenters and bricklayers clear directions.

**EXERCISE B** In each sentence, circle the verb. Then, underline the direct object once and the indirect object twice. Hint: Some sentences do not have indirect objects. Some sentences have no objects.

**Example 1.** I **gave** Fido and Cheeky a **bath**.

6. The governor gave her staff a party.
7. Carlos showed Delia pictures from his vacation.
8. The witness gave the jury additional information about the crime scene.
9. Shizuo has been my friend for years.
10. Felice threw the ball to me.
11. The scary movie gave us the shivers.
12. Melissa gave the waitress her order.
13. Please tell me a story, Arthur.
14. My friend Heather is the secretary of the Hiking Club.
15. Give the speaker your complete attention.
Direct Objects and Indirect Objects A

4b. A **direct object** is a noun, pronoun, or word group that tells who or what receives the action of the verb.

4c. An **indirect object** is a noun, pronoun, or word group that sometimes appears in sentences containing direct objects.

**DIRECT OBJECTS**
- After sitting down, I studied my **program**.
- I adore the **costumes** and **songs** in opera productions.

**INDIRECT OBJECTS**
- Later, I lent **Melissa** my opera glasses.
- She gave **Eddie** and **Carlos** a turn with the glasses, too.

**EXERCISE A** Identify each underlined word by writing above it **DO** for direct object or **IO** for indirect object. Add **C** if the word is part of a compound object.

- **Example 1.** Will you send Grandma and Grandpa these tickets, please?
  - 1. Pierre gave me a ticket to the opera **Madama Butterfly**.
  - 2. We took a **bus** to the opera house.
  - 3. An usher showed Pierre and **me** our seats.
  - 4. The orchestra began the **overture**.
  - 5. The opera tells a sad and touching **story**.
  - 6. A woman marries a **man** who is in the navy.
  - 7. Soon after their marriage, the man sails his **ship** to faraway places.
  - 8. He leaves the woman and her little **child**.
  - 9. Sadly she watches the sea, hoping for his return.
  - 10. The performers **tell us** the entire story through their beautiful songs.

**EXERCISE B** In each of the sentences, circle the verb. Then, underline the direct object once and the indirect object twice. Some sentences do not contain indirect objects.

- **Example 1.** Each afternoon after school, I **give** Willy food and **water**.
  - 11. My neighbor across the hall has an interesting pet.
  - 12. The Stoneham Zoo gave her a chinchilla whose name was Willy.
  - 13. For years, the zoo featured the chinchilla in its Children’s Zoo.
  - 14. When Willy grew old, the zoo needed a new home for him.
Direct Objects and Indirect Objects B

4b. A **direct object** is a noun, pronoun, or word group that tells who or what receives the action of the verb.

4c. An **indirect object** is a noun, pronoun, or word group that sometimes appears in sentences containing direct objects.

**Exercise A**

In each of the following sentences, underline each direct object once and each indirect object twice. Some sentences contain compound objects.

**Example 1.** Before entering the room, Maya gave the guard her camera.

1. The museum does not allow cameras.
2. According to our guide, that diamond caused its owner some trouble.
3. She finally gave the museum the diamond and some other gems.
4. Did you see the rubies and the emeralds?
5. Color, brilliance, and weight determine a gem’s value.
6. A lapidary, or gem cutter, gives a gem its final shape.
7. This museum also has an exhibit and books about famous gems.
8. Indian and Persian rulers possessed the famous *Koh-i-noor* diamond for centuries.
9. The British East India Company gave Queen Victoria the *Koh-i-noor* in 1850.
10. Show the teacher and the class your postcards from the exhibit.

**Exercise B**

In each of the following sentences, underline the direct object. Then, on the lines provided, rewrite each sentence so that it has both a direct object and an indirect object.

**Example 1.** Will you write a letter today? *Will you write your grandmother a letter today?*

11. Throw the football.

12. Lani will show her project tomorrow morning.

13. Mr. Garcia told a story about his childhood.

14. Please bring a glass of water.

15. Did she send a birthday card?
Subject Complements

4d. **A subject complement** is a word or word group in the predicate that identifies or describes the subject.

A subject complement is connected to the subject by a linking verb.

**EXAMPLES**

- The world’s oldest surviving religion is **Judaism**. **[Judaism** is a noun that identifies the subject **religion**.]
- This prayer book looks **new**. **[New** is an adjective that describes the subject **book**.]

**EXERCISE**

Circle each verb, and underline each subject complement in the following sentences. Some sentences do not contain a subject complement.

**Examples**

1. Is Taoism a religion of the East?
2. I attend a Catholic church.
3. Jerusalem is the capital of Israel.
4. That beautiful Islamic mosque appears ancient.
5. I visited Vatican City in Rome once.
6. The church bells sounded pleasantly harmonious in the night air.
7. Many magnificent structures become tourist attractions.
8. The Eiffel Tower was an attraction at the World Exposition in 1889.
9. In ancient Greece the Parthenon honored the goddess Athena.
10. The Forbidden City in China became open to the public.
11. The Statue of Liberty stands majestically in New York harbor.
12. The Great Wall of China seems almost endless!
13. It stretches nearly 1,500 miles.
14. The North Pole is not a land mass.
15. In fact, the Arctic Ocean covers the North Pole.
16. The South Pole remains frozen year round.
17. Unlike the North Pole, the South Pole lies on an icy land mass.
18. The winds of Antarctica feel bitter.
19. The biggest lake in the world is the Caspian Sea.
20. The Caspian Sea is not an arm of the ocean.
21. However, the water tastes salty.
22. Lake Baikal is much deeper.
Predicate Nominatives

A predicate nominative is a word or word group in the predicate that identifies the subject.

A predicate nominative may be a noun, a pronoun, or a word group that functions as a noun. A predicate nominative is connected to the subject by a linking verb.

**EXAMPLES**
- A tiger is a wild animal.
- The guilty people in the room were he and she.
- That is what I wrote.

**EXERCISE A** Circle the linking verb in each of the following sentences. Then, underline the predicate nominative. Some predicate nominatives may be compound.

**Example 1.** Jacques Cousteau has always been one of my role models.

1. Jacques-Yves Cousteau was a French underwater explorer.
2. His main interests were ocean life and conservation.
3. The fish and plants of the sea were his topics of study.
4. Underwater exploration is sometimes a dangerous occupation.
5. Cousteau’s explorations have become the subjects of films and books.

**EXERCISE B** In the sentences below, circle each verb. Then, identify each underlined word or word group by writing above it `PN` for predicate nominative or `DO` for direct object.

**Example 1.** My brother may become a doctor.

7. That story describes him exactly.
8. Tomás Ortega is the best student in our class.
9. A leopard has spots on its coat for camouflage.
10. A rake is a useful tool in a garden.
11. Billie Holiday is Kevin’s favorite jazz singer.
12. The class elected Jennifer.
13. She was probably the best candidate.
14. Her friend Martin managed the campaign.
15. That is what she promised before the election.
Predicate Adjectives

4f. A predicate adjective is an adjective that is in the predicate and that describes the subject.

A predicate adjective is connected to the subject by a linking verb.

**Examples**
- Yesterday I felt **sick**.
- The cider was **cold** and **refreshing**.

**Exercise A**
Circle the linking verbs in the following sentences, and underline the predicate adjectives. Some predicate adjectives are compound.

**Example**
1. Your dog appears **tired** or **ill**.
2. The ocean looks calm tonight.
3. The governor seemed happy with the meeting.
4. After roller-skating, the children were hungry and tired.
5. Traffic on my street becomes quite heavy during rush hour.
6. The committee’s plan is very complicated.

**Exercise B**
Underline each predicate adjective or compound predicate adjective in the following sentences. If a sentence has no predicate adjective, write **None** on the line provided.

**Examples**
1. Reading is **fun** and **relaxing**.
   - **None**
2. These books are about adventures.
3. Scott O’Dell is a fantastic writer.
4. His books have become famous.
5. **Island of the Blue Dolphins** is excellent in my opinion.
6. The main character is an American Indian girl.
7. Alone on a deserted island, she feels lonely and scared.
8. Fierce, wild dogs are inhabitants of the island, too.
9. They seem very frightening to her.
10. She then becomes intent on leaving the island in a canoe.
11. Her journey becomes dangerous when the canoe springs a leak.
12. She is a brave person but wisely turns back.
Predicate Nominatives and Predicate Adjectives A

A **predicate nominative** is a word or word group that is in the predicate and that identifies the subject.

A **predicate adjective** is an adjective that is in the predicate and that describes the subject.

**Exercise A**  Identify each underlined word by writing above it *PN* for *predicate nominative* or *PA* for *predicate adjective*. Add *C* if it is part of a compound complement.

**Example 1.** My favorite movies are old and **musical**.

1. Fred Astaire was an actor and a dancer.
2. When he danced, he seemed very **light** on his feet.
3. Astaire’s first dancing partner was his **sister Adele**.
4. His solo dances were **sophisticated** and improvisational.
5. In many movies, Ginger Rogers was his dancing **partner**.
6. The movies they made together became very famous and **popular**.
7. My two favorites are **Top Hat** and **Swing Time**.
8. Astaire’s career was long and **brilliant**.
9. He became an **actor** in 1933 and continued to make films until 1981.
10. He was the **winner** of a special Academy Award, several Emmys, and two lifetime achievement awards.

**Exercise B**  In each of the following sentences, underline each predicate nominative once and underline each predicate adjective twice.

**Example 1.** Adrienne seems especially happy and **excited** today.

11. The clouds on the horizon looked dark.
12. She is both a swimmer and a dancer.
13. Those pears are inexpensive and **delicious**.
14. My favorite sports are hockey and **lacrosse**.
15. Is the girl in the green parka your sister?
for CHAPTER 4: COMPLEMENTS pages 125-127

Predicative Nominatives and Predicative Adjectives B

4e. A predicative nominative is a word or word group that is in the predicate and that identifies the subject.

4f. A predicative adjective is an adjective that is in the predicate and that describes the subject.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PREDICATE NOMINATIVE</th>
<th>Mammals are vertebrates.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>PREDICATE ADJECTIVE</td>
<td>Mammals are warm-blooded.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Exercise A** Identify each underlined word by writing above it PN for predicative nominative or PA for predicative adjective. Add C if it is part of a compound.

**Example 1.** Is this script comic or tragic?

1. Lawrence Kasdan’s writing is skillful and clever.
2. His works are not books, poems, or articles.
3. Many of Kasdan’s works become exciting films.
4. One of the first movies that he wrote was *Raiders of the Lost Ark*.
5. To many people, that movie seemed exciting and funny.
6. Harrison Ford was wonderful as the leading man, Indiana Jones.
7. Kasdan’s script for *Return of the Jedi* led to a film that is full of adventure and colorful characters.
8. The western *Silverado* is another film by Kasdan.
9. The actor Kevin Kline is one of the stars of *Silverado*.
10. Kasdan was once a student at the University of Michigan.

**Exercise B** Complete each sentence by writing a predicative nominative or a predicative adjective on the line provided. You may have to write more than one word for a sentence to be meaningful. Above each complement, write PN for predicative nominative or PA for predicative adjective.

**Example 1.** Tuesday was ____________________

11. These lemons and grapefruit taste ____________________
12. My cousin Isaiah is ____________________
13. My uncle Nathan is ____________________
14. Mario and Marco are ____________________
15. The little girl felt ____________________
Review A: Identifying Complements

**Exercise** Identify the underlined word in the following sentences by writing above it DO for direct object, IO for indirect object, PN for predicate nominative, or PA for predicate adjective. Add C if it is part of a compound object or subject complement.

**Example 1.** This tall tale is silly yet entertaining!

1. I’ll tell you and your friends an American tale or two.
2. According to legend, Pecos Bill was the inventor of the lasso.
3. Coyotes raised the young Pecos Bill.
4. His horse was Widow-Maker, and his wife was Slue-Foot Sue.
5. According to another tale, Sally Ann Thunder Ann Whirlwind rescued Davy Crockett.
6. Then she married him.
7. While growing up, she had given her brothers strong competition in wrestling, running, and fishing.
8. The physically powerful Paul Bunyan issued lumbermen their orders.
9. In one meal he devoured half of a wagon load of vegetables and several sides of beef.
10. Paul Bunyan’s pet ox Babe was huge and blue.
11. John Henry was incredibly strong as well.
12. In tall tales, he is a railroad worker in West Virginia and other areas.
13. In one tale, he challenges a machine to a contest of strength and speed.
14. Tall tales may seem impossibly far-fetched.
15. Some legends and tales, however, feature characters from real life.
16. Two real-life heroes were Johnny Appleseed and Davy Crockett.
17. Johnny Appleseed offered animals his friendship.
18. He also planted apple trees throughout Pennsylvania.
19. The dates of Appleseed’s birth and death are 1774 and 1845.
20. Davy Crockett’s life spanned the years from 1786 to 1836.
Review B: Identifying Complements

**Exercise A** Identify the underlined word in the following sentences by writing above it DO for direct object, IO for indirect object, PN for predicate nominative, or PA for predicate adjective. Add C if the word is part of a compound object or subject complement.

**Example 1.** Old Yeller is the name of a dog in one of my favorite books.

1. Fred Gipson wrote a wonderful book called *Old Yeller*.
2. I know the book will give you hours of pleasant reading.
3. The main character and narrator is Travis, a teenage boy.
4. The setting is Texas, just after the Civil War.
5. Travis is responsible for the farm during his father’s absence.
6. One day, a stray dog steals some meat.
7. To Travis, the dog seems ugly and useless.
8. However, the dog soon becomes a companion and a hero.
9. The dog gains the family’s affection and gratitude.
10. I will lend you my copy of *Old Yeller* if you want to read a terrific book.

**Exercise B** Underline the complement in each of the following sentences. Then, identify the complement by writing above it DO for direct object, IO for indirect object, PN for predicate nominative, or PA for predicate adjective. Some sentences have more than one complement.

**Example 1.** Are onions the pizza topping?

11. Rumpelstiltskin spun straw into gold for the miller’s daughter.
12. Earth is not the only planet in the solar system with a moon.
13. That house has a lovely porch.
14. My older brother is now a sophomore at Princeton University.
15. Please send Sarah a postcard while you are traveling.
16. This apple tastes slightly sour.
17. Mark Twain’s home in Hartford, Connecticut, has become a museum.
18. We read the class a ballad about John Henry.
19. Many of the magician’s tricks were unbelievable.
20. Was the pep rally before the game fun?
Review C: Identifying Complements

**Exercise A** Identify the underlined word in the following sentences by writing above it DO for direct object, IO for indirect object, PN for predicate nominative, or PA for predicate adjective. Add C if it is part of a compound object or subject complement.

Example 1. Tell Marianne and me a pirate story!

1. One of New England’s early pirates was Dixie Bull.
2. He attacked ships and trading posts in Maine until 1633.
3. Before he turned to piracy, Bull had been a trader and a fisherman.
4. But French pirates stole all of his supplies and boats.
5. Angered at this, he became a pirate as well.
6. Key West, Florida, is famous for the pirates who once sailed in and out.
7. The ocean off Key West is often violent and dangerous.
8. The harsh waves and huge rocks gave ships a terrible beating.
9. Pirates would watch the ships as they passed through the rough waters.
10. They would give the officers and crew aid, but they would also take the cargoes.

**Exercise B** Underline the complement in each of the following sentences. Then, identify the complement by writing above it DO for direct object, IO for indirect object, PN for predicate nominative, or PA for predicate adjective.

Example 1. I have just discovered the thought-provoking writings of Thoreau.

11. Henry David Thoreau wrote *Walden*.
12. It is a book about his experiences near Walden Pond in Massachusetts.
13. Thoreau was a teacher in Concord, Massachusetts.
14. In 1845, he left his home and went to the woods near Walden Pond.
15. His cabin in the woods was small.
16. He was seeking a life of simplicity.
17. His life at Walden Pond was an experiment in quiet solitude.
18. For Thoreau, nature seemed peaceful and instructive.
19. His daily journal about his life and thoughts became *Walden*.
20. I will read you one of the inspiring quotations about his search for personal freedom.
Phrases

5a. A phrase is a group of related words that is used as a single part of speech and that does not contain both a verb and its subject.

PREPOSITIONAL PHRASE in a boat
PARTICIPIAL PHRASE rowing swiftly
INFINITIVE PHRASE to swim daily
VERB PHRASE will have gone

Exercise A On the line provided, identify each word group by writing P for phrase or NP for not a phrase.

Examples

1. with chocolate frosting P
2. while the cake baked NP
3. over the rainbow
4. since the alarm rang
5. as a baby sitter
6. to warn us
7. was repaired
8. the cat sat
9. on the mat
10. has been singing
11. stricken with the measles
12. to check randomly
13. had been whistling
14. since you didn’t call
15. ending happily after all
16. to study the stars through a telescope
17. because you don’t ever miss track practice
18. listening to really good music
19. has smashed
20. where my friends are

Exercise B In each of the following sentences, identify each underlined word group by writing above it P for phrase or NP for not a phrase.

Example

1. The train arrived at the platform.

21. The troll under the bridge opened his eyes.
22. Thinking carefully, Sinead arrived at the right answer.
23. Has anyone looked outside since the rain stopped?
24. The antibiotics should have stopped the infection.
25. Carla knows how to order dinner in Korean.
The Prepositional Phrase

A prepositional phrase includes a preposition, the object of the preposition, and any modifiers of that object.

**Examples**
- during the days
- with us
- of noble deeds
- about them

A prepositional phrase can have more than one object.

**Example**
- for the parents and their children

**Exercise A** Underline each prepositional phrase in the following paragraph.

**Example [1]** In this book you can read about Camelot and its king.


**Exercise B** Complete each sentence by adding a prepositional phrase where the blank is. Write your new sentence on the line provided.

**Example 1.** _____ we will get refreshments.

- After the game we will get refreshments.

6. We are listening _____ on the radio.

7. We’re going home _____.

8. _____ was a pile of newspapers.

9. Last week’s game _____ ended in a tie.

10. The oil painting _____ is priceless.
The Adjective Phrase

A prepositional phrase used as an adjective is called an adjective phrase.

**5c.** An adjective phrase modifies a noun or a pronoun.

**EXAMPLES**

- Someone in my class lent me a wonderful story. [The prepositional phrase in my class modifies the pronoun Someone.]
- The story about Scrooge and Tiny Tim has become famous. [The prepositional phrase about Scrooge and Tiny Tim modifies the noun story.]

---

**EXERCISE A** Underline the adjective phrases in the following sentences. Then, draw an arrow from each phrase to the noun or pronoun it modifies.

**Example 1.** Charles Dickens wrote many tales about poverty.

1. *A Christmas Carol* is the story of a rich man’s repentance.
2. Ebenezer Scrooge was a man of wealth and property.
3. His clerk, Bob Cratchit, led a difficult life in poverty.
4. Spirits from the past, present, and future warned Scrooge.
5. One of the spirits showed Scrooge the poor, yet happy, Cratchit family.
6. Dickens also began writing a story about a mysterious disappearance.
8. Unfortunately, the death of Charles Dickens cut short the story.
9. The mystery of Edwin Drood’s disappearance remains unsolved.
10. The possible fate of the young man has fascinated countless readers.

---

**EXERCISE B** Underline each adjective phrase in the following sentences, and draw an arrow from the phrase to the word it modifies.

**Example 1.** Microorganisms in the bodies of people and animals cause disease.

11. Louis Pasteur was dean of a university’s science faculty.
12. The process of sterilization of milk is called pasteurization.
13. Bacteria as the cause of disease was a new idea then.
14. Pasteur’s studies of infectious diseases in animals helped him formulate his germ theory.
15. Pasteur developed a vaccine against rabies in humans.
The Adverb Phrase

A prepositional phrase used as an adverb is called an adverb phrase.

**5d.** An adverb phrase modifies a verb, an adjective, or an adverb.

**EXAMPLES**
- *In the morning,* my sister and I jog five miles. [The adverb phrase *In the morning* modifies the verb *jog.*]
- Jessica is active in several sports. [The adverb phrase *in several sports* modifies the adjective *active.*]

**Exercise** Underline the adverb phrases in the following sentences. Draw an arrow from each adverb phrase to the verb, verb phrase, adjective, or adverb it modifies.

**Example 1.** The Ford Motor Company was founded by Henry Ford in 1903.
1. Cars have not always been made in factories.
2. At one time, cars were manufactured by hand.
3. People were ready for a change.
4. Through mass production, Henry Ford changed the world.
5. By 1908, the company was producing one hundred cars in a day.
6. In 1913, the Ford Motor Company was manufacturing cars on an assembly line.
7. A moving-belt conveyor was used in the assembly process.
8. This new method added speed to the manufacturing process.
9. Henry Ford put workers on assembly lines.
10. The employees worked repeatedly at the same tasks.
11. Early in the 1900s, low-priced cars were selling rapidly.
12. The Model T was popular for its affordability.
13. For almost twenty years, the Model T outsold all other cars.
14. Under Ford’s leadership, the Ford Motor Company grew into a highly successful business.
15. In 1945, Henry Ford II became the head of the company.
16. He directed the company for the next thirty-four years.
17. During the 1950s, the automobile became increasingly important.
18. Performance and styling became more important to consumers.
19. Ford cars and trucks are still driven in America today.
20. Throughout the world, Henry Ford is known as a great innovator.
Adjective and Adverb Phrases A

5c. An adjective phrase modifies a noun or a pronoun.

5d. An adverb phrase modifies a verb, an adjective, or an adverb.

**ADJECTIVE PHRASES**

The house with the driveway of red brick is ours.

**ADVERB PHRASES**

After school I rode my bicycle to a friend’s house.

**EXERCISE A** On the line provided, identify the underlined prepositional phrase by writing ADJ for adjective phrase or ADV for adverb phrase. Then, draw an arrow from each underlined prepositional phrase to the word or words it modifies.

Example  

1. At her first Olympic competition, Sonja Henie was eleven years old.

   1. Sonja was the daughter of a Norwegian fur dealer.

   2. Trained as an ice skater, she competed in the 1924 Olympics at age eleven.

   3. Her costume, a knee-length, flared skirt, made an impression on observers.

   4. This skirt might have been considered improper on an adult.

   5. However, opinions at the Olympics four years later had changed.

   6. Sonja left the 1928 Olympics with her first gold medal.

   7. Sonja introduced the elements of dance and showmanship to skating.

   8. Furthermore, Sonja did jumps that had been performed only by men.

   9. Sonja preferred to be treated like someone of great celebrity.

   10. She was considered temperamental by many.

**EXERCISE B** For each sentence below, underline each adjective phrase once and underline each adverb phrase twice.

Example 1. On weekends, many members of my family enjoy ice-skating.

11. Last winter we went to the ice-skating rink many times.

12. Once, my cousins Sarah and Cameron came with us.

13. The ice-skating rink in their hometown closed a few years ago.

14. My mother did figure eights in the center of the rink.

15. Sarah and Cameron especially enjoyed the music from the 1950s.
Adjective and Adverb Phrases B

An adjective phrase modifies a noun or a pronoun.

An adverb phrase modifies a verb, an adjective, or an adverb.

**ADJECTIVE PHRASES**

We climbed a mountain with a steep slope on the west side.

**ADVERB PHRASES**

On Saturday night, we went to a jazz concert.

**EXERCISE A** Underline each prepositional phrase in the following sentences, and draw an arrow from the phrase to the word it modifies.

**Example 1.** The first perfect score in Olympic Games history was earned by Nadia Comaneci.

1. Nadia Comaneci competed in the 1976 Olympic Games in Montreal.
2. Her performance on the uneven bars occurred during the first game day.
3. This fourteen-year-old girl from Romania received a judges’ mark of 10.00.
4. In the gymnastic events, Nadia earned a total of three gold medals and seven perfect scores.
5. Nadia was very happy about the first perfect score in Olympic history.
6. Nadia’s achievements led many young girls to gymnastics classes.
7. In 1980, she won two gold medals and two silver medals.
8. She was also enjoying her fame in Romania.
10. There, she met a fellow gymnast, Bart Conner, whom she later married in Bucharest, Romania.

**EXERCISE B** For each sentence below, underline each adjective phrase once and underline each adverb phrase twice.

**Example 1.** How often do you go to the movies?

11. I recently saw an excellent movie about space travel.
12. In the movie, the travelers explored distant planets.
13. They visited one planet with rings that resembled Saturn.
14. Across its surface, the planet also had huge mountain ranges.
15. I really enjoyed the scenery in that movie.
for CHAPTER 5: THE PHRASE page 144

The Participle

5e. A participle is a verb form that can be used as an adjective.

(1) Present participles end in –ing.
(2) Past participles usually end in –d or –ed. Some past participles are formed irregularly.

PRESENT PARTICIPLES  Concentrating carefully, Steve hit the speeding ball.
PAST PARTICIPLES  An experienced player, Josh was the chosen pitcher.

EXERCISE A  In each of the following sentences, circle the participle that modifies the underlined noun or pronoun.

Example  1. The stretched net suddenly broke.
1. The elected captain thanked her teammates.
2. The shouting fans encouraged the runners.
3. The painted goal posts were hard to miss.
4. The cheering crowd stomped their feet in the bleachers.
5. The lines on the track, newly painted, guided the runners.
6. Spiking the volleyball, she scored another point for her team.
7. The sports equipment, mistreated all year, looked old.
8. Smiling cheerleaders stepped in front of the crowd.
9. The popcorn vendor, calling loudly, climbed the bleachers.

EXERCISE B  Underline the participle that is used as an adjective in each of the following sentences, and draw an arrow to the noun or pronoun it modifies.

Example  1. I covered the shivering child with a blanket.
11. Playing in the sand, the children laughed happily.
12. Cheryl’s chosen career is engineering.
13. Is all this used furniture for sale?
14. Tad’s older sister, talking excitedly, explained the joke to us.
15. The fallen leaves still covered the ground in early spring.
The Participial Phrase

A participial phrase consists of a participle together with its modifiers and complements. The entire phrase is used as an adjective.

**Example**  Standing in a long line, the group of teenagers waited to see the new movie.

**EXERCISE A**  Underline each participial phrase in the following sentences, and draw an arrow from it to the noun or pronoun it modifies.

**Example 1.**  Born in 1899, Alfred Hitchcock lived eighty-one years.
1. Alfred Hitchcock, respected by his colleagues, earned an important place among film directors.
2. Known as the “master of suspense,” he created dark, suspenseful moods in his films.
3. Remaining faithful to this trademark tone, he directed movies throughout five decades.
4. Hitchcock’s films, criticized by some, maintained a dramatic flair.
5. Some of the movies directed by Hitchcock are *Dial M for Murder, Rear Window,* and *The Birds.*
6. Turning to the television format, Hitchcock also hosted a series for television.
7. The television show hosted by Hitchcock was *Alfred Hitchcock Presents.*
8. It was a mystery series featuring a different story and different actors each week.
9. Still airing as reruns, episodes feature actors such as Robert Redford.
10. Never honored with an Academy Award for best director, Hitchcock remains best director to many fans.

**EXERCISE B**  On the lines provided, write sentences using the following word groups as participial phrases. Then, circle the noun or pronoun that each participial phrase modifies.

**Example 1.**  talking to her friends  *Talking to her friends, Jen walked by me without stopping.*
11. painted a bright yellow
12. blowing wildly in the wind
13. frozen solid as a rock
14. singing in the shower
15. stuffed into my tiny locker
Participle and Participial Phrases A

A participle is a verb form that can be used as an adjective.

PARTICLE The crying child asked for his mother.

A participial phrase consists of a participle together with its modifiers and complements. The entire phrase is used as an adjective.

PARTICIPIAL PHRASE The record broken by the pitcher was impressive.

Exercise Circle each participle used as an adjective in the following sentences. If the participle has modifiers or complements, underline the complete participial phrase.

Examples 1. Scattered evidence was found in the house.

2. Hammering the nails, Midori envisioned the treehouse she would have.

1. The baking bread smelled delicious.

2. Shaped like a flag, the sand sculpture won first prize.

3. Under a pile of magazines lay the forgotten letter.

4. Frozen blueberries are his favorite dessert.

5. Devoted soccer fans are looking forward to the season.

6. Waking slowly, the dog stretched its legs.

7. From behind the tree came a screeching sound.

8. The lion basking in the sun looked sleepy.

9. Surrounded by the smell of apples, I walked through the orchard.

10. I heard something pounding against the windowpane.

11. Leaping into the air, the dancer thrilled the audience.

12. The athlete, sweating heavily, grabbed a towel and a bottle of water.

13. I did not want to eat the burned potatoes that my sister had cooked.

14. Stapled in the corner, the test booklet contained ten pages.

15. Closely written, the words filled every space on the diary pages.

16. Jake, slipping on a banana peel, let out a shriek.

17. Smiling, I opened my birthday present.

18. Examined by a doctor, his wrist will heal soon.

19. I shook the brightly wrapped gift before opening it.

20. The pet chosen by Trisha is a baby rabbit.
Participles and Participial Phrases B

A **participle** is a verb form that can be used as an adjective.

**EXAMPLES**

Did you see the **flying** bird?

Perhaps we will find a **hidden** treasure.

A **participial phrase** consists of a participle together with its modifiers and complements. The entire phrase is used as an adjective.

**EXAMPLE**

The tree **struck by lightning** has fallen.

**EXERCISE**

Underline once the participles and participial phrases used as adjectives in the following sentences. Then, underline twice the word or words each participle or participial phrase modifies.

**Example 1.** Excited by the good news, Sherry called all her friends.

1. The clown entertaining the children at the party was funny.
2. He had a surprised look on his face.
3. We were awakened last night by a barking dog.
4. Students participating in the event will meet after school.
5. The woman wandering down the street was wearing a red hat.
6. Surrounded by her closest friends, Jane enjoyed her birthday party.
7. As we entered the room, we noticed the broken vase on the floor.
8. Her dad comforted her with a reassuring smile.
9. The wooded site was a perfect place to camp for the night.
10. Startled by the noise, the cat scrambled under the chair.
11. Finally, they could see the train approaching in the distance.
12. Everyone involved in the discussion expressed his or her opinion.
13. We were happy with the services provided by that company.
14. The married couple set out on their honeymoon.
15. When we were young, my friends and I always hoped to find buried treasure.
16. Damaged by the storm, the car no longer ran.
17. The school threw a huge party for the teacher retiring this year.
18. We have to turn in our written work by the end of the week.
19. The man jogging up the hill is my grandfather.
20. Beatriz has always been a committed person.
The Infinitive

**An infinitive** is a verb form that can be used as a noun, an adjective, or an adverb. Most infinitives begin with *to*.

**INFinitive USED AS Noun**
- To heal was the athlete’s first priority.

**INFinitive USED AS ADJECTIVE**
- The player to watch this season is Rodney.

**INFinitive USED AS ADVERB**
- This speech will be easy to memorize.

**EXERCISE** Underline the infinitives in the following sentences. If a sentence does not contain an infinitive, write *none* after the sentence.

**Examples**

1. Which is the healthier meal to eat?  
   - **none**

2. Will you give your dessert to me?  
   - **none**

3. When you need help with math, Maddie is the one to ask.

4. When I play racquetball, I play to win.

5. Robin Hood stole from the rich and gave to the poor.

6. To interrupt was not my intention.

7. If you start the project, you must be sure to finish.

8. In my opinion, the fashion accessory to have this season is a silver charm bracelet.

9. I go to the local thrift store to shop.

10. The clothing to donate is in a box.

11. Our plan for the day is to hike.

12. To whom should I address this letter?

13. Some people think it is refreshing to swim.

14. I don’t know which film to recommend.

15. Have you decided what you want to eat?

16. Going to the YMCA is fine with me.

17. To exercise is one of my goals this semester.

18. Has Juanita begun to study?

19. Shelly recommended a great poem to read.

20. Roberto went home early to rest.
The Infinitive Phrase

An infinitive phrase consists of an infinitive together with its modifiers and complements. The entire phrase may be used as a noun, an adjective, or an adverb.

NOUN To stay in shape requires dedication and discipline.
ADJECTIVE The thing to do first is an activity you enjoy.
ADVERB I came to Austin to see the art exhibit.

Exercise A For each of the following sentences, underline the infinitive phrase. If a sentence does not contain an infinitive phrase, write none after the sentence.

Example 1. The place to go for information is the library.
1. At the library I found a book about yoga to read over the weekend.
2. The goal of yoga is to relieve stress and tension.
3. Around test time, I definitely need to reduce stress!
4. Yoga also helps to increase flexibility and muscle tone.
5. To most people, beginning a yoga routine is easy.
6. The yoga positions to practice first can be learned from a book or video.
7. To do the more difficult movements and stretches requires more experience.
8. At that point, it is probably better to work with a yoga instructor.
9. For now, I’ve chosen to learn a routine that increases flexibility.
10. After I master the basics, I’ll train to become a yoga instructor.

Exercise B On the lines provided, write sentences using each of the following infinitive phrases.

Example 1. to make the honor roll
To make the honor roll, I must improve my grades.

11. to wake me up in the morning

12. to arrive at La Guardia Airport in New York

13. to surprise my best friend

14. to plan the party for Saturday night

15. to succeed in my goals
**Exercise**

Underline the infinitives and infinitive phrases in the following sentences.

Example 1. Elston went to the library to **write his paper**.

1. Pepita decided to join the track team.
2. Lamont wants to learn Spanish before fall.
3. Courtney is planning to sell more tickets to our school play.
4. Robert Fulton, who built the first successful steamboat, tried to invent a practical submarine.
5. To learn about agriculture was George Washington Carver’s goal.
6. Krista was happy to finish the art project.
7. Elena offered to wash the car.
8. Justin was reluctant to try raw fish.
9. **To fly** was Wilbur Wright’s dream.
10. Some astronauts have had the opportunity to journey into space.
11. The time to begin a paper is long before the paper is due.
12. The option to choose is the one that causes the least trouble.
13. To do research in the library can be very productive.
14. That car was the first one to be sold this year.
15. The effort to rescue the kitten ended in success.
16. Elian was laughing too hard to speak.
17. Press the button to ring the doorbell.
18. To see the ocean for the first time is a thrilling experience.
19. We are ready to start the race.
20. He was the first person to run a four-minute mile.

---

**Infinitives and Infinitive Phrases A**

**5g.** An **infinitive** is a verb form that can be used as a noun, an adjective, or an adverb. Most infinitives begin with **to**.

**5h.** An **infinitive phrase** consists of an infinitive together with its modifiers and complements. The entire phrase may be used as a noun, an adjective, or an adverb.

- **Noun**  To swim before school is refreshing.
- **Adjective**  The request **to make to Mom** is for a new coat.
- **Adverb**  Janet was too shy to **answer**.
Infinitives and Infinitive Phrases B

Exercise A  Underline the infinitives and infinitive phrases in the following sentences.

Example 1.  Theo wanted to build a treehouse.
1. Roberta sliced the bread to serve it to her dinner guests.
2. My mother’s favorite dish to cook is lasagna.
3. To remove stains from clothes, I recommend washing them in hot, soapy water.
4. Justin likes to conduct research on the Internet on the weekends.
5. To travel to Argentina was Elena’s wish for the new year.
6. We called Peter and Laura to ask them about our homework assignment.
7. The number to call for that information has been changed.
8. Rafael and Alex were happy to meet their new neighbors.
9. We peeked at the baby in the crib to see her.
10. David told his little sister a vivid story to entertain her after dinner.

Exercise B  Write sentences using each of the following infinitives and infinitive phrases.

Example 1.  to learn more about South American history
11. to try new things
12. to create
13. to plan a trip
14. to enjoy
15. to work hard

5g.  An infinitive is a verb form that can be used as a noun, an adjective, or an adverb. Most infinitives begin with to.

5h.  An infinitive phrase consists of an infinitive together with its modifiers and complements. The entire phrase may be used as a noun, an adjective, or an adverb.
for CHAPTER 5: THE PHRASE pages 144–149

Verbal Phrases A

Two types of verbal phrases are participial phrases and infinitive phrases.

5f. A participial phrase consists of a participle together with its modifiers and complements. The entire phrase is used as an adjective.

5h. An infinitive phrase consists of an infinitive together with its modifiers and complements. The entire phrase may be used as a noun, an adjective, or an adverb.

PARTICIPIAL PHRASE Becoming thirsty from the heat, I looked for a water fountain.

INFINITIVE PHRASE My only concern was to quench my thirst.

Exercise A On the line provided, identify each underlined phrase by writing inf for infinitive phrase or part for participial phrase.

Example part 1. Tired from the walk, Aurelio lay down for a short nap.

1. Eric hopes to see the Great Wall of China someday.
2. Singing a happy tune, Marcia strolled down the street.
3. Built last year, one new home sits proudly on top of a hill.
4. To travel to India is Devorah’s goal.
5. A classical music concert is a joy to attend on a relaxing weekend.

Exercise B Underline the verbal phrase in each of the following sentences. Then, on the line provided, identify the phrase by writing part for participial phrase or inf for infinitive phrase.

Examples part 1. The languages commonly spoken in Canada are French and English.

inf 2. To speak fluent French is my goal.

6. One requirement of airline pilots is to speak and understand English.
7. People speaking Chinese outnumber those who speak English.
8. To learn a second language is certainly worthwhile.
9. Signs posted in international airports are often in several languages.
10. To visit a foreign country is the desire of many young people.
11. They want to experience different customs, foods, and environments.
12. Knowing Spanish, a person can travel in Mexico and South America without a language barrier.
13. I would also like to go to São Paulo, Brazil.
14. If you like to travel by boat, perhaps you should visit Venice.
15. Tourists looking for beautiful views might visit Denmark.
Verbal Phrases B

Two types of verbal phrases are participial phrases and infinitive phrases.

5f. A participial phrase consists of a participle together with its modifiers and complements. The entire phrase is used as an adjective.

5h. An infinitive phrase consists of an infinitive together with its modifiers and complements. The entire phrase may be used as a noun, an adjective, or an adverb.

PARTICIPIAL PHRASE  Pressed for time, Susan quickly bought her ticket and boarded the plane.

INFINITIVE PHRASE  She felt lucky to have a seat next to the window.

Exercise A  On the line provided, identify each underlined phrase by writing inf for infinitive phrase or part for participial phrase.

Example  part  1. Struggling intensely, the toddler finally took his first step.

1. I would like to know the name of that singer.
2. Sarah and Katie stood in line to see the band.
3. Susan and Michelle, returning from their trip, told stories about their adventures.
4. To buy a car is Laura’s main objective this summer.
5. Recently released on video, the highly praised movie quickly became a big seller.

Exercise B  Underline the verbal phrase in each of the following sentences. Then, on the line provided, identify the phrase by writing part for participial phrase or inf for infinitive phrase.

Examples  part  1. The raw vegetables, chopped into bite-sized pieces, made a crunchy snack.

inf  2. After the concert, we decided to go for a walk around the lake.

6. I caught my younger sister eavesdropping behind my bedroom door.
7. The anvil, dropped from a great height, hit the sidewalk hard.
8. Splashing in the shallow water, the children enjoyed their day at the beach.
9. The city passed a law to protect endangered animals.
10. Juanita was happy to find the letter.
11. We raked all the leaves fallen from the trees during autumn.
12. Ending the speech, the candidate received loud applause.
13. “If you want to know the end of the story,” Gloria said, “read the book.”
14. The dog, covered in mud from the backyard, left tracks as he ran through the house.
15. To end the game well was Kevin’s only wish.
EXERCISE A  Underline each prepositional phrase in each of the following sentences. Then, draw an arrow from the phrase to the word or words it modifies.

Example 1. A bath in warm water before bed relaxes your muscles.

1. Scientists have studied patterns of human sleep.
2. Our nightly rest consists of light sleep and deep sleep.
3. Some people sleep on their backs.
4. Other people rest on their sides quite comfortably.
5. The origin of dreams has interested some people.
6. One theory is that we write our own script for each dream.
7. Some dreams appear in color.
8. The amount of sleep a person gets affects how often he or she dreams.
9. Some nightmares may be caused by tension, worries, and nervousness.
10. Most adults dream at regular intervals.

EXERCISE B  Underline the verbal phrase in each of the following sentences. Then, identify the phrase on the line provided by writing part for participial phrase or inf for infinitive phrase.

Example part 1. The rain, falling gently, had a steady rhythm.

____ 11. To forecast the weather is not a simple process.
____ 12. Gathered from weather stations and satellites, data change continually.
____ 13. Barometers, designed for measuring air pressure, detect weather changes.
____ 14. The clouds forming in the sky also indicate weather conditions.
____ 15. To measure precipitation, gauges are used.
____ 16. Instruments indicating wind speed and direction are important tools.
____ 17. Monitoring temperature changes, local news stations report current information throughout the day.
____ 18. To study weather changes is the job of a meteorologist.
____ 19. Using maps and technical equipment, meteorologists forecast weather conditions and changes.
____ 20. Hurricanes and floods, feared for their destructiveness, attract national attention.
EXERCISE A  Underline each prepositional phrase in the following sentences, and draw an arrow from the phrase to the word or words it modifies.

Example 1. The submarine beneath the sea lies in wait.

1. Submarines can travel on the surface of the water.
2. They also move quite well beneath the surface.
3. Submarines deploy in times of war.
4. Many modern submarines run on nuclear power.
5. During operations, nuclear-powered submarines remain deep under the water’s surface.
6. Satellites bounce back information from distances high above the earth.
7. In the future, more and more information will be sent by satellite.
8. The news on television comes to us by satellite.
9. Cables under the ocean carry messages to our homes.
10. During the 1920s, few people would have dreamed of such marvels in our own homes.

EXERCISE B  Underline the verbal phrase in each of the following sentences. Then, identify the phrase by writing part for participial phrase or inf for infinitive phrase.

Example 1. Tennessee, admitted to the Union in 1796, is in the South.

______ 11. Planning a family trip to Tennessee, my grandfather gathered information.
______ 12. He wrote the tourist information center a letter asking for information.
______ 13. My sisters wanted to visit Nashville.
______ 14. They wished to see the Grand Ole Opry House.
______ 15. My cousins wanted to visit different places in Tennessee.
______ 16. Gatlinburg, located at the entrance of the Great Smoky Mountains National Park, was a popular choice.
______ 17. Topping the list of second choices, Memphis received many votes.
______ 18. To hike in the mountains was my choice.
______ 19. The destination finally agreed upon by my entire family was Nashville.
______ 20. It was difficult to choose the location of our trip in such an interesting state.
**Exercise A**  In each of the following sentences, identify the underlined phrase by writing above it prep for prepositional phrase or part for participial phrase.

**Example 1.** Traveling in Thailand, Faith learned a great deal about this Eastern nation.

1. The Kingdom of Thailand is one of ten nations in Southeast Asia.
2. Bangkok, located near the Gulf of Thailand, is Thailand’s capital.
3. Producing vehicles and agricultural crops, Thailand is a rapidly developing nation.
4. Thailand is the world’s largest producer of natural rubber.
5. Named Siam until 1938, Thailand is a constitutional monarchy.
6. Thailand is bordered by Myanmar, Laos, Cambodia, and Malaysia.
7. Colored red, white, and blue, the Thai flag has five horizontal stripes.
8. The monsoon season in Thailand lasts from May to October.
9. Founded in the sixth century B.C., Buddhism is Thailand’s principal religion.
10. Covering approximately 198,000 square miles, Thailand is smaller than the state of Texas.

**Exercise B**  Underline the verbal phrase in each of the following sentences. Then, identify the phrase by writing above it part for participial phrase or inf for infinitive phrase.

**Example 1.** To take better notes in class is one of my goals this year.

11. Hopping slowly across the dirt road, the frog finally reached the pond.
12. The concerto composed by the cellist was performed at the recital.
13. The best room to use for the spring dance is the large ballroom.
14. Yesterday, we saw a squirrel collecting food for the winter.
15. Scattered on the ground, the fall leaves added color to the landscape.
16. Will all of these names and dates be too difficult to remember for the test?
17. I wanted to watch television, but I wrote my science report instead.
18. My raincoat, soaked in the downpour, dripped onto the floor.
19. I finally found Kris jogging through the park.
20. Arching its back, the cat hissed angrily at the snake.
EXERCISE A  For each of the following sentences, identify the subject and the verb in the underlined part of the sentence. Above the subject write S, and above the verb write V.

Example 1. At the local bookstore I bought a blank book.
1. An antique map of the world is on the cover of my journal.
2. To me, this map represents the undiscovered areas of my mind.
3. When I read entries from months ago, I usually learn something about myself.
4. I often write about experiences because I need an outlet for my emotions.
5. I vent my frustrations in writing, and I feel better afterwards.

EXERCISE B  For each of the following sentences, identify the underlined word group by writing above it C for clause or NC for not a clause.

Example 1. Writing down the angry comments that I think of is better than saying them aloud to a friend.
6. If I let a few days go by, I usually do not feel the same anger.
7. I then wonder what would have happened if I had actually said those things aloud!
8. During the past two years, I have filled four blank books with journal entries.
9. I know that many fascinating novelists and poets kept journals.
10. Sometimes the writer will use his or her own experiences to inspire a story.
11. Although I do not enjoy feeling sadness or fear, I am able to write about them convincingly.
12. I can write convincingly because I have experienced these emotions myself.
13. Several of my friends have told me that my stories should be published.
14. Not even my best friend, whom I have known for three years, has ever read my journal.
15. I believe that everyone deserves a certain amount of privacy.
The Independent Clause

**Examples**  Sheldon can make homemade pizzas.
             Sheldon can make homemade pizzas, and he made one for me.

**Exercise A**  Underline the independent clause or clauses in each of the following sentences.

**Examples**  1. Sheldon opened a can of pizza dough, and then he spread the dough in a pan.
               2. He used a nonstick pan because he wanted cleanup to be easy.
               3. After he prepared the dough, Sheldon washed mushrooms, green peppers, and an onion.
               4. He peeled the onion, and he chopped the vegetables into bite-size chunks.
               5. The next step was sautéing the vegetables until they were tender.
               6. I wanted to make myself useful, so I grated the mozzarella and Parmesan cheese.
               7. Now we had two bowls of ingredients, which were the vegetables and the cheese.
               8. I also opened a jar of pizza sauce, and I spread the sauce on the dough.
               9. Then came the fun part!
              10. Sheldon spread the vegetables evenly across the sauce, and I added the cheese on top.
              11. After baking at 450° for twenty-five minutes, the pizza was ready.
              12. What a delicious pizza it was!

**Exercise B**  For each of the following sentences, identify the underlined word group by writing above it I for independent clause or NI for not an independent clause.

**Example**  1. Since I met you, I’ve become more interested in baseball.
               2. I never watched baseball games on television before meeting you.
               3. We then watched games for several weekends in a row.
               4. Now I understand the game much better.
               5. When the game makes sense, it is suspenseful and enjoyable.
               6. Since I have never played baseball, you can teach me!
The Subordinate Clause

6c. A subordinate (or dependent) clause does not express a complete thought and cannot stand by itself as a complete sentence.

A subordinate clause must be joined with at least one independent clause to make a sentence and express a complete thought.

EXAMPLES Since I was curious about acupuncture, I looked it up in an encyclopedia.

The information that I found was fascinating.

EXERCISE A Identify the underlined clause in each of the following sentences by writing above it SUB for subordinate clause or IND for independent clause.

Example 1. Acupuncture, which is my research topic, is a Chinese medical technique.

1. Although acupuncture is an ancient medical technique, it is still in use today.
2. The treatment is based on the idea that it helps bring into balance the yin and the yang.
3. Many areas of the world, including China, use this technique.
4. If you have a fear of needles, do not try acupuncture.
5. Acupuncture involves the insertion of tiny needles, which are made of metal, into the skin.
6. Since this technique uses no medication, some people may prefer it to prescription medicines.
7. For example, someone suffering mental depression might choose acupuncture over medication.
8. Other disorders that acupuncture treats are swollen joints, nosebleeds, and heart pains.
9. In China, patients who have surgery may choose acupuncture as anesthesia.
10. Until I’m braver, I won’t try acupuncture.

EXERCISE B Underline the subordinate clause in each sentence.

Example 1. I studied the philosophy of yin-yang because it emphasizes balance.

11. According to ancient belief, the yin and the yang are two forces that make up all aspects of life.
12. The symbol of the yin and yang, which is a circle with intertwining black and white teardrop shapes, is familiar to many people.
13. Since yin, the female half, represents earth and darkness, it is the black half.
14. Because the yang, the male half, represents brightness and the heavens, it is the white half.
15. In yin-yang philosophy, which values harmony and balance, the black and the white are equally important.
for CHAPTER 6: THE CLAUSE page 158

Independent and Subordinate Clauses A

**6b.** An *independent* (or *main*) clause expresses a complete thought and can stand by itself as a sentence.

**6c.** A *subordinate* (or *dependent*) clause does not express a complete thought and cannot stand by itself as a complete sentence.

**INDEPENDENT CLAUSE** If you need me, I will help you.

**SUBORDINATE CLAUSE** If you need me, I will help you.

**EXERCISE** For each of the following sentences, identify the underlined word group by writing above it *IND* for *independent clause* or *SUB* for *subordinate clause*.

**Example 1.** The friend who is visiting this weekend is Melody.

1. When Jeremy called last night, I was not at home.
2. I know the woman who owns that store.
3. John is the boy who is on the swim team.
4. It is hot today; please water the garden.
5. If he finishes his report on time, he can go to the beach Saturday.
6. This is the poem that I memorized last year.
7. The student whom I recommend for class president is Lindsey.
8. I can’t concentrate when you practice the trumpet with your door open.
9. Although these colors are beautiful, I don’t like the painting.
10. The man whom you met is the president of the group.
11. The girls who painted that mural live in my neighborhood.
12. When you reach the end of the hallway, turn right.
13. Please fold these clothes before they become wrinkled.
14. After we wrapped the presents, we hurried to the post office.
15. We didn’t go to her party because we went camping that weekend.
16. The trees that my great-grandfather planted still shade the farmhouse.
17. Whenever you dust the shelves, I sneeze.
18. My aunt stays at our house when she comes to the city for business meetings.
19. The CD that you borrowed last week is due at the library today.
20. Preheat the oven to 350°, and take the chicken out of the refrigerator.
Independent and Subordinate Clauses B

**6b.** An independent (or main) clause expresses a complete thought and can stand by itself as a sentence.

**6c.** A subordinate (or dependent) clause does not express a complete thought and cannot stand by itself as a complete sentence.

**INDEPENDENT CLAUSE**

When you call Jane, **ask her for that book.**

**SUBORDINATE CLAUSE**

When you call Jane, ask her for that book.

**Exercise**

On the lines provided, add independent clauses to the following subordinate clauses to express complete thoughts. Make sure each sentence begins with a capital letter and has end punctuation.

Example 1. after we left the pizza parlor

**We went to a movie after we left the pizza parlor.**

1. when I graduate from high school

2. whose sweater was lost

3. which is a good book

4. until Mark moved to Chicago

5. after the game was over

6. that caused the accident

7. since I met you in art class

8. until I call you on Friday

9. whom I assist as a student aide during my free period

10. because I didn’t think before I spoke
The Adjective Clause A

**Exercise A**  For each of the following sentences, identify the underlined word or word group by writing above it **ADJ** for adjective, **AP** for adjective phrase, or **AC** for adjective clause.

**Example 1.** The house with peeling paint is at the end of the street.

1. This thick **sweater** should keep me warm in the snow.
2. The CD that Thomas scratched **will no longer play**.
3. The puppy with white paws **was chewing on your shoe**.
4. The people whom I invited to my study session are bringing snacks.
5. Go find your **waterproof boots**.
6. The subway station **that is near my apartment is closed for repairs**.
7. The patient **in the wheelchair has a broken leg**.
8. That team member **who raises the most funds will receive an award**.
9. The **injured bird was taken to the veterinarian**.
10. This shade of paint, **which is not very pretty, was on sale at the hardware store**.

**Exercise B**  Underline the adjective clause, and circle the word or words that it modifies.

**Example 1.** The **sport that I tried out for is softball**.

11. Softball is a popular game that is played throughout the United States.
12. The game, which comes from an 1880s indoor baseball game, resembles baseball.
13. People who play softball are aware of slight differences in the two games.
14. The field that is used for softball is smaller than a baseball field.
15. The game, which lasts only seven innings, is shorter than a baseball game.
16. A softball is larger and softer than the ball that is used for baseball.
17. Those who play softball are familiar with a variation called slow pitch.
18. Softball pitching, which is done underhand, is different from baseball pitching.
19. Players whom I especially envy can hit the ball out of the park!
20. The pitcher, whose pitches determine the course of the game, is my favorite player.
EXERCISE For each of the following sentences, identify the underlined word or word group by writing above it *ADJ* for adjective, *AP* for adjective phrase, or *AC* for adjective clause. Then, circle the word or words the adjective, adjective phrase, or adjective clause modifies.

Example 1. The test, which lasted only one hour, was not difficult.

1. Nico wanted to find a chess set with magnetic pieces.
2. This cat has long, silky fur.
3. The soccer field in the park needs to be mowed.
4. I should have warned you about the chair with the broken leg.
5. The story that she told us was certainly fascinating.
6. The boys found the old map in a box underneath the bed.
7. The ship sank in a violent storm.
8. My mother introduced us to her uncle, whom we had never met.
9. The telephones in that office ring constantly.
10. How much is the jacket with the red stripes on the sleeves?
11. The bread, which was still warm from the oven, tasted wonderful.
12. The weather announcer warned everyone about the hurricane that was near the coast.
13. We will need to paint this old table, which my father bought at a garage sale.
14. Don’t forget about the clothes in the dryer!
15. The new shoes, which he had left out in the rain, were ruined.
16. Tricia and her sister made the decorations that you see on the walls.
17. Did you remember to turn off the lights in the classroom?
18. The student who sits next to me was born in China.
19. The cathedral had magnificent stained-glass windows.
20. The novel, which will be made into a movie, was hard to put down.
Relative Pronouns

An adjective clause is usually introduced by a relative pronoun.

**RELATIVE PRONOUNS**
- that, which, who, whom, whose

**ADJECTIVE CLAUSES**
- the book that I read
- the man who called

**Exercise A**
Each of the following items is a noun modified by an adjective or an adjective phrase. On the lines provided, rewrite each item so that it contains an adjective clause instead of an adjective or adjective phrase.

**Example 1.** the boy with the torn jacket

1. the player with the bat
2. the softball field at our school
3. the best team
4. the fastest runner
5. the player with the best batting average

**Exercise B**
Complete each of the following sentences with an adjective clause. Then, circle each relative pronoun.

**Example 1.** The concession stand, which sells hot dogs and pretzels, is open.

6. In the crowd I looked for the player
7. I envied the ticket holders
8. The banners distracted me from the game.
9. Arriving late, the father and son sat in the seats
10. They ordered the hot dogs
11. The home team’s pitcher, who was playing well,
12. The first batter, who struck out,
13. Did you see the home run?
14. Will the outfielder catch the balls?
15. The shortstop is the one
The Adverb Clause A

6e. An adverb clause is a subordinate clause that modifies a verb, an adjective, or an adverb.

Unlike an adverb phrase, an adverb clause contains both a verb and its subject.

**ADVERB PHRASE**  With great speed, Tomás ran the race.

**ADVERB CLAUSE**  Because Tomás ran the race with great speed, he won.

**EXERCISE A**  For each of the following sentences, identify the underlined word or word group by writing above it A for adverb, AP for adverb phrase, or AC for adverb clause.

Example 1. I started painting early so that I would finish by 3:00 P.M.

1. The employee at the hardware store mixed the paint carefully.
2. He matched the paint sample I brought with me.
3. As much as I enjoy painting, I have other things to do.
4. Do not paint the fence until you scrape off the old paint chips.
5. You should also sand the wood so that the new paint adheres evenly.
6. Before you start, spread an old towel or sheet under the work area.
7. The dropcloth will catch paint if it drips from your brush.
8. Because I did such a great job on our fence, the neighbor asked me to paint his fence.
9. I can paint his fence sometime during summer vacation.
10. As soon as I finish cleaning these brushes, I'm taking the rest of the day off.

**EXERCISE B**  Underline the adverb clause in each of the following sentences. Then, identify the question the adverb clause answers by writing above it how, when, where, why, how much, or under what condition.

Example 1. Please come over whenever you finish your homework.

11. I ate a bowl of popcorn while I did my homework.
12. We will have to hurry if we want to catch the 5:30 bus.
13. From the top of the hill, you can see trees wherever you look.
14. I need to borrow a pencil because I left mine at home.
15. The puppies act as if they are hungry.
16. A giraffe is taller than an elephant is.
17. Before we left for our vacation, we unplugged the computer.
18. Since I love mystery stories, I enjoy books by Agatha Christie.
19. They watch more television programs than I do.
20. Set the potted plants where they will get plenty of light.
The Adverb Clause B

6e. An adverb clause is a subordinate clause that modifies a verb, an adjective, or an adverb.

Unlike an adverb phrase, an adverb clause contains both a verb and its subject.

**ADVERB**
She shoots the basketball **accurately**.

**ADVERB PHRASE**
She shoots the basketball **with accuracy**.

**ADVERB CLAUSE**
She made the basket **because she shot the ball accurately**.

**Exercise**
For each of the following sentences, identify the underlined word or word group by writing above it ADV for adverb, AP for adverb phrase, or AC for adverb clause. Then, circle the word or words the adverb, adverb phrase, or adverb clause modifies.

**Example 1.** Although he ran as fast as he could, he missed the bus.

1. The stonecutters worked slowly and carefully.
2. Sweep the floor after you finish the project.
3. We sleep with the windows open whenever the weather is pleasant.
4. Before Sam went skating with his friends, he finished his homework.
5. In August, it is really hot at four o’clock.
6. The guide’s canoe glided silently across the lake.
7. I usually write in my journal after everyone else has gone to bed.
8. The lioness crouched warily in the tall grass.
9. After a hard day’s work, I always sleep soundly.
10. Yesterday I left my jacket in my locker.
11. I raised my hand because I knew the answer.
12. My father always waters his flower garden before he goes to work.
13. On Tuesdays and Thursdays, we practice after school.
14. The audience cheered and clapped enthusiastically.
15. The fly buzzed around the room.
16. As soon as you finish that book, please lend it to me.
17. Tom and Julie met us at the restaurant.
18. Never ride your bicycle without wearing a helmet.
19. Call me after you have finished your chores.
20. The lights went out during the thunderstorm.
Subordinating Conjunctions

Adverb clauses begin with *subordinating conjunctions*. Common subordinating conjunctions include after, although, as if, as soon as, because, before, if, since, than, unless, until, when, wherever, and while.

Some subordinating conjunctions, such as after, as, before, since, and until, can also be used as prepositions.

**SUBORDINATING CONJUNCTION**  
**PREPOSITION**  

After I weed the garden, I put mulch around my new plants.  
It becomes too hot to garden after two o’clock.

**EXERCISE A** For each of the following sentences, indicate how the underlined word is used by writing above it SC for *subordinating conjunction* or PREP for *preposition*.

**Example 1.** After the rain soaked the earth, many seedlings appeared.

1. I have been trying to finish shelling these beans since yesterday.
2. Until you have read the instructions, do not prune that tree.
3. As the moon rose, coyotes slipped out of the trees.
4. I expected more flowers in the garden after I had planted so many seeds.
5. After this long, hot afternoon of garden work, I need a nap.

**EXERCISE B** Underline the adverb clause in each sentence, and circle each subordinating conjunction.

**Example 1.** I patched the garden fence after I noticed the rabbits’ entry point.

6. As soon as the ground softens in the spring, plant your garden.
7. Some seeds take more time to sprout than others do.
8. If you want to grow morning glories, start the seeds under lights.
9. When the seeds sprout, you can transplant them into the garden.
10. Plant them near a fence or wall so that the plants can climb.
11. After the young plants grow strong, they will produce flowers.
12. The flowers will look as if they are big blue trumpets.
13. They’re called morning glories because they open each morning.
14. When they are warmed by the morning sun, they open.
15. If the day is dark or stormy, they stay tightly shut, like umbrellas.
**Adjective and Adverb Clauses A**

6d. **An adjective clause** is a subordinate clause that modifies a noun or a pronoun.

6e. **An adverb clause** is a subordinate clause that modifies a verb, an adjective, or an adverb.

**ADJECTIVE CLAUSE** Did you hear about the cow that jumped over the moon?

**ADVERB CLAUSE** I feel as if I’ve heard that nursery rhyme a hundred times.

---

**Exercise A** For each of the following sentences, identify the underlined clause by writing above it *ADJ* for adjective clause or *ADV* for adverb clause. Circle the word or words that the clause modifies.

**Example 1.** Because I enjoy reading to my baby nephew, I bought a book of nursery rhymes.

1. The rhyme that I like the most is about Jack and the candlestick.
2. Although I can’t remember all the words, I like the poem about Mary and her garden.
3. The woman whom I baby-sit for decorated her nursery with a Mother Goose theme.
4. You’ll probably overlook the tiny, thoughtful details unless you look closely.
5. The night light, for example, turns on automatically whenever the overhead light goes out.
6. The night light, which is made of plastic, bears the image of a cow jumping over the moon.
7. Stars are painted on the ceiling with special paint that glows in the dark.
8. Where the wall meets the ceiling, the letters of the alphabet are painted as a border.
9. A chalkboard has been attached to the wall so that the child can write on the “wall.”
10. The child whose room this is must enjoy spending time in his room.

**Exercise B** Underline the subordinate clause in each sentence. Then, identify the clause by writing above it *ADJ* for adjective clause or *ADV* for adverb clause.

**Example 1.** Linguistics, as I learned recently, is the study of language.

11. Some words that are in the English language come from people’s names.
12. Because Adolphe Sax invented the saxophone, it was named for him.
13. Most American trains had steam engines until Rudolf Diesel invented the diesel engine.
14. From Caesar, which was the title of Roman leaders, comes czar.
15. Theodore Roosevelt, who was President of the United States, inspired the term *teddy bear*.
16. We have the word *sideburns* because Ambrose Burnside had bushy whiskers.
17. Many words that we use every day are borrowed from other languages.
18. American Indians who lived in the Northeast gave us the word *chipmunk*.
19. Although the French word *bureau* means “desk,” we use it to mean “chest of drawers.”
20. From Spanish comes the word *patio*, which means “an open courtyard.”
Adjective and Adverb Clauses B

An adjective clause is a subordinate clause that modifies a noun or a pronoun.

An adverb clause is a subordinate clause that modifies a verb, an adjective, or an adverb.

**EXERCISE** For each of the following sentences, identify the underlined clause by writing above it **ADJ** for adjective clause or **ADV** for adverb clause. Circle the word or words that the underlined clause modifies.

**Example 1.** Although I shut the door tightly, the wind blew it open again.

1. Are these the videotapes that you wanted to borrow?
2. Please give that coat, which is too small for you, to your cousin.
3. Whenever I hear that song, I remember my last birthday party.
4. If we knew the telephone number, we could call the store for directions.
5. Laura, whom we saw at the movies last night, lives next door to our teacher.
6. My little brother, who is only three years old, knows the words to a lot of songs.
7. Before we got out of bed, my father had already cleared the snow off the sidewalk.
8. When I am older, I would like to travel in South America.
9. Although she didn’t mean to be unkind, her words hurt Camilla’s feelings.
10. Those documents, which had been missing for more than twenty years, were discovered in a kitchen drawer.
11. Until we learned how to use the compass, we wandered around the woods for hours.
12. That story is about a giant whose favorite food is Limburger cheese.
13. My young cousins laugh whenever I read the story to them.
14. People who like to fish must have a lot of patience.
15. Please address the envelopes before you leave this afternoon.
16. We brought this puppy to you because we know how much you like animals.
17. The mail carrier who delivers the mail to our house is always in a good mood.
18. The boys crouched behind the fence until they heard the car drive away.
19. My garden includes some flowers that bloom all year long.
20. The rug, which was woven by hand, once belonged to my grandmother.
**Review A: Clauses**

**Exercise A** For each of the following sentences, identify the underlined clause by writing above it **IND** for independent clause or **SUB** for subordinate clause.

**Example 1.** Although I don’t like Brussels sprouts, I politely ate them.

1. The student who owns the wallet may claim it at the school office.
2. This weekend we will wash the car, which badly needs a good scrub.
3. The plant has small orange flowers that open every morning.
4. As soon as I finish my report, let’s go to the movies.
5. Although she had never taken piano lessons, she could play very well.
6. Do you know the name of the boy whom we saw on the train?
7. We stopped for a picnic, which was very pleasant.
8. Please accept this gift that I made for you.
9. We practiced our roles in the play until we were sure of our lines.
10. I wonder where we should put the new plant we just bought.

**Exercise B** For each of the following sentences, underline the adjective clause and circle the relative pronoun. Then, draw an arrow from the clause to the noun or pronoun it modifies.

**Example 1.** Several friends who enjoy music are attending a concert with me.

11. The concert that we’ll hear tonight includes music by George Gershwin.
12. George Gershwin, who was a great American composer, wrote *Porgy and Bess*.
13. This opera, which is set in South Carolina, features jazz rhythms.
14. “Summertime,” which is a beautiful song, is a highlight of the show.
15. Gershwin did not write the lyrics that went with his songs.
16. The lyricist whom Gershwin most preferred was his brother, Ira.
17. George wrote the music, but it was Ira who wrote the words.
18. The Gershwin concert piece that I like the best is *An American in Paris*.
19. Gene Kelly stars in the movie that is based on this composition.
20. Kelly, who sings and dances to Gershwin’s music in the film, is superb.
Review B: Clauses

**EXERCISE A** Underline the adverb clause and circle the subordinating conjunction in each of the following sentences. Above the clause, write whether the clause tells *how*, *when*, *where*, *why*, *how much*, *how long*, or *under what condition*.

Example 1. Before the parade, I polished my trumpet until it shone.

1. Because I am in the high school band, I will march in the parade.
2. The parade will begin after all the bands and floats are in position.
3. Our band is larger than the band from Zavala Junior High School is.
4. Since we are larger, we will play “The Star-Spangled Banner.”
5. The parade will officially begin as soon as we finish the anthem.
6. After the parade, meet me where the band’s buses are parked.
7. If it is raining, meet me in the lobby of city hall.
8. The sky filled up with storm clouds as if it might rain.
9. Wherever I go, the weather seems to work against me!
10. As soon as I start to play my horn, the weather becomes a music critic.

**EXERCISE B** Underline the subordinate clause in each sentence. Then, identify the clause by writing above it *ADJ* for adjective clause or *ADV* for adverb clause.

Example 1. The performer whom I researched is Will Smith.

11. Will Smith, who has acted in films and television, has also made musical albums.
12. One of Smith’s songs, a rap solo performance that he made in 1998, won a Grammy.
13. Before he won this Grammy, he had costarred in a movie.
14. An actor with whom Smith has costarred is Tommy Lee Jones.
15. Before he started performing solo, Smith had been part of the duo called DJ Jazzy Jeff and the Fresh Prince.
16. After he and his partner won the first Grammy award for a rap performance, Smith starred in a popular television show.
17. If you have never seen a Will Smith performance, you have missed some fun.
18. Some of the movies that Smith has made are action-adventure films.
19. One film starring Smith was number one the year that it opened.
20. Smith’s nickname was Prince Charming until he changed it to Fresh Prince.
Exercise A  For each of the following sentences, identify the underlined clause by writing above it IND for independent clause or SUB for subordinate clause.

Example 1. After I found the lost dog, I put up posters to find her owner.

1. The research report that was assigned last month is due tomorrow.
2. Since the bicycle was on sale, I bought it.
3. I voted for the candidate who lost the election.
4. I’ll let you know as soon as your package arrives.
5. Did you read the book before you saw the movie?
6. The flag should be brought indoors when the weather is bad.
7. After the final performance of the play, the cast had a party.
8. William Shakespeare is the best-known playwright in the world today.
9. You may borrow my book overnight if you’d like.
10. Please help me when it is time to decorate the gym for the dance.

Exercise B  For each of the following sentences, underline the adjective clause or adverb clause. Then, circle the relative pronoun or subordinating conjunction.

Example 1. Juanita, who is my cousin, organized a fantastic party.

11. What costume did you wear to the party that Juanita had?
12. My costume, a chicken suit, won a prize because it was very well-made.
13. My cousin, whom I took to the party, went as a huge mosquito.
14. Since the guests were in costume, I couldn’t recognize many of the people there.
15. Did you recognize Hilary when you saw her in the gorilla costume?
16. The person whom I didn’t recognize was Mingan.
17. His costume, which was quite original, was a large cardboard box.
18. The box, which was painted white and covered with clear plastic, was very shiny.
19. Mingan, who was hidden inside the box, kept saying, “I’m melting!”
20. As soon as I saw him, I got it—he was supposed to be an ice cube!
Simple Sentences

7a. A simple sentence may have a compound subject, a compound verb, or both.

**EXAMPLES**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Thelma</td>
<td>sells automobiles.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thelma and Leo</td>
<td>buy and sell automobiles.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Exercise**  
Circle each subject and underline each verb in the following sentences.

Examples 1. **Claudia** smiled sweetly and motioned the guests inside.

1. Carmen skated at the pond after school.
2. Iris and Phil took a train to Chicago.
3. The pattern of every snowflake is unique.
4. During the Renaissance, Italian women shaved the front part of their heads and kept the rest of their hair long.
5. Federico and Garth rowed over to the island last summer.
6. Emily Dickinson published very few poems in her lifetime.
7. After the harvest, the workers and their families have a dance and play music in the barn.
8. *Cats* takes place in a junkyard.
9. The well-known musical is based on T. S. Eliot’s poems.
10. Jupiter, Saturn, Uranus, and Neptune have rings.
11. Christina played the guitar and sang songs from Chile.
12. Leaves and branches lay beneath the trees in our front yard and blocked the driveway.
13. Jill and Erica campaigned energetically and raised the needed funds.
14. My favorite snack is graham crackers and milk.
15. Jordan should wash the dishes and put them away.
16. Lupe raked the leaves in the backyard.
17. We congratulated Rosa on her achievement.
18. I read the draft of the paper and did a thorough revision.
19. This month’s school newspaper includes a list of new books in the library.
20. Where will Tim and Eric ride their bicycles this weekend?
Compound Sentences

A **compound sentence** contains two or more independent clauses and no subordinate clauses.

The independent clauses of a compound sentence are usually joined by a comma and a coordinating conjunction (*and, but, for, nor, or, so, or yet*). Independent clauses also may be joined by a semicolon.

**EXAMPLES**

- Mark Twain wrote fiction, **and** T. S. Eliot wrote poetry.
- My brother does the dishes and takes out the trash; **my chores include vacuuming and dusting.**

**EXERCISE A**

Each of the following compound sentences contains two independent clauses joined by a comma and a conjunction. Underline each subject once and each verb twice. Then, circle the conjunction.

**Example 1.** Kiyo likes the beach, **and** she often goes there with her brothers.

1. The ice-covered sidewalk was slippery, and several people fell down.
2. Some students ate in the cafeteria, but others went outside in the sunshine.
3. The talk show host was silly, but his show had a large audience.
4. The waves were enormous, yet the surfer rescued his new surfboard.
5. Mr. Kumamoto has uncovered some great fossils, for he is an experienced fossil hunter.

**EXERCISE B**

Rewrite each of the following pairs of simple sentences as one compound sentence. Use the coordinating conjunction in parentheses, and write your sentences above the original sentences. Be sure to add the correct punctuation where necessary.

**Example 1.** Ants are small, **but** they are powerful.

6. We can go to a movie. We can watch a videotape at home. (or)
7. Angel wrote a poem about his girlfriend. He did not show it to her. (but)
8. Dark clouds gathered above the baseball field. Rain fell steadily. (and)
9. The bears stole all our food. We left the campground early. (so)
10. Outside, a storm howled. We were warm inside the igloo. (yet)
11. Aretha has never taken a drawing class. She can sketch almost anything. (but)
12. They wanted to surprise her. They gave her a gift the day before her birthday. (so)
13. Joe can wait for us at the entrance. He can go in and find us a seat. (or)
14. Suddenly, Sparky ran to the window. We wondered what he saw. (and)
15. Last night the house felt chilly. I drank hot tea and curled up with a book. (so)
EXERCISE A

For each of the following sentences, underline each subject once and each verb twice. Then, identify the sentence by writing S for simple sentence or CD for compound sentence on the line provided.

Example 7b. 1. Geronimo was an Apache; he struggled to preserve the Apache way of life.

1. Geronimo was born in No-doyohn Canyon, Mexico.
2. Geronimo defended his homeland against colonization by Mexicans and North Americans.
3. Mexican bounty hunters killed his mother, his wife, and his children in 1858.
4. Geronimo wanted revenge, so he gathered a band of men.
5. He led the band of Apaches in raids against Mexican settlements.
6. The Mexicans called him Geronimo; that name in English is Jerome.
7. The Apaches used his name as their battle cry.
8. In 1874, U.S. authorities forcibly moved about four thousand Apaches to a reservation.
9. Geronimo led these Apaches in attacks on U.S. settlements and soldiers.
10. The United States sent five thousand soldiers after Geronimo, but the small group of Apaches did not surrender for more than four months.

EXERCISE B

For each of the following sentences, underline each subject once and each verb twice. Then, identify the sentence by writing S for simple sentence or CD for compound sentence above the item number.

Example 8b. 1. The army finally tracked Geronimo to his camp in the mountains.

[14] The name of this book is Geronimo: His Own Story. [15] Geronimo died in 1909; he was a courageous man to the end.
for CHAPTER 7: KINDS OF SENTENCE STRUCTURE

Complex Sentences

7c. A complex sentence contains one independent clause and at least one subordinate clause.

A subordinate clause cannot stand alone as a sentence. The following words are often used to introduce subordinate clauses: who, whose, whom, which, that, after, as, because, if, since, before, when.

**INDEPENDENT CLAUSE** I often go to the library

**SUBORDINATE CLAUSE** because I like to read

**COMPLEX SENTENCE** Because I like to read, I often go to the library.

**EXERCISE A** The sentences in the following paragraph are complex sentences. For each sentence, underline the independent clause once and the subordinate clause twice.

**Example** [1] Mr. Morales, who is my English teacher, encouraged me to be a writer.

[1] Since I was five years old, I have read in bed at night. [2] For my twelfth birthday I received *A Light in the Attic*, which is a book of poems. [3] Before I go to sleep, I sometimes read my favorite poems to my little brother. [4] As he listens to me, he closes his eyes and falls asleep. [5] When he wakes up in the morning, he usually asks about the ending of a poem. [6] I may be a writer or an editor when I grow up. [7] My Aunt Sabrina, who lives in Dallas, is a copyeditor for a newspaper. [8] If I study hard, I can become an editor, too. [9] A job as an editor makes sense for me because I love words. [10] The books that I love most sit on a special shelf in my room.

**EXERCISE B** The sentences in the following paragraph are complex sentences. For each sentence, underline the independent clause once and the subordinate clause twice.

**Example** [1] When I read some Greek myths last summer, I learned a lot of interesting things.

[11] As I read, I learned about Arachne, a character in a famous Greek myth. [12] In the stories, she weaves tapestries that are very beautiful. [13] When people see her work, they are really impressed. [14] Because Arachne is such a good weaver, she begins to boast about her skill. [15] Athena, who is the goddess of arts and crafts, hears about Arachne’s boastfulness and decides to pay Arachne a visit. [16] After Athena arrives, she warns Arachne not to be so boastful. [17] Because Arachne refuses to listen, the goddess Athena challenges her to a weaving contest. [18] The contest that Athena proposes ends in a draw. [19] Because Athena feels sorry for Arachne, she turns Arachne into a spider. [20] According to the myth, spiders, who are also excellent weavers, are descended from Arachne.
Exercise  For each of the following sentences, underline each independent clause once and each subordinate clause twice. Then, identify the sentence by writing CD for compound or CX for complex on the line provided.

Example 1. Because the cardinal was bright red, I could see it clearly.

____ 1. When Abe Lincoln gave a stump speech, he stood on a real stump.
____ 2. Many trees lose their leaves in the fall, and they look cold and forlorn.
____ 3. When we lived in southern Maryland, we visited Annapolis often.
____ 4. Brian is mild tempered, and he makes friends easily.
____ 5. If you move your knight to that square, I will capture him.
____ 6. My new wool sweater shrank when I washed it in hot water.
____ 7. Don’t give me any excuses; I don’t want to hear them!
____ 8. If I wash the dishes, will you cook the meal?
____ 9. Cameron, who is my cousin, is the new captain of the soccer team.
____ 10. I dropped my sandwich on the floor, so I threw it in the garbage.
____ 11. The movie was really scary, yet I could not stop watching.
____ 12. Janet Jackson, whose music I enjoy, will be in town next week.
____ 13. I washed the rug with detergent, but the red stain would not come out.
____ 14. Since you asked me nicely, I will lend you some paper for the test.
____ 15. Give your dog a bath, or do not let him inside the house.
____ 16. Call me tonight, and we’ll make plans for the weekend.
____ 17. I’ll ask my mother after she gets home from work.
____ 18. The book that he is reading is about ancient Egypt.
____ 19. My grandfather, whom I respect very much, will be ninety this summer.
____ 20. Jane is eager to begin her new music class, but she’ll have to wait another week.
Compound-Complex Sentences

**A compound-complex sentence** contains two or more independent clauses and at least one subordinate clause.

**INDEPENDENT CLAUSES**
- I will decorate for the party
- you can prepare the food

**SUBORDINATE CLAUSE**
- when we get to my house

**COMPOUND-COMPLEX SENTENCE**
- When we get to my house, I will decorate for the party, and you can prepare the food.

**Exercise**

In each of the following compound-complex sentences, underline the independent clauses once and the subordinate clause or clauses twice.

**Example 1.** Jane was late to the party, as I predicted, and Ron came too early.

1. When we planned our holiday party, we planned a small one, and we invited only a few friends.
2. We were expecting about eight people, but we were very surprised when ten extra guests showed up.
3. Luckily, we found out about the extra people in time; we raced to the grocery store just before it closed.
4. We got carried away and bought plenty of extra food; we were certain that most of our guests would be hungry.
5. Although I don’t like raw vegetables, we included them in the menu; healthy snacks please some people.
6. My friend Dennis is outgoing and creative, so I asked him to plan some group games that we would all enjoy.
7. The Wilson twins, who are not identical, arrived together, but they left with different friends after the party.
8. Before the party began, I borrowed a collection of CDs from friends, and I set up a CD player.
9. The music that I chose was a hit, and everyone enjoyed dancing to it.
10. Since they enjoyed the evening so much, Wayan and J.C. stayed afterward; they stacked dishes and bagged trash with me.
**Exercise** Identify each sentence by writing CX for complex or CD-CX for compound-complex on the line provided.

**Example** CD-CX 1. Kiesha never misses a practice, but she is occasionally late because the rink is so far from her home.

1. When she was young, Kiesha roller-skated on sidewalks, and she begged for ice skates.

2. Although she had never skated on ice before, she had watched ice-skating competitions on television.

3. She dreamed about skating in competitions, yet she still needed ice skates before she could start lessons.

4. Her parents could not afford skates, which were very expensive, but they encouraged her to earn money herself.

5. Before the week was out, Kiesha had begun finding odd jobs that would pay a few dollars each.

6. She saved almost every dollar, although it required perseverance.

7. When she entered junior high school, Kiesha was skating in competitions, for she had bought her own skates.

8. The skates were paid for, yet she continued working odd jobs because she now paid for her own lessons.

9. After I heard Kiesha’s story, I admired her.

10. Although I can’t and don’t want to skate, I have learned a lot from Kiesha’s story, and I will pursue my own dream.
**EXERCISE A** Identify each sentence by writing S for simple or CD for compound on the line provided.

**Example** CD 1. Beavers and squirrels are rodents, yet many people don’t know this fact.

1. A rodent’s teeth never stop growing.
2. Rodents gnaw hard things, so their teeth don’t get very long.
3. The capybara is the largest rodent of all.
4. Capybaras can grow to four feet and weigh one hundred pounds.
5. In prehistoric times, capybaras lived in North America, but now they are found only in Panama and South America.

**EXERCISE B** Underline each independent clause once and each subordinate clause twice. Then, identify each sentence by writing S for simple, CD for compound, CX for complex, or CD-CX for compound-complex on the line provided.

**Example** CX 1. After I studied past presidents, history became my favorite subject.

6. David Atchison may have been the president of the United States for one day.
7. President Polk’s term had ended on March 4, 1849, which was a Sunday.
8. Because it was a Sunday, the new president, Zachary Taylor, did not take the oath of office until March 5.
9. Under an old law, the president pro tempore of the Senate became the president of the United States if no one else held the office.
10. Today if the president and vice-president cannot do their jobs, the Speaker of the House takes over.
11. Here’s another interesting fact.
12. Technically, George Washington was not the first president of the U.S. government.
13. That honor belonged to a man who had been Maryland’s representative to the Continental Congress.
14. The first and only president of the Congress of the Confederation, which managed the first U.S. government, was John Hanson, and he was elected by the Congress in 1781.
15. Hanson’s title was “President of the United States in Congress Assembled,” and he served for one year.
Exercise A  Identify each sentence by writing CD for compound or CX for complex on the line provided.

Example  CD  1. I can’t fix a leaky faucet, nor can I fix a faulty electrical outlet.

       1. When we have plumbing problems, we call Señor Rodriguez.

       2. Sometimes Señor Rodriguez comes himself, and sometimes he sends one of his employees.

       3. Elaine Blum, who lives across the street, is an electrician.

       4. She has a pickup truck, which she uses to carry her tools and supplies.

       5. We enjoy Elaine’s company, and she is a helpful neighbor, too.

Exercise B  In the following sentences, underline each independent clause once and each subordinate clause twice. Then, identify each sentence by writing S for simple, CD for compound, CX for complex, or CD-CX for compound-complex on the line provided.

Example  CX  1. When I studied the globe, I located Peru in South America.

       6. During the summer I will visit Australia, which people call the Land Down Under.

       7. While I am there, I’ll also visit New Zealand.

       8. New Zealand is a small country that lies southeast of Australia.

       9. I am not afraid of flying, and I am not afraid of long ocean voyages.

       10. In fact, I may become a flight attendant.

       11. Flight attendants get discounts on airfare; their families are also eligible for lower fares.

       12. Have you ever been to England?

       13. Since globes make me wonder about life in different countries, I like to study them; I enjoy maps as well.

       14. Ireland is located off the western coast of England, but Scotland is north of England on the same landmass.

       15. If you see the waters of the Caribbean Sea, you will fall in love with their gemlike color and clarity.
Exercise  
Rewrite each of the following sentences on the lines provided. Follow the directions in parentheses.

Example 1. Television news is fascinating. Newspapers often provide more in-depth coverage.  
(Rewrite as a compound sentence. Use the conjunction but.) Television news is fascinating, but newspapers often provide more in-depth coverage.

1. We found out about the shelter. Mona and I began helping the people there. (Rewrite as a complex sentence. Begin the first clause with After.) 

2. We gathered our outgrown clothes and toys. We put them neatly in boxes. (Rewrite as a compound sentence. Use the conjunction and.)  

3. My mother drove us to the shelter. She helped us carry the boxes inside. (Rewrite as a simple sentence.)  

4. The shelter director saw our gifts. She seemed very happy. She thanked us. (Rewrite as a compound-complex sentence. Use the conjunction and. Begin the first clause with When.)  

5. In the evenings we usually watch the news. We are interested in world events. (Rewrite as a complex sentence. Begin the second clause with because.)
Number

Number is the form a word takes to indicate whether the word is singular or plural.

8a. When a word refers to one person, place, thing, or idea, it is singular in number. When a word refers to more than one, it is plural in number.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>circle</td>
<td>circles</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he</td>
<td>they</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>one</td>
<td>some</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>woman</td>
<td>women</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>loss</td>
<td>losses</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Exercise A**

Above each of the following words, write S for singular or P for plural.

**Examples**

1. oxen
2. fox

1. she 11. shelves
2. beach 12. people
3. we 13. many
4. men 14. guessses
5. mouse 15. geese
6. cities 16. chickens
7. I 17. loaf
8. mouth 18. us
9. plateau 19. prophecies
10. parentheses 20. citizen

**Exercise B**

Change each singular word to the plural form, and change each plural word to the singular form. Write the new word on the line provided.

**Examples**

leaves 1. leaf

1. leaves 26. him

21. roof 22. box

22. boxes 27. man

23. e-mails 24. French fry

23. e-mail 24. French fries

25. calves 29. puppies

30. stereo
Subject-Verb Agreement A

A verb should agree in number with its subject.

8b. A verb should agree in number with its subject.

1. Cinco de Mayo (is, are) an important Mexican holiday.
2. We (celebrates, celebrate) the Mexican victory at the Battle of Puebla on May 5, 1862.
3. Some people (watches, watch) these celebrations in Los Angeles, California.
4. Others (sees, see) them in San Antonio, Texas.
5. The celebrations (includes, include) parades and dancing.
6. The women dancers (wears, wear) swirling skirts or brilliant colors.
7. Strolling bands (plays, play) traditional mariachi music.
8. Spectators (lines, line) the streets of the parade route.
9. The floats (seems, seem) lively and colorful.
10. Mexican Americans (views, view) the festivities with pride.
11. We (has, have) learned about Mexican traditions.
12. Many immigrants (has, have) brought new traditions from their homelands.
13. Mexican ballads (is, are) heard in the Southwest.
14. In Spanish, ballads (is, are) called corridos.
15. What subjects (does, do) these ballads describe?
16. In them, heroes’ lives (has, have) been recorded.
17. Everyday people (does, do) appear in ballads, too.
18. Historians (has, have) begun to record these ballads.
19. They (is, are) trying to save these ballads.
20. (Does, Do) Horacio know any corridos?
Subject-Verb Agreement B

A verb should agree in number with its subject.

(1) Singular subjects take singular verbs.
(2) Plural subjects take plural verbs.

EXAMPLE Is she taking biology class this year? [The singular helping verb Is agrees with the singular subject she.]

EXERCISE Underline the verb in each of the following sentences. If the subject and verb do not agree, write the correct verb form above the error. If the sentence is already correct, write C.

Example 1. My cousins is bringing that delicious cinnamon bread.

1. Two of the sparrows is eating at the bird feeder.
2. Each morning I look out my window at the sunrise.
3. No, he do not sing and dance.
4. After three months, the experiment have been judged a success.
5. The children smile for the camera.
6. The singers is applauding for the winners.
7. They wave to the audience.
8. That tree have still not lost all its leaves.
9. After every performance, she bow.
10. Outside on the playground, children laugh.
11. This evening, Frank are not needed at rehearsal.
12. The geese leaves our town during the winter.
13. Mario wants the last orange.
14. We has been waiting for more than two hours.
15. Her sister have that CD.
16. They run together every morning.
17. Sophia need a new winter coat.
18. He always eat breakfast.
19. Jeremy does not expect any problems with the new equipment.
20. That bread smell delicious.
Subject-Verb Agreement C

8c. The number of a subject is not changed by a phrase following the subject.

Example 1. The phases of the moon are caused by changes in the amount of sunlight reflected by the moon. [The plural helping verb are agrees with the plural subject phases.]

**Exercise A** In each of the following sentences, circle the phrase following the subject. Then, underline the verb in parentheses that agrees with the subject.

**Example 1.** The moon in the night sky (are, is) a beautiful sight.

1. People throughout history (has, have) been fascinated by the moon.
2. The distance to the moon (is, are) 384,403 kilometers (238,857 miles).
3. The features of the moon (is, are) seen through powerful telescopes.
4. The sun, like the earth, (influences, influence) the moon’s motion.
5. The moon’s orbit around the earth (takes, take) about 27 days, 8 hours.
6. The earth, at the same time, (moves, move) around the sun.
7. A full moon, on the average, (occurs, occur) every 29 1/2 days.
8. Tides on the earth (rises, rise) according to the moon’s gravitational pull.
9. Photography from lunar-orbiting vehicles (shows, show) features on the moon’s surface.
10. Exploration of the moon (continues, continue).

**Exercise B** In each of the following sentences, circle the prepositional phrase following the subject. Then, underline the verb in parentheses that agrees with the subject.

**Example 1.** The contributions of immigrants (has, have) enriched many countries.

11. The names of some American Jewish authors (is, are) well known.
12. A famous author of short stories and novels (is, are) Bernard Malamud.
13. Jewish writers of fiction (includes, include) Saul Bellow.
14. A Nobel Prize in literature (was, were) awarded to Saul Bellow.
15. Another writer of Jewish descent (is, are) Philip Roth.
Subject-Verb Agreement D

The following indefinite pronouns are singular: anybody, anyone, anything, each, either, everybody, everyone, everything, neither, nobody, no one, nothing, one, somebody, someone, and something.

The following indefinite pronouns are plural: both, few, many, several.

The indefinite pronouns all, any, more, most, none, and some may be either singular or plural, depending on their meaning in a sentence.

EXAMPLES  
 Nobody on our street throws a better fastball than Otis.
 Many of his pitches blaze past the batter.
 None of Jana's effort is wasted.
 Some of Mr. Green's tomatoes are prize winners!

EXERCISE A  Circle the indefinite pronoun in each of the following sentences. Then, underline the correct form of the verb in parentheses.

Example 1. Either of the vegetables (are, is) a good choice for the salad.

1. One of my brothers (plants, plant) tomatoes every year.
2. No one on my block (believes, believe) his plants will grow.
3. Everyone in the neighborhood (says, say) the soil is not good enough.
4. Most of the plants (does, do) not do very well.
5. A few of them (reaches, reach) full size.
6. Usually everyone in the family (eats, eat) these tomatoes in a salad.
7. Most of the salad (is, are) greens.
8. Several of us (prefers, prefer) blue cheese dressing on the salad.
9. None of us (likes, like) that kind of salad dressing.
10. All of the tomatoes (is, are) eaten before they spoil.

EXERCISE B  Circle the indefinite pronoun in each of the following sentences. Above the pronoun write S if it is singular or P if it is plural. Then, underline the correct form of the verb in parentheses.

Example 1. Everyone in a successful band (practices, practice) frequently.

5

11. Some of my cousins (is, are) in musical bands.
12. All of my classmates (listens, listen) to them.
13. Any of the bands (plays, play) for private parties.
14. None of our neighbors ever (complains, complain) when they practice.
15. Most of their music (is, are) enjoyable.
Subject-Verb Agreement E

A pronoun that does not refer to a definite person, place, thing, or idea is called an **indefinite pronoun**.

8d. The following indefinite pronouns are singular: anybody, anyone, anything, each, either, everybody, everyone, everything, neither, nobody, no one, nothing, one, somebody, someone, and something.

8e. The following indefinite pronouns are plural: both, few, many, several.

8f. The indefinite pronouns all, any, more, most, none, and some may be either singular or plural, depending on their meaning in a sentence.

**EXERCISE A** In each of the following sentences, underline the correct indefinite pronoun in parentheses.

Example 1. *(All, Many)* of the fruit has been put in the refrigerator.

1. *(One, Several)* of my sisters runs in the marathon every year.

2. *(Many, Nobody)* is predicting rain for tomorrow.

3. *(Everyone, Several)* wears a coat in this weather.

4. *(One, Many)* of us sometimes forget to bring lunch.

5. *(Both, Each)* of my brothers like algebra.

6. *(None, No one)* of the performances take place outside.

7. *(Someone, Few)* are strong enough to swim across the English Channel.

8. *(All, Neither)* have seen that movie.

9. *(Each, Most)* has an opinion about the review in the newspaper.

10. *(Somebody, Both)* have been given that responsibility.

**EXERCISE B** Circle the indefinite pronoun in each of the following sentences. Then, underline the correct form of the verb in parentheses.

Example 1. *Most* of the potatoes *(has, have)* been harvested.

11. Everybody *(is, are)* welcome at the skating party.

12. I hope nobody *(forgets, forget)* to bring skates.

13. Many of my friends *(is, are)* good skaters.

14. All of us *(enjoys, enjoy)* the music at the skating rink.

15. Most of the music *(is, are)* popular dance music.
Exercise A

Above the compound subject, write $S$ if it is singular or $P$ if it is plural. Then, underline the correct form of the verb in parentheses.

Example 1. Acids and bases $(is, are)$ interesting.

1. Acids and bases $(is, are)$ one of our topics in science class.
2. Red litmus paper and blue litmus paper $(is, are)$ used to show the presence of acids or bases.
3. Some food and common household items $(contains, contain)$ acids.
4. $(Does, Do)$ macaroni and cheese contain acids?
5. Citrus fruit and vinegar $(make, makes)$ good test items.
6. Either a lemon or a lime $(is, are)$ easy to test.
7. Lemon juice and other acids $(turns, turn)$ blue litmus paper red.
8. Vinegar and lemon juice $(contains, contain)$ acids.
9. Neither lemons nor limes $(is, are)$ bases.
10. Acids and bases $(combines, combine)$ to make salts.

Exercise B

If the underlined verb in each of the following sentences does not agree with the subject, write the correct form of the verb above it. If the verb form is already correct, write $C$ above it.

Example 1. Experiments and observations $\underline{play}$ an important role in science.

11. Either baking soda or soap $\underline{are}$ a salt.
12. Fats or oils $\underline{is}$ added to bases to make soap.
13. $\underline{Are}$ plaster and cement made with bases?
14. The acidity or alkalinity of a solution $\underline{are}$ expressed as a pH value.
15. A pH value as low as 0 or one as high as 7 $\underline{indicates}$ acidity.
Subject-Verb Agreement G

8j. A collective noun may be either singular or plural, depending on its meaning in a sentence.

A collective noun is singular in form but names a group of persons, animals, or things. It takes a singular verb when it refers to the group as a unit. It takes a plural verb when it refers to the individual parts or members of the group.

**EXAMPLES**

1. The *family* is closely knit. [The family as a unit is closely knit.]
2. The *family are* meeting in Rochester. [The individual members are meeting.]

---

**EXERCISE A**  Above each noun, write *Coll* if it is collective or *Not* if it is not collective.

**Examples**

1. *Coll*  jur*y*
2. *Not*  leaves
3. *Coll*  team
4. *Coll*  boards
5. *Coll*  faculty
6. *Not*  group
7. *Not*  house
8. *Not*  batch
9. *Coll*  squadron
10. *Not*  clothes

**EXERCISE B**  Identify the collective noun in each of the following sentences, and write above it *S* for singular (if it refers to the group as a unit) or *P* for plural (if it refers to the parts of the group). Then, underline the correct form of the verb in parentheses.

**Example 1.**  The crew *P* (arrive, arrives) at work at different times.

11. The pack of wild dogs *P* (has, have) scattered in all directions upon hearing the noise.
12. Each morning the herd *P* (go, goes) all together to the watering hole.
13. The audience *S* (was, were) taking notes, sitting quietly, or sleeping.
14. The fleet *S* (sail, sails) home tomorrow.
15. The group of students *S* (sit, sits) one by one on the bench outside the school.
16. *(Are, Is)* the visiting chorus staying at several guest houses?
17. During the semester the faculty *(is, are)* helping the students with fund-raisers.
18. The faculty *(is, are)* meeting with their team captains in their classrooms.
19. The flock *(fly, flies)* over this area each autumn.
20. The set *(is, are)* all in perfect condition except for the one you cracked.
Subject-Verb Agreement H

When the subject follows the verb, find the subject and make sure that the verb agrees with it.

The subject usually follows the verb in questions and in sentences beginning with here or there.

**EXAMPLES**

When are Oscar and Ana leaving for the party?

There are the gifts.

Here’s the invitation to the party.

**EXERCISE A** Underline the subject and the correct word or word group in parentheses in each of the following sentences.

**Example 1.** Where (is, are) the substitute teacher?

1. Here (is, are) the worksheets for today’s class.
2. (There’s, There are) an answer key in the locked desk drawer.
3. On the chalkboard (is, are) written the instructions.
4. Where (is, are) the other assignments for the class?
5. Oh, there (is, are) the dictionary.
6. (Who’s, Who are) the student assistant today?
7. (Is, Are) both of you assistants?
8. Over here (is, are) the papers for the students.
9. (Was, Were) there enough copies for everyone?
10. (Here’s, Here are) one more copy.

**EXERCISE B** In each of the following sentences, underline the subject once and the verb twice. Above the verb, write C for correct if the subject and verb agree. If they do not agree, write the correct form of the verb.

**Example 1.** Here’s the donations for the relief fund.

11. There are several places in need of volunteers in our community.
12. What is the types of volunteer activities available?
13. Here’s a list of community centers and hospitals.
14. On one of these pages are a parental consent form.
15. There’s several locations in immediate need of your help.
Subject-Verb Agreement I

8i. Some nouns that are plural in form take singular verbs.

EXAMPLE  Physics is my sister’s major in college.

8m. An expression of an amount (a measurement, a percentage, or a fraction, for example) may be singular or plural, depending on how it is used.

EXAMPLES  Five dollars is a good price for that football.
           Two of these dollars are torn at the edges.

Exercise  Underline the correct form of the verb in parentheses in each sentence.

Example 1. Chickenpox (is, are) common among young children.
1. (Is, Are) eighteen weeks the length of the typical semester?
2. Seven dollars (is, are) the price of a movie ticket.
3. Two thirds of the students (has, have) finished the work already.
4. Three fourths of the watermelon (was, were) eaten immediately.
5. Two thousand pounds (equals, equal) one ton.
6. Three tons (is, are) the weight of Ed’s truck.
7. (Does, Do) thirty-six inches equal a yard?
8. Two quarters (is, are) lying on the floor next to the vending machine.
9. Two quarters (is, are) the price of a granola bar from the machine.
10. The news about the hurricane (was, were) alarming.
11. (Was, Were) 3,500 pounds stated as the amount of the elevator’s load limit?
12. Two days (is, are) not enough time for my test preparation!
13. Unfortunately, both of the days (was, were) spent in panic.
14. Mathematics (is, are) my strongest subject.
15. Loose curls (is, are) Mindy’s everyday hairstyle.
16. (Is, Are) her curls natural?
17. Pets (was, were) the topic of my research report.
18. Two hundred square feet (is, are) the size of this room.
19. Forty hours (makes, make) a workweek.
20. Genetics (is, are) a science that has always fascinated Tina.
Subject-Verb Agreement

8n. Even when plural in form, the title of a creative work (such as a book, song, film, or painting), the name of an organization, or the name of a country or city generally takes a singular verb.

EXAMPLES

The Birds is a scary but entertaining movie.
The Los Angeles Lakers is my favorite basketball team.

EXERCISE

Underline the correct form of the verb in parentheses in each sentence.

Example 1. (Was, Were) The Three Musketeers made into a movie?

1. “Trees and Snow Fields” (is, are) the title of my poem.
2. Calico Creations (is, are) a crafts store owned by my aunt.
3. Hanging in the museum, Water Lilies (was, were) more beautiful than I expected.
4. (Does, Do) Elements of Literature contain excerpts from “The Raven” by Poe?
5. The Association of Veterans (has, have) an office on Crescent Street.
6. Written by Nancy Farmer, The Ear, the Eye, and the Arm (takes, take) place in Zimbabwe.
7. Founded in 1860, Alice Springs (is, are) a town in Australia.
8. Anna and David (was, were) painted on steel and aluminum by the artist Miriam Schapiro.
9. (Is, Are) the Parks and Recreation Department located in this building?
10. The Ganges (is, are) a river in northern India.
11. The Blenville Junior High Fighting Falcons (was, were) named best football team.
12. At the video store, 101 Dalmatians (was, were) not on the shelf.
13. Pets Helping Humans (sponsors, sponsor) a pet adoption day each month.
14. Rising Hills (is, are) my hometown.
15. The Panthers (is, are) the name of my little sister’s soccer team.
16. Daughters of Mercy Hospital (accepts, accept) teenage volunteers.
17. The United States (shares, share) a border with Canada.
18. The Harlem Globetrotters (was, were) formed in 1927.
19. Painted on silk by Toko, Cat and Spider (shows, show) a fluffy gray cat stalking a spider.
20. The Fat-Cats at Sea (is, are) a book of funny poems about cats sailing to the Island of Goo.
**Exercise A** In each sentence, underline the subject and the correct form of don’t or doesn’t in parentheses.

**Example 1.** Temperatures in the equatorial zone (don’t, doesn’t) get cold.

1. Snow (don’t, doesn’t) fall in the tropics, except at high elevations.
2. Hurricanes (don’t, doesn’t) travel very far inland.
3. (Don’t, Doesn’t) tornadoes look like funnel-shaped clouds?
4. You (don’t, doesn’t) want to get near a tornado.
5. A rainbow usually (don’t, doesn’t) appear on a bright, sunny day.
6. (Don’t, Doesn’t) rainbows form from the reflection of light in rain or fog?
7. It (don’t, doesn’t) rain much in the Atacama Desert in Chile.
8. Without lightning, thunder (don’t, doesn’t) occur.
9. (Don’t, Doesn’t) sleet form from frozen rain?
10. I (don’t, doesn’t) enjoy shoveling the walks after a snowstorm.

**Exercise B** In each sentence, underline the subject in parentheses that agrees with the form of don’t or doesn’t in the sentence.

**Example 1.** Why don’t the (teacher, teachers) eat the food in the cafeteria?

11. Don’t the (locker, lockers) have to be cleaned out by three o’clock?
12. My (dog, dogs) doesn’t obey my commands.
13. Why don’t (she, you) tell me what happened?
14. Doesn’t (he, they) remember who I am?
15. The (plants, plant) in the window don’t need more water yet.
Pronoun-Antecedent Agreement A

A pronoun usually refers to a noun or another pronoun called its antecedent.

A pronoun should agree in number and gender with its antecedent.

**Examples**

- Dolores lost her scarf.
- The snake shed its skin.
- Shoppers filled their baskets with food.
- Each one of the teenagers paid for his or her ticket.

**Exercise A**

In each sentence, underline the pronoun or pronouns in parentheses that agree in number and gender with the antecedent.

**Example 1.** High in the tree's branches, the bird built (their, its) nest.

1. Billy loaned (their, his) bike to Phillip.
2. The captain of the girls' softball team accepted (her, his or her) award.
3. In the evening the chickens return to (its, their) roost.
4. The cats sunned (itself, themselves) contentedly in the grassy yard.
5. The microscopes in the science lab still have (its, their) price tags attached.
6. The workers at the pizza parlor were wearing (its, their) new uniforms.
7. On Father's Day, the children performed a one-act play for (his or her, their) dad.
8. Carpenter ants sometimes make (its, their) home in your home.
9. The puppy entertained (itself, themselves) with an old tennis ball.
10. The hamster slept in (its, their) empty food dish.

**Exercise B**

On each of the lines provided, write a pronoun or a pair of pronouns that will correctly complete the sentence.

**Example 1.** The river overflowed ______ its banks.

11. The siblings planned a surprise party for ____________ parents' anniversary.
12. The pig raised ____________ voice in a surprised squeal.
13. The captains of each team accepted ____________ award.
14. Julie was proud of ____________ older sister.
15. The young boy told ____________ not to be afraid of the dark.
Pronoun-Antecedent Agreement B

8q. Use a singular pronoun to refer to anybody, anyone, anything, each, either, everybody, everyone, everything, neither, nobody, no one, nothing, one, somebody, someone, or something.

8r. Use a plural pronoun to refer to both, few, many, or several.

8s. The indefinite pronouns all, any, more, most, none, and some may be singular or plural, depending on how they are used in a sentence.

EXAMPLES  Everybody in the group wanted his or her own map.

Few of the photographers developed their own film.

Some of the bread was eaten, and some of the bananas were eaten, too.

EXERCISE  Underline the pronoun or pronouns in parentheses that correctly complete each sentence.

Example 1. During a fire drill, no one is allowed to remain in (their, his or her) classroom.

1. Many of the mice are sleeping in (their, its) cage.

2. Someone with muddy shoes didn’t wipe (his or her, their) feet on the mat.

3. At my grandmother’s deli, few ordered the daily special for (his or her, their) meal.

4. Any of the jewelry found should be returned to (its, their) owner.

5. Any of the jewels found should be returned to (its, their) owner.

6. Everything in the rooms was in (their, its) proper place.

7. Most of the desks have had (their, its) wooden surfaces revarnished.

8. Both of my sisters are successful in (her, their) careers.

9. Each of the teachers voted for (his or her, their) choice for student council.

10. Contrary to expectation, none of the treasure was worth (their, its) weight in gold.

11. This year most of the girls are bringing (her, their) lunch from home.

12. All of the boys helped clean (his, their) locker room.

13. In my opinion, either of the candidates would represent (their, his or her) district well.

14. Several of the chess players displayed (their, his or her) trophies in the case at school.

15. Is anybody finished with (their, his or her) assignment yet?

16. Anyone would enjoy riding (their, his or her) bike on a beautiful day like today.

17. None of the children could fit into (their, his or her) coats this year.

18. Both of the girls needed new shoes for (her, their) PE classes.

19. All of my family wants to eat dinner at (our, its) grandparents’ house.

20. When the sun rose, several of the hikers packed (his or her, their) gear and started up the trail.
EXERCISE A  In each sentence, underline the pronoun or pair of pronouns in parentheses that agrees in number and gender with its antecedent.

Example 1. Neither Mr. Smith nor Ms. Macelli reached (their, his or her) classroom on time.

1. Ants and flies found (its, their) way to our picnic.
2. Either Shari or April will give (their, her) oral report next.
3. Both Shelley and Stella promised to bring (her, their) cameras.
4. Did Martin or Jorge volunteer (their, his) time to the tutoring program?
5. Neither Paul nor Bonnie was surprised by (their, his or her) exam grades.
6. Mom and Dad called and said (he, they) are picking up pizza for us.
7. A squirrel or a bird must have found (its, their) way into my berry patch.
8. The band members and the fans cheered (his or her, their) team.
9. Will Thea or Sandra bring (their, her) flute?
10. Neither Jared nor Jill wants (their, his or her) picture on the poster.

EXERCISE B  On each of the lines provided, write a pronoun or a pair of pronouns that will correctly complete the sentence.

Example 1. Either Grandma or Mom will loan ____________ coat to me.
11. Patricia and Parker took ____________ younger brother to the park.
12. Neither Cheryl nor Gary finished ____________ sculpture.
13. Monty and Ty promised that ____________ would lead the discussion.
14. Natalie or Tabitha will tell ____________ concerns to the principal.
15. Leo and Penny said that ____________ will be here by noon.
Pronoun-Antecedent Agreement D

A pronoun that refers to a collective noun has the same number as the noun.

A collective noun is singular when it refers to the group as a unit and plural when it refers to the individual members of the group.

SINGULAR
- The committee held its meeting in Mr. Park's classroom.

PLURAL
- The committee took their seats promptly.

Exercise A
In each of the following sentences, underline the pronoun in parentheses that agrees in number with the collective noun.

Example 1. The valuable collection resides in (its, their) fireproof case.

1. The brood followed closely behind (its, their) mother.

2. Inside the tent, the family chose positions for (its, their) sleeping bags.

3. The new set was placed on (its, their) shelf in the china cabinet.

4. The jury argued among (itself, themselves).

5. Before the show the chorus warmed up (its, their) voices.

6. This cluster, said the jeweler, has value in (its, their) antiquity.

7. The litter occupied (itself, themselves) by running, jumping, and barking.

8. The jury went (its, their) separate ways for lunch.

9. During the holidays, her family decorates (its, their) house together.

10. The emergency crew congratulated (itself, themselves) on the rescue.

Exercise B
On each of the lines provided, write a pronoun that will correctly complete the sentence.

Example 1. The cleaning crew signed (their) time sheets.

11. Once out of the harbor, the fleet adjusted (their) speed.

12. The audience took (their) seats.

13. In winter the pack foraged for food near (its) den.

14. The pack hunted on (its) own occasionally.

15. The salary committee gave (their) raises.
EXERCISE A  In each of the following sentences, underline the correct pronoun in parentheses.

Example 1. If I lend you twenty dollars, will you pay (them, it) back next week?

1. Three fourths of the salad is left. I’m sure (it, they) will be eaten.

2. Have you seen Dancers on a Bench? Edgar Degas painted (them, it) in 1898.

3. Here is twenty dollars. Use (them, it) to get a taxi at the airport.

4. The final three miles are downhill, and (they, it) should pass quickly.

5. Have you read The Exiles? (They, It) tells the funny story of four adventurous sisters.

6. I’m from Grand Forks. You’ll find (them, it) in eastern North Dakota.

7. My mother puts two tablespoons of sugar in her coffee. (They, It) may see like a lot to some people.

8. Much of the economy of Honduras is based on (its, their) export of bananas and coffee.

9. Ms. Morris gave us only two days to study. She said we’ll need to use (it, them) wisely.

10. The shirt cost fifty dollars but is not worth (it, them).

EXERCISE B  On each of the lines provided, write a pronoun that will correctly complete the sentence.

Example 1. You’ll need ten dollars, and you have two weeks to earn ____________.

11. How far is two feet? Measure _______________ with the tape measure.

12. Have you seen The Mysteries of the Horizon? René Magritte painted ________________.

13. Here is sixteen dollars in change. Please count _____________ carefully.

14. With how many countries does the United States share borders?

15. The drama club is performing The Merry Wives of Windsor. William Shakespeare wrote _______________.

Pronoun-Antecedent Agreement E

An expression of an amount may take a singular or plural pronoun, depending on how the expression is used.

SINGULAR  I have two thirds of a pizza. Is it enough for your friends?

PLURAL  Finding three dollars on the floor, I put them in my pocket.

Even when plural in form, the title of a creative work (such as a book, song, film, or painting), the name of an organization, or the name of a country or city usually takes a singular pronoun.

EXAMPLE  Where is Hot Springs? I don’t see it on the map.
EXERCISE A  In each of the following sentences, write C for correct above the underlined verb if it agrees with its subject. If the underlined verb does not agree with its subject, write the correct form of the verb above it.

Example 1. Neither Ms. Jamison nor Mr. Thompson claim the stray dog.

1. Where is the Mason-Dixon line?
2. The highest peak in the United States are the South Peak of Mount McKinley.
3. The Senate are in its first session of the year.
4. Several of the legends are about Hercules.
5. None of the symphony players listens to rock-and-roll.
6. Fifteen ounces are the total weight of the package.
7. Are Adrienne or Suki going to the party?
8. There is the tickets to tonight's game.
9. In the mailbox were both letters from Vicente.
10. The Pickwick Papers are a novel by Dickens.

EXERCISE B  In each of the following sentences, underline the subject once and the verb twice. If the subject and verb agree, write C for correct above the verb. If the subject and verb do not agree, write the correct form of the verb above the incorrect verb.

Example 1. The Association of Aquatic Enthusiasts are upstairs.

11. Twenty gallons are a good size for an aquarium.
12. Tropical Fishes is a handy guidebook to own.
13. Neither Doyle nor Ana have an aquarium.
14. Plants in an aquarium isn’t always real.
15. The local fish club is holding a meeting next Wednesday.
16. Four or five dollars are the price of a Siamese fightingfish.
17. Either neon tetras or guppies is a good choice for a home aquarium.
19. A school of small fish live in this large aquarium.
20. Twelve inches is the length of tubing required for this pump.
**Review B: Pronoun-Antecedent Agreement**

**Exercise A**  In each of the following sentences, underline the pronoun or pronoun pair that refers to the underlined antecedent. If the pronoun and antecedent agree, write C for correct above the pronoun. If the pronoun and antecedent do not agree, write the correct pronoun above the incorrect pronoun.

**Example 1.** Most of the members remained in his or her seats.

1. One of my sisters thinks they will be a firefighter.  
2. Each of my sisters has had plenty of time to decide on their future.  
3. A person can change their career several times over a lifetime.  
4. If anybody asked me, I would tell them I hope to be a doctor one day.  
5. Hector or Mateo will write his report on careers of the future.  
6. On Saturday I helped my grandparents in their movie rental store.  
7. Someone from the career testing service left their jacket in our classroom.  
8. The student body enjoyed their career fair this year.  
9. White Rapids, the neighboring town, holds their harvest festival in October.  
10. One of my friends sells her produce at the festival.

**Exercise B**  In each of the following sentences, write C for correct above the underlined pronoun if it agrees with its antecedent. If the underlined pronoun does not agree with its antecedent, write the correct form of the pronoun above it.

**Example 1.** Please measure two cups of oatmeal and put them in this bowl.

11. Either of the two sisters will bring her notebook.  
12. Either a hamster or a rabbit shows affection for their owner.  
13. I hope everyone remembers their lunch.  
14. Each of the children will need his own permission slip.  
15. Some of the girls have opened their gifts already.  
16. Neither Earl nor Fred has opened their mail yet.  
17. A few of the teachers want their students to make presentations.  
18. One of the coaches is going to put those boys on his team.  
19. Many of the students lost their flashcards.  
20. Each of the contestants will do their best.
**EXERCISE A**  In each of the following sentences, underline the subject and the correct verb in parentheses.

**Example 1.** The Society for the Care and Protection of Animals (accept, accepts) donations.

1. Civics (is, are) his favorite subject.
2. The class (is, are) working on their science projects.
3. You (doesn’t, don’t) have enough money for that new book.
4. The family (is, are) discussing their vacation plans.
5. (Has, Have) the jury reached a verdict?
6. Here (is, are) the canned goods for the food drive.
7. A machine (doesn’t, don’t) work properly unless it is oiled.
8. Ten pounds (is, are) a lot of weight to lose.
9. Kelly’s Heroes (is, are) a 1970 movie starring Clint Eastwood.
10. (Doesn’t, Don’t) Thelma look great in that color?

**EXERCISE B**  The following paragraph contains ten errors in agreement between pronouns and their antecedents. Draw a line through each error and write the correct pronoun or pronoun pair above it.

**Example**  Both Tamara and Tomás brought his instruments to the band’s rehearsal.

Everyone has their opinion about what makes a good band. That’s what I learned from my experience with a musical group. My friends and I met recently to combine our musical talents by forming a band. Tamara brought his own guitar. Tomás brought his trumpet. Rupesh and Mary brought his and her Australian didgeridoos. Unfortunately, we couldn’t decide what to play. Someone suggested their favorite song, but no one else knew them. My father suggested we play her favorite song, “She’ll Be Coming Round the Mountain.” Each of the girls put down their instrument and laughed heartily. Everybody had their own idea of what to play. It was chaos!
EXERCISE Underline the word or word group in parentheses that correctly completes each sentence.

Example Fans of the jazz artist Ella Fitzgerald mourned (her, their) death in 1996.

In the twentieth century, one of the best-selling vocal artists (were, was) Ella Fitzgerald. Newport News (were, was) her birthplace, and Beverly Hills (is, are) where she passed away at the age of 79. (He, She) became famous throughout the world for (their, her) clear, sweet voice. The city of New York (were, was) where she grew up. The Apollo Theatre in Harlem featured her in one of (their, its) amateur nights, and Fitzgerald (were, was) “discovered” at age sixteen. She performed in a band, and then began working with Chick Webb in (its, his) Chick Webb Orchestra.

The 1950s (were, was) good years for Fitzgerald. (Their, Her) manager, Norman Granz, carefully chose her singing material, and (he, they) provided excellent jazz instrumental support for (it, her). In fact, Granz’s Jazz at the Philharmonic featured Fitzgerald as (their, its) star attraction. Fitzgerald’s singing style (were, was) so popular that many singers imitated Fitzgerald’s style in (his or her, their) own performances. Fitzgerald also became famous for (her, their) “scat” singing. Singers of this style (imitate, imitates) a trumpet or saxophone with (his or her, their) voices. Mack the Knife: Ella in Berlin (is, are) one of her famed scat recordings.
Principal Parts of Verbs

The principal parts of a verb are the **base form**, the **present participle**, the **past**, and the **past participle**.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Base Form</th>
<th>sing</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Present Participle</td>
<td>[is/are] singing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Past</td>
<td>sang</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Past Participle</td>
<td>[has/have] sung</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Exercise A**

On the line next to each verb form, identify it by writing B for base form, PresP for present participle, P for past, or PastP for past participle.

Example:      PresP  1. [is] fighting

1. [is] catching  11. [have] built
2. drink  12. froze
3. bought  13. suppose
4. [has] watched  14. taught
5. [are] cutting  15. [are] letting
6. write  16. rang
7. [have] shone  17. [is] growing
8. paint  18. leave
9. [is] asking  19. drowned
10. jumped  20. [has] met

**Exercise B**

In each of the following sentences, identify the form of the underlined verb by writing above it B for base form, PresP for present participle, P for past, or PastP for past participle.

Example:  1. The ducks have flown south for the winter.

21. Water-resistant feathers help ducks stay dry.
22. Those ducks are swimming with their strong legs and feet.
23. These ducks have grown waterproof feathers.
24. Some ducks fed from the surface of the water.
25. Near the pond the ducks are eating seeds and insects.
Regular Verbs

A regular verb forms its past and past participle by adding –d or –ed to the base form.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>BASE FORM</th>
<th>use</th>
<th>pick</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>PRESENT PARTICIPLE</td>
<td>[is/are] using</td>
<td>[is/are] picking</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PAST</td>
<td>used</td>
<td>picked</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PAST PARTICIPLE</td>
<td>[has/have] used</td>
<td>[has/have] picked</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Exercise A

A Supply the present participle, past, and past participle for each of the following base forms.

Example 1. learn

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present Part.</th>
<th>Past</th>
<th>Past Part.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>learning</td>
<td></td>
<td>learned</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. watch
2. present
3. demonstrate
4. bandage
5. practice

Exercise B

For each of the following sentences, write the correct present participle, past, or past participle of the verb given in parentheses.

Example 1. Cindy has _______ every Saturday for two months. (jog)

6. Today, many people are _______ for ways to improve their health. (look)
7. Since the middle of last semester, I have _______ to school every day. (walk)
8. Already, my stamina has _______. (increase)
9. Last year Shane _______ to do something to improve his health. (decide)
10. He _______ to eat junk food and spent most of his free time watching television. (use)
11. His mother had _______ that he had very little energy. (notice)
12. He also was _______ weight rapidly. (gain)
13. Now Shane is _______ and eating well. (exercise)
14. He has _______ an aerobics class that meets three times a week. (start)
15. Aerobic exercise has _______ to increase Shane’s energy level. (help)
EXERCISE A  For each of the following sentences, underline the correct verb form in parentheses.

Example 1. This tight shoe has _hurted, hurt_ my foot all day.

1. Calinda _took, taked_ her sister to the rain forest exhibit at the museum.
2. Do you know what year the _Lusitania sank, sunk_?
3. Claudia has _drew, drawn_ a picture of the meadow behind the cabin.
4. The camels have _drank, drunk_ an enormous amount of water and are ready to begin their journey across the desert.
5. The three boys had _ran, run_ as if they were being chased.
6. On Tuesday, Alfonso _were, worn_ the sweater that his mother gave him for his birthday.
7. Ms. Shapiro _drove, drived_ the school bus for our field trip.
8. Small meteors have _fell, fallen_ recently near Peekskill, New York.
9. The teacher _rang, rung_ the bell to get the students back to their desks.
10. In the last race, gusts of wind _blew, blowed_ a sailboat off its course.

EXERCISE B  For each of the following sentences, write the past or past participle of the verb given in parentheses.

Example 1. Salma has _forgiven_ me for my thoughtless comment. (forgive)

11. The truck driver _made_ her last delivery at six o’clock. (make)
12. Have you ever _hurted_ yourself playing soccer? (hurt)
13. When you have _done_ the last problem on the test, you may leave. (do)
14. Uncle Scott _built_ the house himself and is very proud of his work. (build)
15. Our family has _known_ the Vierlings for more than twenty years. (know)
EXERCISE A  For each of the following sentences, underline the correct verb form in parentheses.

Example 1. Ouch! That mosquito (bited, bit) me.

1. The house mouse can be (founded, found) in most areas of the world.
2. The crowd cheered as the runner (bursted, burst) ahead of the others.
3. The plump frog quickly (caught, caught) a fly with its tongue.
4. Two hungry squirrels have (came, come) to the bird feeder.
5. Have you ever been (bited, bitten) by a spider?
6. A small brown sparrow (flyed, flew) overhead and landed on a fence post.
7. The tadpoles have (grown, grew) into frogs.
8. Several geese (swum, swam) into the reeds at the edge of the lake.
9. Near this lake, beavers have (cut, cutted) down trees with their teeth.
10. Yesterday evening several deer (eated, ate) the leaves from these bushes.

EXERCISE B  For each of the following sentences, write the past or past participle of the verb given in parentheses.

Example 1. I can’t believe you _caught_ that fly ball! (catch)

11. Millie rudely __________ talking before I was finished. (begin)
12. I have __________ my homework with me to the library. (bring)
13. After I ran three miles, I __________ but relaxed. (feel)
14. Where is my jacket? I __________ it to you three weeks ago. (lend)
15. Now that the guests have __________, we’ll start cleaning the kitchen. (leave)
EXERCISE A  For each of the following sentences, underline the correct verb form in parentheses.

Example 1. The girls’ soccer team has not (losed, lost) a game all season.
1. I (pay, paid) for six tickets but received only five.
2. The six of us (met, meeted) at our seats after I got the other ticket.
3. The new lighting system has (litten, lit) the entire field.
4. Gina went to the concession stand and (got, gotten) us some drinks.
5. Coach Simms (sended, sent) the team captain onto the field.
6. I have never (saw, seen) a more exciting game!
7. When Marta scored a goal, the fans (stand, stood) and cheered.
8. One of the players has (torn, teared) a ligament.
9. The team has (fighted, fought) hard for victory.
10. In the final seconds of the game, I realized our team had (winned, won).

EXERCISE B  For each of the following sentences, write the past or past participle of the verb given in parentheses.

Example 1. Come look at the snow fort we have ___________! (build)
11. Overnight, the ponds and lakes have ___________. (freeze)
12. Toni and her friends ___________ ice-skating an hour ago. (go)
13. We ___________ snowballs at each other until we were wet and cold. (throw)
14. Owen laughed as he ___________ the sled down the steep hill of snow. (ride)
15. After building the snowman, I ___________ small twigs to make its arms. (break)
Irregular Verbs D

9c. An irregular verb forms its past and past participle in some other way than by adding –d or –ed to the base form.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>BASE FORM</th>
<th>lend</th>
<th>sink</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>PRESENT PARTICIPLE</td>
<td>[is/are] lending</td>
<td>[is/are] sinking</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PAST</td>
<td>lent</td>
<td>sank</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PAST PARTICIPLE</td>
<td>[has/have] lent</td>
<td>[has/have] sunk</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Exercise A** For each of the following sentences, underline the correct verb form in parentheses.

**Example 1.** Father Ames has (rang, rung) the church bells.

1. I have (read, readed) every poem by Emily Dickinson.

2. At the museum, Ms. Morgan (lead, led) her class to the newest exhibit.

3. Who (hitted, hit) the emergency button for the alarm?

4. Last night the campers (heared, heard) eerie sounds coming from the forest.

5. Someone has (hid, hided) my backpack.

6. The proud teacher said to the class, “We have (hadden, had) a great year!”

7. As I (holded, held) the baby in my arms, she stopped crying.

8. Who (letted, let) the horses out of the corral?

9. Once again, Darryl has (lost, lose) his car keys.

10. Eric (broke, breaked) his arm when he fell on the ice.

**Exercise B** For each of the following sentences, write the past or past participle of the verb given in parentheses.

**Example 1.** Have you ever ________ liver and onions? (eat)

11. The plastic ________ in the heat of the sun. (shrink)

12. In their class play last night, four enthusiastic children ________ a funny song. (sing)

13. Have you ________ to Dad about fixing the spokes on my bicycle? (speak)

14. I was dismayed at how much money I had ________. (spend)

15. The rival football team has ________ our mascot! No, there it is. (steal)
Irregular Verbs

Example 1. Kyle put on his helmet and (ridden, rode) away on his motorcycle.

1. Mr. Sterne (choose, chose) Mike to monitor the class in his absence.
2. Have I (bought, boughten) enough meat for the stew?
3. That fuzzy, green sweater (cost, costed) only fifteen dollars.
4. Whiskers (eaten, ate) his cat food hungrily.
5. A week passed before Marcos (forgived, forgave) Andy for the practical joke.
6. The seventh-grade class (gived, gave) coats and canned food to the homeless shelter.
7. The chef (put, putted) cherries and nuts on top of the cake.
8. Who (say, said) “Give me liberty or give me death”?
9. The pupil (seeked, sought) advice from his teacher.
10. The bike was (selled, sold) before I could save enough money for it.

Exercise B

For each of the following sentences, write the past or past participle of the verb given in parentheses.

Example 1. The band has __________________ the music for the dance. (choose)

11. On the playground the child climbed into the swing and __________________ as high as she could. (swing)
12. I have __________________ myself Spanish by watching Spanish television programs. (teach)
13. The auctioneer called her assistant over and __________________ him about each item. (tell)
14. I have always __________________ I would be good at tennis. (think)
15. Please open the note and read what I have __________________. (write)
Verb Tense

9d. The tense of a verb indicates the time of the action or of the state of being that is expressed by the verb.

Verbs in English have six tenses: present, past, future, present perfect, past perfect, and future perfect.

**PRESENT** The bird sings.
**PAST** The bird sang.
**FUTURE** The bird will sing.
**PRESENT PERFECT** The bird **has sung**.
**PAST PERFECT** The bird **had sung**.
**FUTURE PERFECT** The bird **will have sung**.

Each tense has an additional form called the **progressive form**, which expresses continuing action or state of being.

**EXAMPLES**
- Nathan **is taking** a nap. [present progressive]
- Carol **had been waiting** for the train. [past perfect progressive]

**EXERCISE A** Revise each of the following sentences by changing the verb or verbs to the tense indicated in italics.

**Example 1.** Our family picnic **took** place on July sixth. *(future)*

1. Alex smells the aroma of barbecued chicken. *(past)*
2. Dana will bring her famous orange marmalade cake. *(present)*
3. Trays of salads and fruit filled the picnic tables. *(present)*
4. Some corn on the cob has already disappeared from the platter. *(past perfect)*
5. Everyone at the picnic had awaited the signal for lunch. *(future)*
6. Peepers, my dog, begs for a bit of my food. *(past)*
7. Everyone will go back for second helpings. *(present perfect)*
8. The cook, my uncle Rosco, will mix more of his special sauce. *(future perfect)*
9. Carla brought her famous pasta salad. *(past perfect)*
10. I am organizing games of softball and horseshoes. *(future)*

**EXERCISE B** Above the underlined verb in each sentence, identify its tense by writing present, past, future, present perfect, past perfect, or future perfect. Also, indicate whether the tense is in the progressive form.

**Example 1.** I have been buying the supplies all week.

11. Sherri and I **have registered** for our own booth at the craft fair.
12. We **have been making** dozens of interesting and useful items this month.
13. We **will sell** them at reasonable prices.
14. Sherri **is designing** the banner for our booth.
15. We **will have earned** a nice profit by the end of the craft fair.
EXERCISE A  Each of the following sentences contains an error in consistency of verb tense. Revise each sentence to make the verb tenses consistent. Give only one answer for each sentence.

Example 1. Slowly, the sun sank below the horizon, and the sky becomes dark.

or

Slowly, the sun sank below the horizon, and the sky **becomes** dark.

1. Pioneers traveled west in Conestoga wagons and have endured many hardships.
2. After the president of the United States threw out the first ball, the baseball game begins.
3. The hungry child will eat some crackers and drank a cup of milk.
4. Eduardo worked in the garden while we trim the hedges.
5. By dinner I will have finished my homework, and Laurie finishes her chores.
6. After I swallowed the huge gulp of water, I will cough.
7. As the trees sway in the breeze, the birds will have sung merrily.
8. Hannah had mixed her paints before she notices a crack in her palette.
9. My parents owned a diner until last year when they sell it.
10. Tim had washed the dishes but forgets to put them away.

EXERCISE B  For the following sentences, fill in each blank with an appropriate tense for the verb given in parentheses.

Example 1. Jason **has played** piano since he was five years old. (play)

11. She has roasted a turkey and **heated** rolls for the holiday meal. (heat)
12. I noticed the last bus and **ran** after it. (run)
13. Last weekend I **visited** Grandma and spent the afternoon with her. (visit)
14. Ron will do the laundry, and I **wash** the windows. (wash)
15. Jessie **has finished** his homework before his mother came home from the store. (finish)
Active and Passive Voice

A verb in the active voice expresses an action done by its subject. A verb in the passive voice expresses an action done to its subject.

**ACTIVE**
Principal Ruiz presented the awards.

**PASSIVE**
The awards were presented by Principal Ruiz.

**EXERCISE A** Above the underlined verb in each sentence, write A for active voice or P for passive voice.

**Example 1.** Six Nobel prizes are awarded each year.

1. The Nobel Prize fund was established by Alfred Bernhard Nobel.
2. Various institutions function as prize awarders.
3. Winners are named in six categories: physics, chemistry, medicine, literature, peace, and economics.
4. The Royal Swedish Academy of Sciences awards the prizes in physics and chemistry.
5. Each award consists of a gold medal, a diploma, and money.
6. The first Nobel prizes were awarded on December 10, 1901.
7. Each year, the new winners give lectures as part of their awards ceremonies.
8. Prizes have been declined by various nominees, usually for political reasons.
9. During World Wars I and II, the prize committees couldn’t gather information on nominees.
10. No Nobel prizes could be awarded during this time.

**EXERCISE B** Underline the verb in each sentence. Above it, write A for active voice or P for passive voice.

**Example 1.** Our calendar has been influenced by the early Roman calendar.

11. The name January comes from the Roman month Januarius.
12. Janus was honored by Romans as the god of doors, gates, and new beginnings.
13. June is derived from the Roman month Junius.
14. JUNius was named after Juno, the goddess of marriage.
15. People associate the month of May with the growth of springtime.
16. In Roman mythology, Maia reigned as the goddess of growth.
17. In Latin, decem means “ten.”
18. The tenth month of the Roman calendar was called December.
19. August refers to Emperor Augustus, ruler of Rome from 27 B.C. to A.D. 14.
20. On the 15th of Februarius, a festival of purification was celebrated by Romans.
EXERCISE A  Underline the correct form of sit or set in the parentheses in each of the following sentences.

Example  1. I (sit, set) the treats on the counter so that the dog couldn’t get to them.

1. Please (sit, set) your glass of water on a coaster.
2. Where will all our guests be (sitting, setting) for the meal?
3. (Sit, Set) on that chair and tell me if you think it’s comfortable.
4. This longhaired cat leaves hairs wherever she (sits, sets).
5. (Sit, Set) the groceries on the counter, please.
6. If more than two people (sit, set) on this old bench, it will break.
7. I am (sitting, setting) all the items for the garage sale on these tables.
8. Martina has always (sat, set) near the front of the bus.
9. With a grunt, Mel (sat, set) the heavy boxes on the floor.
10. On a cool evening, I (sit, set) in the backyard under the stars.

EXERCISE B  Underline the form of sit or set in each of the following sentences. If the form is already correct, write C above it. If the form is not correct, write the correct form above it.

Example  1. At holiday meals, the teenagers always set together.

11. When our relatives arrived, they began sitting the food on the dining table.
12. I was setting quietly in a corner when I noticed my nephew Gordy.
13. His mother had sat him in a highchair near the dining table.
14. From his highchair he could reach the food that was sitting nearby.
15. He was sticking his fingers into a sweet-potato pie that set within his reach.
16. He then flung globs of pie filling into the dish of corn I had sat on the table earlier.
17. I went over to Gordy and set the pie out of reach.
18. If someone were setting beside him, maybe he would behave.
19. I sat in the nearest chair and then burst out laughing.
20. I had set on a chocolate cake that someone had carelessly left in the chair.
Rise and Raise

The verb *rise* means “to move upward” or “to go up.” *Rise* does not take an object. The verb *raise* means “to lift (something) up.” *Raise* usually takes an object.

**EXAMPLES** Tina watched the hot-air balloon *rise* high into the sky. [no object]

She *raised* her hand in a gesture of farewell. [*Hand* is the object of *raised.*]

**Exercise A** Underline the correct form of *rise* or *raise* in each of the following sentences.

**Example 1.** The deer has *(raised, risen)* from its hiding place in the thicket.

1. April *(raised, rose)* from her seat and left the room.
2. In the back of the class, Tom *(raised, rose)* his hand to ask a question.
3. The crow flapped its wings and *(raised, rose)* above the treetops.
4. The sun *(raises, rises)* in the east.
5. Julie *(raised, rose)* to her feet when she saw the shooting star.
6. Leon *(rose, raised)* one objection to the game plan.
7. Grace and Becky slowly *(raised, rose)* the curtain.
8. On the first day of spring, I *(rise, raise)* all the windows.
9. The teenagers in the movie screamed as they watched a ghost *(rise, raise)* above them.
10. I *(rose, raised)* a white handkerchief to show that I surrendered.

**Exercise B** Underline the form of *rise* or *raise* in each of the following sentences. If the form is already correct, write *C* above it. If the form is not correct, write the correct form above it.

**Example 1.** My grandparents have *raised* early every morning of their lives.

11. Grain prices *rose* again last month.
12. Each morning when the sun *raises*, the farmer fills the water tank near the barn.
13. The water in the pond has *raised* to the top of its banks.
14. Our neighbors are *rising* crops of peanuts on their farm.
15. In winter the cows *rise* each morning to a meal of peanut hay.
16. In the barn, stacks of hay bales *raise* to the rafters.
17. As I gaze out into the pasture, I must *raise* my hand to block the sun from my eyes.
18. *Rise* the hood of the truck so that I can check the oil.
19. Even going slowly, the truck was *rising* a cloud of dust on the dirt road.
20. In the evening, *sounds* of the cows’ moos *raise* in the distance.
EXERCISE A  Underline the correct form of lie or lay in each of the following sentences.

Example 1. In the summer Katy and Josh enjoy (lying, laying) in the sun.

1. First, they (lie, lay) large beach towels on chairs on the patio.
2. On a small table between the chairs are (laying, lying) magazines and books.
3. Katy and Josh (lie, lay) drowsily in the sun and talk for a while.
4. Later, they’ll pick up one of the magazines that are (lying, laying) nearby.
5. Josh has (lain, laid) a bottle of sunblock on the floor within reach.
6. They are always careful to apply sunblock when they are (lying, laying) outside.
7. Thoughtfully, Katy (lays, lies) down a magazine that she had been reading.
8. As she (lies, lays) there, she wonders if spending so much time in the sun is an unhealthy habit.
9. The magazine says that a person who (lies, lays) in the sun too much can suffer from skin damage.
10. She (lays, lies) her hand across her eyes as she thinks about the information.

EXERCISE B  Underline the form of lie or lay in each of the following sentences. If the form is already correct, write C above it. If the form is not correct, write the correct form above it.

Example 1. I have lain the fabrics out for you.

laid

11. You should probably lay down in the nurse’s office.
12. That beautiful afghan is laying across the sofa.
13. Kendra laid the checkers on the checkerboard.
14. Sara is lying her head on her desk.
15. Brilliantly colored leaves were laying where they had fallen beneath the trees.
16. Ricky dug trenches and lay pipes for the sprinkler system.
17. Lie cold slices of cucumber on your closed eyelids for a refreshing treat.
18. Do you see that necklace that is laying in the gutter?
19. It must have lain there a long time, for it was nearly covered in mud.
Six Troublesome Verbs

Three pairs of verbs that can be troublesome are sit and set, rise and raise, and lie and lay. The verb sit means “to be seated” or “to rest.” Set means “to place” or “to put (something).” Rise means “to move upward” or “to go up.” Raise means “to lift (something) up.” Lie means “to recline,” “to be in a place,” or “to remain lying down.” Lay means “to put (something) down” or “to place (something somewhere).”

**EXAMPLES**

You sit and rest while I set the food out for lunch.

As the moon rises, I raise my eyes to gaze on it.

I will lie on this bench if I can lay a blanket there first.

**Exercise A**

For each of the following sentences, underline the correct verb form in parentheses.

1. The red paper was faded because it had (lain, laid) in the sun.
2. The rickety elevator was slowly (rising, raising) to the third floor.
3. Please (sit, set) up straight in your chair.
4. Rosa is (lying, laying) in her bed, dreaming about her future as an actor.
5. (Lie, Lay) the baby in his crib, Steve.
6. His expectations and goals have (risen, raised) with every success.
7. Chan has (set, sat) in that chair since noon, reading a book about dolphins.
8. (Raise, Rise) your voice so that I can hear you over all this noise.
9. Darcy (sat, set) the alarm clock on his desk.
10. The weary travelers (lay, laid) their heads on their pillows and fell asleep.

**Exercise B**

The following paragraph contains five errors in verb usage. Cross out each error and write the correct verb above it.

1. A jumble of equipment was laying at the edge of the playing field.

   The audience raised to stand at attention while the flag was risen. Then everyone joined in the singing of the national anthem. When the crowd set down once again, the game began. The ball was sat at the forty-yard line for the kickoff. Soon, football players were laying in a tangled heap in the middle of the field. What an exciting game this was going to be!
**Review A: Principal Parts of Verbs**

**Exercise A**  For each sentence below, write the present participle, past, or past participle of the regular verb given in parentheses.

*Example 1.* At the game yesterday I _________ until my voice was hoarse. (cheer)

1. Tia is ____________ for a chance to skate in the Olympic games. (hope)
2. The plane ____________ into the clouds and out of sight. (soar)
3. The town has ____________ the mayor’s plan to build a homeless shelter. (approve)
4. Have you ____________ Lenny’s snow fort? (attack)
5. I have ____________ my brother that I will read him a story. (promise)
6. The principal is ____________ the trophy in the case, where it will remain until the next competition. (place)
7. Babe Ruth, the famous baseball player, always ____________ to manage a baseball team. (want)
8. My little brother ____________ to believe in the tooth fairy. (use)
9. President Lyndon Johnson ____________ not to seek reelection in 1968. (decide)
10. Lola is ____________ me with my writing assignment. (help)

**Exercise B**  For each sentence below, write the past or past participle of the irregular verb given in parentheses.

*Example 1.* These two tapestries have been ____________ for display. (choose)

11. Alex Haley ____________, Roots, a book about his family history. (write)
12. The clever detective ____________ just where to look for the evidence. (know)
13. The children ____________ as they marched up and over the hill. (sing)
14. Mrs. Alvarez has ____________ to San Salvador to visit her granddaughter. (go)
15. Mom has ____________ many fruits and vegetables from the garden. (freeze)
16. The tennis coach ____________ Delbert his assistant. (make)
17. It’s a terrible feeling to realize you have ____________ a family heirloom. (break)
18. We ____________ a murder-mystery play in which the audience helped to solve the crime. (see)
19. The police officer ____________ to question all the witnesses to the accident. (begin)
20. I can’t remember to whom I ____________ my notebook. (lend)
EXERCISE A  For each sentence below, write the present participle, past, or past participle of the regular verb given in parentheses.

Example 1. The hiker _________ his trail as he went along. (mark)

1. The children ____________ their hair and brushed their teeth before they left for school. (comb)

2. Many of the tomato plants in our garden have ____________ because of an early frost. (die)

3. I am ____________ for a book about the American Revolution. (look)

4. Yoko ____________ she was ready for the big race. (suppose)

5. More than one hundred years ago, the people of the United States ____________ Ulysses S. Grant president. (elect)

6. Cletha has ____________ that she will make a model of the Alamo. (decide)

7. A petting zoo ____________ to be where that high-rise apartment building is. (use)

8. You have ____________ just in time to join us for dinner. (arrive)

9. Carl is ____________ out exactly how many days he has been alive. (figure)

10. Do you know who ____________ the arroz con pollo? (cook)

EXERCISE B  For each of the following sentences, write the past or past participle of the irregular verb given in parentheses.

Example 1. Joanna has ____________ that song many times. (sing)

11. I have ____________ my team jacket. (lose)

12. My favorite pair of jeans ____________ in the wash. (shrink)

13. Martin ____________ that lifting that heavy carton alone would hurt his back. (know)

14. Tanya has ____________ so well in math this year that she has been placed in an advanced class for next year. (do)

15. The pitcher ____________ the ball barehanded. (catch)

16. My parents have ____________ us how to handle money responsibly. (show)

17. Kevin had ____________ five glasses of water during lunch. (drink)

18. The main character has not ____________ his brother for seven years. (see)

19. We had ____________ across the lake and back before Kelly arrived. (swim)

20. The rancher has ____________ out to find his lost cattle. (ride)
**EXERCISE A**  Underline the verb in each of the following sentences. Then, identify its tense by writing above it *Pres* for *present*, *Past* for *past*, or *Fut* for *future*.

**Example 1.** Philippa joined the choir a month ago.

1. The chorus will sing a medley of Stevie Wonder’s hits.
2. Many singers participated in last year’s concert.
3. Ms. Das leads the chorus as well as the orchestra.
4. Mika will play a trumpet solo in tonight’s concert.
5. She practiced for the performance all weekend.
6. Lionel accidentally dropped the cymbals.
7. There will be photographs of the performance available for sale.
8. The soloist sang with a strong, clear voice.
9. The principal knows the names of all the students in the choir.
10. We sold a ticket for every seat available.

**EXERCISE B**  For each of the following sentences, write the form of the verb described in parentheses. Write the verb form in the space provided.

**Example 1.** I **have been submitting** my poetry to several contests. (present perfect progressive tense of submit)

11. By the time the reporters arrive, the author **will have given** her speech. (future perfect tense of give)
12. The editor of these books **chose** one of them as her favorite. (past tense of choose)
13. Carlos **begins** to write stories like a master storyteller. (present progressive tense of begin)
14. We **saw** what happened when that book became a bestseller. (past perfect tense of see)
15. Tula **has spoken** about this literary topic many times. (present perfect tense of speak)
EXERCISE A  Above the underlined verb in each sentence, write A for active voice or P for passive voice.

Example 1. Last summer I sold vegetables at a farmer’s market.

A

1. The farmer’s market holds a cooking contest each June.
2. Numerous cookies and casseroles are sampled by the judges.
3. Fruit punch, lemonade, and fruit smoothies are made by contestants.
4. Votes are cast for the tastiest items.
5. People buy ingredients to make the dishes they like the most.
6. I have frozen bags of corn and berries in my freezer at home.
7. One day I was given a slice of homemade berry tart by one of the vendors.
8. The next day I asked him for his recipe.
9. That weekend I secretly made a delicious dessert for my family.
10. “A prize should be awarded to whoever baked this!” exclaimed my father.

EXERCISE B  For each of the sentences below, underline the correct verb in parentheses.

Example 1. After shopping all day, I had to (sit, set) with my feet up.

A

11. Whose bicycle is (laying, lying) in the driveway?
12. My parents are thrilled because all my grades have (raised, risen) this term.
13. The meat has been (sitting, setting) on the counter all day and is probably spoiled.
14. If you have any questions after the speech, please (rise, raise) your hand.
15. The artist had (sat, set) his paintings on the sidewalk for passersby to admire.
16. The colorful balloons (raised, rose) high up into the sky and disappeared.
17. We (sat, set) and waited all day for the package to arrive, but it never did.
18. (Lie, Lay) your clothes out the night before, and you will have a head start in the morning.
19. Mother is (setting, sitting) the bouquet of flowers on the table.
20. During last night’s thunder storm, Lisa (layed, lay) on the couch and read a mystery novel by Ellis Peters.
Case

10a. **Case** is the form that a noun or pronoun takes to show its relationship to other words in a sentence.

English has three cases for nouns and pronouns: nominative, objective, and possessive. The form of a noun is the same for both the nominative and the objective cases. A noun changes its form only in the possessive case, usually by adding an apostrophe and an s. Most personal pronouns have different forms for all three cases.

- **NOMINATIVE CASE**: The house is white. We are happy.
- **OBJECTIVE CASE**: We bought the house. The joke made us laugh.
- **POSSESSIVE CASE**: The house’s color is white. Our laughter was loud.

**Exercise A** Identify the case of the underlined noun or pronoun in each sentence by underlining the correct option in parentheses.

**Example 1.** This book’s accounts of inventions are interesting. (objective or possessive)

1. Yesterday I read about James C. Boyle. (nominative or objective)
2. He was a little-known inventor. (nominative or objective)
3. He invented a hat tipper in the 1890s. (nominative or objective)
4. This invention tipped a man’s hat for him. (objective or possessive)
5. When Boyle greeted a woman, he would tip his hat to her. (nominative or objective)
6. A woman of that time expected this of him. (nominative or objective)
7. The hat tipper tipped Boyle’s hat as he approached her. (nominative or possessive)
8. To make the tipper work, he just nodded his head slightly. (nominative or objective)
9. The patent office gave him a patent for the invention. (nominative or objective)
10. However, the invention never made him famous. (nominative or objective)

**Exercise B** Each of the following sentences needs a noun or a pronoun. The case of the needed noun or pronoun is specified in parentheses. Write your answers on the blanks provided.

**Example 1.** (possessive pronoun) Satya and Darryl have finished their homework.

11. (possessive noun) The large surface is covered with books and papers.
12. (objective pronoun) The two of have studied all afternoon.
13. (possessive pronoun) Satya is twin sister.
14. (objective pronoun) I was kind and prepared a snack for and Darryl.
15. (possessive pronoun) The movie was boring: plot was predictable.
The Case Forms of Personal Pronouns

10a. *Case* is the form that a noun or pronoun takes to show its relationship to other words in a sentence.

English has three cases for pronouns: *nominative*, *objective*, and *possessive*.

**NOMINATIVE CASE**  
I, you, he, she, it, we, they

**OBJECTIVE CASE**  
me, you, him, her, it, us, them

**POSSESSIVE CASE**  
my, mine, your, yours, his, her, hers, its, our, ours, their, theirs

**EXERCISE A**  
Underline the personal pronoun in each sentence. Above the pronoun, identify its case by writing *N* for nominative, *O* for objective, or *P* for possessive.

*Example 1.* This year we will do the holiday shopping early.

1. Katie hit it out of the park.
2. We have saved money and made lists.
3. Mom has asked for a day off from her job to go shopping.
4. The family will go to the mall in our minivan.
5. It will be full of purchases by the end of the day.

**EXERCISE B**  
Each of the following sentences needs a personal pronoun. The case of the needed pronoun is specified in parentheses. Write an appropriate personal pronoun on each of the blanks provided.

*Example 1.* (possessive) Since you spilled your soup, I will give you ________.

6. (objective) I accidentally bumped into ________ in the hallway.
7. (nominative) ________ and I will be there soon.
8. (possessive) Here is yours, but where is ________?
9. (objective) The wooden stair creaked when I stepped on ________.
10. (possessive) That wire sculpture was ________ project for art class.
11. (nominative) Nora and ________ performed the experiment carefully.
12. (objective) A snake! Don’t step on ________.
13. (possessive) The neighbor’s dog somehow got into ________ yard.
14. (nominative) Are ________ going sailing this weekend?
15. (objective) I blamed ________ for ruining the evening.
**Exercise A**

Underline the correct form of the pronoun or pronouns in parentheses in each sentence.

**Example 1.** After school *(him and me, he and I)* went to the store.

1. You and *(her, she)* need to discuss the rules.
2. Amy and *(I, me)* climbed into the airplane’s cockpit.
3. Yesterday *(us, we)* began reading *Nisei Daughter* for our book club.
4. Find out if the mystery man is really *(he, him)*.
5. Peter and *(them, they)* are practicing skateboard tricks.
6. The membership committee will be César, Akela, and *(me, I)*.
7. At what time did *(her and me, she and I)* promise to be home?
8. The students are *(them, they)*.
9. *(We and they, Us and them)* will compete at the state finals.
10. The speaker from the local college is *(she, her)*.

**Exercise B**

Write a pronoun that can correctly replace the underlined word or words in each of the following sentences. Write your answers above the underlined words.

**Example 1.** Yesterday *Terrence and Liz* studied fossils at the museum.

11. Yes, the pine and the cedar are the trees to prune.
12. The man with the bulldog puppy is *Max*.
13. Kyron and *Sherry* learned to speak Spanish as children.
14. The class’s most colorful dressers are *Ming and David*.
15. Despite her promises, *Terra* did not arrive on time.
EXERCISE A Write a pronoun that can correctly replace the underlined word or words in each sentence. Write your answers above the underlined words.

**Example 1.** Bruce and Maria will marry in September.

1. Crystal and the other sky divers checked the time.
2. The best people for the job are Kelly and Rico.
3. The dog and the cats are an important part of our family.
4. The players to watch this season are Bobbie and Cathy.
5. In the dark Joseph knocked the alarm clock off the table.
6. The Andersons and the Morgans will get to the campsite first.
7. These stray cats are not healthy, nor are these stray cats friendly.
8. Tiffany said, “Kat and Tiffany will be at her house.”
9. Are you and Nilda and Rogelio taking your grandparents to dinner?
10. Cleon and Loretta and I will be the only solo singers.

EXERCISE B Read each sentence and decide whether the underlined personal pronoun is correct. If it is correct, write C above it. If the personal pronoun is incorrect, write the correct form above it.

**Example 1.** Violet and them went to the movies.

11. Kelly and him started sharing a locker.
12. Dustin shouted, “Montel and I are going to win this game!”
13. I finally realized my secret pen pal was her.
14. What did you and Todd bring to the international food fair?
15. The drama instructor and me performed a one-act play for the class.
The Objective Case A

The objective case forms of personal pronouns are me, you, him, her, it, us, and them.

10d. **Direct objects** and **indirect objects** of verbs should be in the objective case.

A direct object tells who or what receives the action of the verb. In a sentence containing an indirect object, the indirect object usually comes between an action verb and its direct object.

A indirect object tells to whom or to what or for whom or for what the action is done.

**DIRECT OBJECT**

The sea gull attacked me.

**INDIRECT OBJECT**

The catcher gave him a signal.

10e. The object of a preposition should be in the objective case.

A noun or pronoun that follows a preposition is called the object of the preposition.

**OBJECT OF A PREPOSITION**

Mario is standing between him and her.

**EXERCISE A**  Read each of the following sentences, and identify the underlined pronoun as a direct object (DO), an indirect object (IO), or an object of a preposition (OP).

**Example 1.** Don’t give Darla and me any excuses!

1. The magician gave her the blindfold.
2. Toshiro photographed me in front of the state capitol.
3. With a smile, Coach handed us the first-place trophies.
4. The dog ran right by them.
5. Behind Dr. Haddad and her stood the new patient.
6. There should never be secrets between you and me.
7. “Show me your school ID,” said the ticket taker at the football game.
8. I can’t believe I tripped over it!
9. Give them to me, please.
10. The cafeteria serves us a different main dish each day of the week.

**EXERCISE B**  Replace the underlined word or words in each sentence with a correct objective case pronoun. Write the pronouns above the underlined word or words.

**Example 1.** The circus clowns amused the fans.

11. The talented gymnast performed the routine flawlessly.
12. Ice-skating is important to Deanna.
13. May I have the grapes?
14. Give Robert the shopping list.
15. At the graduation ceremony, Sue will sit between Malik and Shaun.
The Objective Case B

The objective case forms of personal pronouns are me, you, him, her, it, us, and them.

10d. Direct objects and indirect objects of verbs should be in the objective case.

A direct object tells who or what receives the action of the verb. In a sentence containing an indirect object, the indirect object usually comes between an action verb and its direct object.

An indirect object tells to whom or to what or for whom or for what the action of the verb is done.

DIRECT OBJECT

INDIRECT OBJECT

Example 6. Ying placed it in the lost and found.

Example 7. Archimedes gave her his latest invention.

EXERCISE A  Write a pronoun that can correctly replace the underlined word or words in each sentence. Write the pronoun above the underlined word or words.

Example 1. The tiger looked straight at Vince and Bertha.

1. Uncle Hugo explained the fable to Doyle and me.

2. The train thundered past Justin and Clara.

3. A nurse quickly handed Emily the scissors.

4. “Just stack the books on the counter,” said the librarian.

5. Photograph Aunt Shirley and me with your new camera.

EXERCISE B  Use the specified verb and the object or objects in each of the following items to write an original sentence. Write your sentences on the lines provided.

Example 6. verb: throw    indirect object: him    direct object: towel

The basketball player threw him a sweaty towel.

6. verb: meet    direct object: them

7. verb: see    direct object: them

8. verb: tell    indirect object: her    direct object: answer

9. verb: pour    direct object: it

10. verb: build    direct object: fence    object of a preposition: it
**Exercise A**  Underline the pronoun in each of the following sentences, and identify it by writing above it S for subject, PN for predicate nominative, DO for direct object, IO for indirect object, or OP for object of a preposition.

**Example 1.** Raphael tossed her the backpack.

1. The special effects impressed me.
2. The spies could possibly be they.
3. Mother and we posed for a family portrait.
4. Una borrowed the tools from the Lincolns and us.
5. Did the manager offer him a part-time job?
6. The fake ghost gave them a fright.
7. Tameka and I baby-sit the Clark children.
8. Did Carol tell you the news about the new soccer coach?
9. The class valedictorian is he.
10. She and Joey went to the library.
11. Trey doesn’t believe it.
12. Give at least one clue to her.
13. The dog brought us a bone.
15. Lisa and I sang the final duet.
16. The diving instructor told Sheila and him another way to work on breathing techniques.
17. They did not believe that light travels at 186,000 miles per second.
18. The bus driver turned on the radio for us.
19. Carla gave him a note after class.
20. The pouring rain drenched them to the bone.
Nominative and Objective Case Pronouns B

The subject of a verb should be in the nominative case.

A predicate nominative should be in the nominative case.

Direct objects and indirect objects of verbs should be in the objective case.

The object of a preposition should be in the objective case.

**Exercise**

Decide whether the form of the underlined pronoun in each of the following sentences is correct. If it is correct, write C above it. If the pronoun form is incorrect, write the correct form above it.

**Example 1.** Jeremy and her tended to the horses.

1. The mayor gave us an award.
2. The most exciting match featured Tipley and he.
3. In June, you and him should go to San Juan.
4. Now the person without a partner is me.
5. The postal worker delivered a package for Harry and she.
6. My grandfather and her operated a small inn in Vermont.
7. The coach praised Manuel and he.
8. No one gave Mu Lan or I the message.
9. I felt certain that the man in the superhero costume was he.
10. The crowd cheered when the principal gave Stacy and she the trophies.
11. We’ve been waiting for you and him for half an hour.
12. Eddie gave the strawberries to she and Michael.
13. You must tell your dad or me if you will be out late.
14. This problem involves her and I.
15. The children and they had a great time.
16. The coach gave them an inspiring speech before the game.
17. Felicia spoke to Freddie and he.
18. The one who took the early flight was he.
19. Him and she engaged in a spirited debate.
20. Anton and they arrived late.
Who and Whom

The pronoun who has different forms in the nominative and objective cases. Who is the nominative form. Whom is the objective form. When you are choosing between who or whom in a question, follow these steps: (1) Rephrase the question as a statement. (2) Decide how the pronoun is being used. (3) Determine the case of the pronoun. (4) Select the correct pronoun form.

**Example** (Who, Whom) shall I invite?
- **Step 1** I shall invite (who, whom).
- **Step 2** The pronoun is the direct object of invite.
- **Step 3** A pronoun that is a direct object is in the objective case.
- **Answer** Whom shall I invite?

**Exercise A** Underline the correct pronoun in each of the following sentences.

Example 1. *(Who, Whom)* is calling?
1. *(Who, Whom)* did you beat in the first race?
2. To *(who, whom)* shall I send the application?
3. *(Who, Whom)* called so early this morning?
4. With *(who, whom)* did you go to the fiesta?
5. *(Who, Whom)* was the actor in the mask?
6. *(Who, Whom)* did Kathy describe the play to yesterday?
7. After dinner, *(who, whom)* will wash the dishes?
8. *(Who, Whom)* did Trevor imitate?
9. *(Who, Whom)* seemed to be the fastest runner?
10. For *(who, whom)* did you make that card?

**Exercise B** Decide whether the form of who or whom in each sentence is correct. If it is correct, write C above it. If it is not correct, cross it out and write the correct form above it.

Example 1. *(Who)* are you talking about, Lynn?
11. Who knows what instrument Van Cliburn plays?
12. For *(who)* was this library named?
13. Now, *(whom)* recorded the song originally?
14. With *(whom)* will you sit at the game?
15. To *(who)* shall I address this letter?
Appositives and Reflexive Pronouns

Sometimes a pronoun is followed directly by a noun that identifies the pronoun. Such a noun is called an appositive. To choose which pronoun to use before an appositive, try each form of the pronoun without the appositive.

**Example**

The crowd cheered (we, us) rodeo clowns.

(The crowd cheered we.)

(The crowd cheered us.)

**Correct Form**

The crowd cheered us rodeo clowns.

The reflexive pronouns himself and themselves can be used as objects. Do not use the nonstandard forms hisself and theirselfs or theirselves in place of himself and themselves.

**Example**

Ron saw himself reflected in the huge window. [not hisself]

**Exercise A**

Underline the correct form of the pronoun in parentheses in each of the following sentences.

**Example 1.** They couldn’t help (themselves, theirselves).

1. (We, Us) athletes watch our diets.
2. Mr. Red Cloud told (we, us) Eagle Scouts how to use the Heimlich maneuver.
3. The owner always gives (we, us) clerks overtime pay on Saturdays.
4. The present treasurer took (hisself, himself) out of the election.
5. Before the next show, (we, us) stagehands should get better props.
6. (We, Us) skaters carried the flag.
7. Ian described (himself, hisself) as patient and dependable.
8. For the past three years, one of (we, us) Monteros has won first place in the county spelling bee.
9. The chaperones talked among (theirselves, theirselves) most of the evening.
10. Maybe Kale will ask (we, us) photographers to judge the show.

**Exercise B**

Each of the following sentences contains a pronoun error. Cross out each incorrect pronoun, and write the correct form above it.

**Example 1.** The winners earned theiself a trophy.

11. The boys made dinner theirselves.
12. Us computer types enjoy this game.
13. Us seventh graders raised the most money.
14. Did you see Reed put hisself in front of the goal?
15. Danielle read the letter to we girls.
Special Pronoun Problems

The pronoun who has different forms in the nominative and objective cases. **Who** is the nominative form. **Whom** is the objective form.

**EXAMPLE**  In the Study Buddy program, who will help whom with math?

Sometimes a pronoun is followed by an appositive. To choose which pronoun to use before an appositive, try each form of the pronoun without the appositive.

**EXAMPLE**  We [not Us] seventh graders have the most school spirit.

The reflexive pronouns himself and themselves can be used as objects. Do not use the nonstandard forms hisself and theirselfs or theirselves in place of himself and themselves.

**EXAMPLE**  The swimmers could have hurt themselves [not theirselves] on those rocks.

**Exercise A**  Underline the correct pronoun in parentheses in each of the following sentences.

**Example**  1. New uniforms will be given to (we, us) volleyball players.

1. Between games the volleyball players went to the sidelines and helped (themselves, theirselves) to water.

2. (We, Us) soccer players have parents in the stands.

3. After the game, (who, whom) will take you home?

4. To (who, whom) should I serve the ball?

5. The photographer blamed (himself, hisself) for the poor quality of the team photos.

6. The Blue Bees congratulated (theirselfs, themselves) for winning the first game.

7. Despite our loss, (we, us) Fighting Falcons remained positive.

8. (Whom, Who) would be our best player in this game?

9. Lucy, a great spiker, led the rest of (we, us) players to a victory in the second game.

10. The Blue Bees guaranteed (themselves, theirselves) a loss when they got too confident.

**Exercise B**  Each of the following sentences contains an error in the use of pronouns. Cross out each incorrect pronoun, and write the correct form above it.

**Example**  1. She congratulated us [not we] students on a job well done.

11. I don’t know whom their coach is.

12. A coach should pride herself or hisself on the good spirit of the players.

13. During the tie-breaking game us seters worked extra hard.

14. In every play I asked myself, “Whom should spike the ball?”

15. Who were the players that set theirselves up for victory?
EXERCISE A  Identify the underlined pronoun in each of the following sentences by writing S for subject or PN for predicate nominative above the pronoun.

Example 1. I was shocked to learn that my secret admirer is you.

1. Harry and I both liked the movie.
2. After lunch, perhaps Klaus and she will help us paint the kitchen.
3. The two finalists were Fatima and I.
4. The only people to speak were they.
5. Without warning, he jumped up and pointed to the witness.
6. Then she showed me how the computer worked.
7. The only judges were Mrs. Okana and he.
8. Susana and we may be late.
9. The two finalists could be Elmore and I.
10. At the curtain call, they took another bow.

EXERCISE B  In each of the following sentences, underline the correct pronoun in parentheses.

Example 1. The person who helped me research is (her, she).

11. This month, my classmates and (I, me) are supposed to write reports about Massachusetts.
12. Yesterday (me, I) read about the Molasses Flood of 1919.
13. The man in the clown costume was (him, he).
14. Charles and (them, they) rented canoes.
15. (Them, They) are the tastiest treats I have ever eaten!
16. The person on the skateboard is (he, him).
17. Before long, Matt and (she, her) had found the lost mine.
18. After the bell had sounded, Julia and (us, we) went home.
19. The top students were Erica and (he, him).
20. I thought that (he, him) would like to borrow my bike.
**EXERCISE A** Identify the underlined pronoun in each of the following sentences by writing **DO** for direct object, **IO** for indirect object, or **OP** for object of a preposition above the pronoun.

**Example 1.** Please give my best wishes to **OP** her.
1. The sky above **him** was full of clouds.
2. The gate banged against **her** when it closed.
3. Please pass **me** the atlas.
4. Melba told **us** something about her day at the Bluegrass Music Festival.
5. Did they give Eliot or **him** a surprise party?
6. A sudden storm took **me** by surprise.
7. The visitor saw a signal pass between the king and **him**.
8. The paramedic showed **us** a way to save someone from choking.
9. My uncle always gives my cousin and **her** newspaper clippings.
10. Unfortunately, the bus left without **him**.

**EXERCISE B** Read each of the following sentences, and decide whether the underlined pronoun is correct. If it is correct, write **C** above it. If the pronoun is incorrect, write the correct form above it.

**Example 1.** Nathan lent some paper to Ruth and **me**.
11. Suzi gave thoughtful presents to Lannie and **him**.
12. Jenna slowly walked toward Howard and **me**.
13. The glowing embers of the fire warmed Rosa and **she**.
14. Josie’s mother gave her and **him** a ride home from the store.
15. The speaker complimented Gary and **I** on our attentiveness.
16. The students read captivating stories about **he** and his adventures.
17. Take good care of **him**.
18. Clara took Todd and **he** to see Shakespeare’s play *Othello*.
19. The one who made the generous donation was **her**.
20. In a flash, the skateboarder zoomed past **him** and **she**.
EXERCISE A Each of the following sentences has a pronoun error. Cross out each incorrect pronoun, and write the correct pronoun above it.

Example 1. The new bike racks outside our school pleased we bikers.
1. The gymnast first tried the new parallel bars hisself.
2. She showed we students how a diamond is cut.
3. Us left-handed people have trouble using most scissors.
4. The mayor congratulated we lifeguards for saving the child.
5. Finally, the detectives asked theirselves the right question.
6. As he worked, Octavio talked to hisself.
7. The Mustangs lost to we Tornadoes.
8. Now us hikers have our own club.
9. The bears helped theirselves to the campers’ food.
10. Us dancers practice two hours every day.

EXERCISE B Decide whether the form of who or whom in each sentence is correct. If it is correct, write C above it. If it is not correct, cross it out and write the correct form above it.

Example 1. Who should I hug first?
11. To who should we give the money?
12. Who wants vanilla yogurt?
13. With whom can Red share a room?
14. Who has Alicia asked to help her?
15. Of all the speakers, who did you like the most?
16. Whom understands how this computer program works?
17. Who did you vote for in the last election?
18. Before Andrew Johnson, who was the President of the United States?
19. Who is this package meant for, Sabrina?
20. Whom can show us where Mexico City is on the map?
Modifiers

A modifier is a word, a phrase, or a clause that makes the meaning of a word or word group more specific. The two kinds of modifiers are adjectives and adverbs.

**WORDS**
- The weather is becoming **worse**. [modifies weather]
- The snow fell **silently**. [modifies fell]

**PHRASES**
- **Coating the sidewalk**, the ice sparkled in the sun. [modifies ice]
- Shovel the snow **off the sidewalk**. [modifies shovel]

**CLAUSES**
- **After we went skiing**, we drank hot cocoa. [modifies drank]
- The children **who built the snowman** live next door. [modifies children]

**Exercise A**
Circle each word, phrase, or clause that modifies the underlined word in each sentence. Do not include the words *a, an, or the*.

**Example 1.** Winter is the **coldest season** of the year.

1. The months **that make up winter** are December, January, and February.
2. During the winter, it sometimes **snows**.
3. Snow rarely falls in southern Texas.
4. Following winter, **spring arrives** in March.
5. Spring is the **time** to plant seeds.
6. The weather usually is **rainy** in springtime.
7. The warmest **season** of the year is summer.
8. Students **whose school year ends in May** enjoy these summer months.
9. The crisp **days** of autumn follow summer.
10. After the temperatures cool, leaves fall **from the trees**.

**Exercise B**
On the line provided, write a word, a phrase, or a clause to modify the underlined word in each sentence.

**Example 1.** I can’t decide which **shirt** to wear.

11. Your joke was ________________.
12. ________________, we measured the angles of triangles.
13. I tossed my coat ________________.
14. Will the person ________________ please come to Lost and Found to retrieve it?
15. I admired the ________________ colors in the painting.
One-Word Modifiers

The two kinds of modifiers are adjectives and adverbs.

**Adjectives** make the meanings of nouns and pronouns more specific.

**Adverbs** make the meanings of verbs, adjectives, and other adverbs more specific.

**Exercise A** Circle the word that modifies the underlined word or word group in each sentence.

**Example 1.** Judy Blume has written much beloved books.

1. Judy Blume has written nearly twenty books for young people.
2. Close friendship is the subject of *Just As Long As We’re Together*.
3. Stephanie and Rachel have been best friends forever, but then Alison appears.
4. If you enjoyed that book, you will eagerly read its sequel, *Here’s to You, Rachel Robinson*.
5. When Rachel’s older brother moves back home, her orderly life is turned upside down.
7. *Are You There God? It’s Me, Margaret* is funny.
8. Young Margaret Simon talks with God about growing up.
9. The popular novel puts a funny spin on the trials of preteen girls.
10. Through her many talks with God, Margaret anxiously awaits getting older.

**Exercise B** On the line provided, write an adjective or adverb modifying the underlined word or words in each sentence.

**Example 1.** I can’t hear you—would you speak louder?

11. Talking with friends on the telephone is an part of my life.
12. We talk for hours.
13. Megan’s jokes are funny!
14. After a phone call to her, I am always .
15. When I’m on the phone, the time goes quickly.
16. Unfortunately, I have to share the phone with my sister.
17. She always talks in whispers.
18. She is that I’ll hear what she says to her friends.
19. I am less than she is.
20. When I’m on the phone, I talk and laugh .
Phrases Used as Modifiers

Like one-word modifiers, *phrases* can also be used as adjectives and adverbs.

**EXAMPLES**

I have marked the chapters to read. [modifies *chapters*]

The puppy howled *during the thunderstorm*. [modifies *howled*]

**EXERCISE A**

Circle the phrase that modifies the underlined word or word group in each sentence.

**Example 1.** Wrinkling his nose, Brad sniffed the air in the science lab.

1. This is the frog we will dissect in class today.
2. The frogs in the other trays are for the next class.
3. Please assemble your equipment on the counter.
4. These plastic gloves are the ones to wear for the best protection.
5. During the dissection, I performed most of the work.
6. Standing near our frog, my lab partner looked ill.
7. The perfect job for my lab partner was taking notes.
8. The lab windows, opened wide, allowed the odors to escape.
9. The frogs are preserved in a formaldehyde solution.
10. Working for a week, we finally finished the frog dissection.

**EXERCISE B**

On the line provided, write an adjective phrase or an adverb phrase to modify the underlined word in each sentence.

**Example 1.** The vegetables, chopped in small pieces, were added to the soup pot.

11. _________________, Diego put his bare feet in the water.
12. The best menu item _________________ is the corned beef hash.
13. I rearranged my room and placed the bed _________________.
14. _________________, Thania finished her test before anyone else.
15. The car, _________________, looked new again.
16. The one _________________ is Alexis.
17. The car’s horn echoed loudly _________________.
18. Raymond painted his vase the color _________________.
19. _________________, Samantha flipped the pancakes.
20. The gift _________________ is the newest CD from her favorite singer.
EXERCISE A  Circle the clause that modifies the underlined word or word group in each sentence.

Example 1. Before Jesse went to the beach, he grabbed his metal detector.

1. Jesse is one of those **people** who enjoy searching for treasure.
2. A metal detector is the search **tool** that he uses most.
3. A metal detector **can locate** metal when the metal lies beneath the ground’s surface.
4. Coins and jewelry are some of the **objects** that a metal detector locates.
5. After they find valuable objects, many treasure seekers **sell** them.
6. Other hunters build **special chests** that hold their treasure.
7. Treasure **hunters** who use a metal detector must invest money in this tool.
8. High-quality metal **detectors**, which can cost around five hundred dollars, run on batteries.
9. The Internet is a **place** where you can read about other people’s experiences.
10. Some treasure seekers create **Web sites** that show pictures of their latest finds.

EXERCISE B  Underline the clause used as a modifier in each sentence. Then, draw an arrow from the clause to the word it modifies.

Example 1. Which person is the friend whom you promised a ride home?

11. Before I went to sleep, I chose my clothes for the next day.
12. Where is the coat that I loaned you?
13. Will someone who knows the answer please speak up?
14. Leticia completed her test with confidence because she had studied hard.
15. Spring is the season that I enjoy most.
16. When I removed the CD from its case, the disc cracked.
17. Did you read the e-mail that I sent you?
18. The puppy chewed on my shoes after he ate my homework.
19. Terrence is a friend whom you can trust with a secret.
20. This novel, which I read in two hours, is short and suspenseful.
for CHAPTER 11: USING MODIFIERS CORRECTLY page 266

Phrases and Clauses Used as Modifiers

Like one-word modifiers, phrases and clauses can also be used as adjectives and adverbs.

**PHRASES**
- Several campers gathered **around the campfire**. [modifies gathered]
- **Burned by the flames**, the marshmallows were inedible. [modifies marshmallows]

**CLAUSES**
- The flames, **which burned the marshmallows**, glowed. [modifies flames]
- The campers sang **while they roasted marshmallows**. [modifies sang]

**EXERCISE A**
Circle the phrase or clause that modifies the underlined word or words in each sentence.

*Example 1.* Please pack the nylon tent **with the other camping gear**.

1. Who are the **people** whom you invited along?
2. They **were roommates** when they went to college.
3. A state park is the **place** to camp over the weekend.
4. I know a woman who is a park ranger.
5. Talking with her, I received some advice.
6. Campers should take plastic **bags** that will hold their food scraps.
7. Keep food scraps inside these bags.
8. Wild animals that wander nearby will not smell the food.
9. They will not **search** your campsite for the food.
10. I will pack **resealable bags** along with my socks and jeans.

**EXERCISE B**
Circle the phrase or clause used as a modifier in each sentence. Then, draw an arrow from the phrase or clause to the word it modifies.

*Example 1.* **Skating in the competition**, Tera performed a graceful jump.

11. The grass that you planted is not growing well.
12. Please leave my bicycle in the garage.
13. The basketball court to use in the morning is the new one.
14. Before he said anything, Darnell took a deep breath.
15. Pattering against our windows, the sleet woke me.
16. The river, filled to its banks, flowed swiftly.
17. Is peach the flavor that you would like?
18. Do you know anyone who can tutor me?
19. Rae pulled her new in-line skates from their box.
20. After you leave school today, come home.
**Regular Comparisons**

The three degrees of comparison of modifiers are the *positive*, the *comparative*, and the *superlative*.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>POSITIVE</th>
<th>COMPARATIVE</th>
<th>SUPERLATIVE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>fast</td>
<td>faster</td>
<td>fastest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>beautiful</td>
<td>more beautiful</td>
<td>most beautiful</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bright</td>
<td>less bright</td>
<td>least bright</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Exercise A** On the lines provided, write the comparative and superlative degrees of the following modifiers. Do not include forms showing decreasing comparison.

**Example 1.** proudly

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Positive</th>
<th>Comparative</th>
<th>Superlative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>importantly</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>happy</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>loud</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bravely</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>brilliantly</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>simple</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cheaply</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>foolish</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>green</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sad</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Exercise B** For each of the following sentences, write the form of the modifier given in parentheses.

**Example 1.** (comparative form of *tall*) Halley is ___________ than any other girl here.

11. (comparative form of *full*) This pail is ___________ than that one.
12. (superlative form of *funny*) That is the ___________ joke I know.
13. (comparative form of *rapidly*) A rabbit runs ___________ than a skunk.
14. (comparative form of *small*) This piece of bread seems ___________ than that one.
15. (decreasing superlative form of *difficult*) Of all school subjects, I think math is ___________.
Irregular Comparisons

The three degrees of comparison of modifiers are the **positive**, the **comparative**, and the **superlative**.

The comparative and superlative degrees of some modifiers are irregular in form.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>POSITIVE</th>
<th>bad</th>
<th>good</th>
<th>many</th>
<th>far</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>COMPARATIVE</td>
<td>worse</td>
<td>better</td>
<td>more</td>
<td>farther or further</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SUPERLATIVE</td>
<td>worst</td>
<td>best</td>
<td>most</td>
<td>farthest or furthest</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Exercise A**  For each of the following sentences, identify the degree of comparison of the underlined modifier by writing **P** for **positive** degree, **C** for **comparative** degree, or **S** for **superlative** degree.

**Example 1.** Of all the performances, I liked Brandy’s most.

1. Carlos likes science fiction stories better than mysteries.
2. I think Friday is the best day of the whole week.
3. More people came to the meeting than we had expected.
4. Of all the members of the team, Inez bats best.
5. My cousin was able to save more money than I.
6. Chet has delivered many newspapers.
7. After supper, I felt worse than I had felt in the afternoon.
8. We hiked farther today than we hiked yesterday.
9. Dad doesn’t play much tennis.
10. This is the worst cold I have ever had.

**Exercise B**  Write above the parentheses the form of the modifier given.

**Example 1.** Which of your two friends travels (comparative of far) to school?

11. In my opinion, that was a (positive of good) movie.
12. Lita is the (superlative of good) speller of the three contestants.
13. Which of the four theaters is (superlative of far) from your house?
14. Georgia plays all sports (positive of well).
15. My tennis serve is (comparative of good) than it was last year.
16. I’m sorry I wasn’t (comparative of much) help to you.
17. If you practice diligently, your math skills will get (comparative of good).
18. Which is (comparative of easy) for you: memorizing dates or memorizing formulas?
19. This is the (superlative of bad) food I have ever eaten!
20. “How many (comparative of many) laps do we have to run?” I asked the coach.
Regular and Irregular Comparisons

The three degrees of comparison of modifiers are the **positive**, the **comparative**, and the **superlative**.

Most modifiers form the comparative degree by adding *–er* and the superlative degree by adding *–est*. Some modifiers form the comparative degree by using *more* and the superlative degree by using *most*. The comparative and superlative degrees of some modifiers are irregular in form. To show decreasing comparisons, modifiers form the comparative degree by using *less* and the superlative degree by using *least*.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>POSITIVE</th>
<th>cute</th>
<th>traditional</th>
<th>well</th>
<th>damp</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>COMPARATIVE</td>
<td>cuter</td>
<td>more traditional</td>
<td>better</td>
<td>less damp</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SUPERLATIVE</td>
<td>cutest</td>
<td>most traditional</td>
<td>best</td>
<td>least damp</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Exercise A** For each of the following sentences, identify the degree of comparison of the underlined modifier by writing *P* for **positive** degree, *C* for **comparative** degree, or *S* for **superlative** degree.

**Example 1.** Paulo writes fantastic reviews of fast food sold around town.

1. Paulo’s articles in the school paper are read **more** than any other articles.
2. Paulo’s reviews of local food shops usually have a **fun** theme.
3. Each theme is **more interesting** than the last one.
4. For example, last week’s **funny** theme was “Sneeze-Inducing Meals.”
5. He had eaten at a pizza parlor that used the **most** pepper he had ever tasted in pizza.
6. Unexpectedly, he began sneezing with loud sneezes that sounded like whistles.
7. The **more eagerly** Paulo ate, the more he sneezed like a train whistle.
8. The other patrons laughed quietly at first and then **less quietly**.
9. Between whistling sneezes, Paulo joined in the laughter **more enthusiastically** than anyone else.
10. Of the three pizza parlors he reviewed, this one received the **fewest** positive comments.

**Exercise B** Identify the degree of comparison of the underlined modifier by writing *P* for **positive** degree, *C* for **comparative** degree, or *S* for **superlative** degree.

**Example 1.** Aaron behaves more independently this year than last year.

11. This recipe is **simpler** than the other one because there are fewer steps.
12. Although I was **sorry** about breaking the window, I was more **sorry** about breaking the vase.
13. This television show is **more boring** than any others I have watched this weekend.
14. “All I ask,” said Coach Powell, “is that you give the **best** effort possible.”
15. George groaned, “This is the **worst** haircut I have ever had!”
Regular and Irregular Comparisons B

The three degrees of comparison of modifiers are the **positive**, the **comparative**, and the **superlative**.

Most modifiers form the comparative degree by adding –er and the superlative degree by adding –est. Some modifiers form the comparative degree by using *more* and the superlative degree by using *most*. The comparative and superlative degrees of some modifiers are irregular in form. To show decreasing comparisons, modifiers form the comparative degree by using *less* and the superlative degree by using *least*.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>POSITIVE</th>
<th>kind</th>
<th>orderly</th>
<th>bad</th>
<th>dangerous</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>COMPARATIVE</td>
<td>kinder</td>
<td>more orderly</td>
<td>worse</td>
<td>less dangerous</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SUPERLATIVE</td>
<td>kindest</td>
<td>most orderly</td>
<td>worst</td>
<td>least dangerous</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**EXERCISE A** Above the underlined modifier in each sentence, write D for decreasing comparison or I for increasing comparison.

**Example 1.** As the storm intensified, the small boat rocked more wildly.

1. The three children played less energetically as they grew tired.
2. That outfit looks good, but the other one looks better.
3. Of the four sales specials, this one will save us the most money.
4. I use my skateboard less often now that I ride my bike everywhere.
5. Sandra became happier after she discussed the misunderstanding with Billie.

**EXERCISE B** Above the parentheses in each sentence, write the form of the modifier given.

**Example 1.** Which is (increasing comparative of *easy*), chess or checkers?

6. “Please step back a little (increasing comparative of *far*),” said the photographer.
7. “One lamp shines (decreasing comparative of *brightly*) than all the others,” said Maggie.
8. My hair is (decreasing comparative of *curly*) when it is wet.
9. Albert was relieved that today’s lessons seemed (decreasing comparative of *difficult*) than yesterday’s.
10. Instead of feeling better after lunch, the child felt (increasing comparative of *bad*).
11. Which is the (increasing superlative of *fast*) runner, a horse or a zebra or a gnu?
12. As computer equipment becomes more common, it often becomes (decreasing comparative of *costly*).
13. Of all the science projects, Johnny’s is (increasing superlative of *fascinating*).
14. I hope the weather gets (increasing comparative of *good*) before the football game tomorrow.
15. Of all my friends’ handwriting, Jenny’s is the (decreasing superlative of *legible*).
Degrees of Comparison A

The three degrees of comparison of modifiers are the **positive**, the **comparative**, and the **superlative**.

1. **The positive degree** is used when at least one thing is being described.
2. **The comparative degree** is used when two things are being compared.
3. **The superlative degree** is used when three or more things are being compared.

**POSITIVE**  A boxer is a **big** dog. [one thing]

**COMPARATIVE**  A mastiff is **bigger** than a boxer. [two things]

**SUPERLATIVE**  A Great Dane is the **biggest** dog of the three. [three or more things]

**EXERCISE A**  Underline the correct form of the modifier in parentheses in each sentence.

**Example 1.** I think that having the flu is *(worse, worst)* than having a cold.

1. Of all the players, Pete kicks the ball *(more forcefully, most forcefully)*.
2. Please pet the cat *(more gently, most gently)* than that.
3. The Yukon River is *(longer, longest)* than the Rio Grande.
4. It rained *(hard, harder)* yesterday than it did today.
5. Of the six department stores in the mall, this one is the *(larger, largest)*.

**EXERCISE B**  Above the underlined modifier in each sentence, write 1, 2, or 3 or more to tell how many things are being described or compared. Then, identify the underlined modifier by writing P for positive degree, C for comparative degree, or S for superlative degree.

**Example 1.** Who is the tallest basketball player on the team?

3 or more—5

6. Which is heavier—a pound of feathers or a pound of nails?
7. Of the lion, tiger, and cheetah, the cheetah can run fastest.
8. Maura is the least qualified candidate who ever ran for president.
9. Michael dances more gracefully than I do.
10. This chemistry problem seems extremely difficult.
11. Of all my friends, Albert works most carefully.
12. Does Leigh live farther from the library than LaShawna?
13. Julia sings in the choir very often.
14. Which story in the collection do you like best?
15. Miriam is less familiar with using a globe than I.
Degrees of Comparison B

11c. The three degrees of comparison of modifiers are the **positive**, the **comparative**, and the **superlative**.

1. The **positive degree** is used when at least one thing is being described.
2. The **comparative degree** is used when two things are being compared.
3. The **superlative degree** is used when three or more things are being compared.

**POSITIVE**  Brian read his lines **convincingly** for the audition. [one thing]

**COMPARATIVE**  Oscar read his lines **more convincingly** than Brian. [two things]

**SUPERLATIVE**  Of all the actors, Ramiro read his lines **most convincingly**. [three or more things]

**Exercise A**  Underline the correct form of the modifier in parentheses in each sentence. Then, identify the underlined modifier by writing *P* for positive degree, *C* for comparative degree, or *S* for superlative degree.

**Example** 1. Are oranges **(higher, highest)** in vitamin C than broccoli is?

1. Which tastes **(good, better)** with frozen yogurt—fresh fruit or oatmeal crumble?
2. The jicama is a large **(white, whiter)** root that can be eaten raw or cooked.
3. Of these fruits—mango, papaya, and pineapple—I think pineapple is **(sweeter, sweetest)**.
4. The guava is a **(smallest, smaller)** fruit than the melon.
5. Of the four kinds of berries in the market, the blueberries are **(riper, ripest)**.

**Exercise B**  Above the underlined modifier in each sentence, write **1, 2, or 3 or more** to tell how many things are being described or compared. Then, identify the underlined modifier by writing *P* for positive degree, *C* for comparative degree, or *S* for superlative degree.

**Example** 1. I think the blue betta fighting fish is **prettier** than the goldfish.

6. The bite of the tarantula can be **deadly** to mice.
7. The blue whale is the **largest** animal ever to have lived on earth.
8. To me, a snake is **scarier** than a spider.
9. The bison population in North America was once **more numerous** than the population today.
10. The garter snake is **harmless**.
11. Warm regions are **better** habitats for scorpions than colder regions.
12. Over short distances, the cheetah is the **fastest** land animal of all.
13. Is a dog **more loyal** than a cat?
14. Of my three parrots, Mr. Chatty is the **most talkative**.
15. Which is **more** likely to be a good pet for children, a golden retriever or a Great Dane?
Degrees of Comparison C

11c. The three degrees of comparison of modifiers are the positive, the comparative, and the superlative.

1. The positive degree is used when at least one thing is being described.
2. The comparative degree is used when two things are being compared.
3. The superlative degree is used when three or more things are being compared.

**POSITIVE**
This curry sauce tastes spicy. [one thing]

**COMPARATIVE**
The salsa tastes less spicy than the jalapeño sauce. [two things]

**SUPERLATIVE**
Of the three sauces, the salsa tastes the least spicy. [three or more things]

**Exercise**
Underline the correct form of the modifier in parentheses in each sentence. Then, identify the underlined modifier by writing P for positive degree, C for comparative degree, or S for superlative degree.

**Example 1.** Of the two students, Lori worked the math problem (most quickly, more quickly).

1. Which of your three friends has the (earlier, earliest) curfew?
2. Of all the members in my writing group, I am (less interested, least interested) in poetry.
3. The toddler walked (aimlessly, more aimlessly) around the playground.
4. This new computer game is (less fun, least fun) than the game I already had.
5. What is the (more interesting, most interesting) book of all those on the list?
6. Grandpa’s computer store is open (later, latest) than his competitor’s.
7. Would the subway be (fastest, faster) than the bus?
8. When I cook chicken, I use (less, least) oil than Dad uses.
9. The kite flew merrily in a (brisk, brisker) summer breeze.
10. Selena is (more comfortable, most comfortable) speaking in public than her brother.
11. Don’t buy that potted plant—it looks the (least healthy, less healthy) of them all.
12. Listen to this joke—it’s the (funnier, funniest) one I’ve heard all week!
13. This abandoned house is (spooky, spookier).
14. We’ll watch this movie tonight since it is (shortest, shorter) than the other one.
15. Vic is the (most loyal, more loyal) friend I have known.
16. Every grocery store promises that its fish counter has the (freshest, fresher) fish in town.
17. My front yard has the (taller, tallest) trees on the block.
18. Which is (farther, farthest) away, the library or the park?
19. Jeanette is (more punctual, most punctual) than her sister Julia.
20. Wearing a hat is the (better, best) way to stay warm.
Exercise A
Underline the correct modifier in parentheses to complete each sentence.

Example 1. Do you know Sophie (good, well)?

1. The orchestra sounds (good, well) tonight.
2. Ruthie handles herself (good, well) in a crisis.
3. The Chang twins play the piano very (good, well).
4. You look (good, well) now that your cold is gone.
5. How (good, well) did you do on the spelling test?
6. Because she has the flu, she doesn’t feel (good, well) today.
7. The directions say to stir the ingredients until they are (good, well) blended.
8. Despite what Mike says, I think this is a (good, well) plan.
9. I have earned (good, well) grades for six weeks.
10. She speaks so quietly that I cannot hear her very (good, well).

Exercise B
Each sentence below uses either good or well. If good or well is used correctly, write C above it. If good or well is not used correctly, cross it out and write the correct word above it.

Example 1. I haven’t been feeling good all day.

well

11. You did a good job on this essay for history class.
12. If this plan doesn’t work good, we will try the backup plan.
14. I didn’t know you could dance so good!
15. Doesn’t the poem sound well?
Choosing Adjectives or Adverbs

**Exercise A**

Underline the correct modifier in parentheses to complete each sentence.

**Example 1.** Rodolfo felt *(sad, sadly)* about the tragedy.

1. Eduardo was *(quick, quickly)* in solving problems.
2. The team’s performance seemed *(weak, weakly)* in the final quarter.
3. This whole situation is *(confusingly, confusing)*.
4. The milk smelled *(bad, badly)*.
5. The actor felt *(happy, happily)* about getting the part in the play.

**Exercise B**

In each sentence below, if the underlined modifier is used correctly, write *C* above it. If the modifier is not used correctly, cross it out and write the correct word above it.

**Example 1.** In class, Jonah’s behavior seemed *(strange, strangely)*.

6. Lanelle feels badly about the misunderstanding.
7. That song sounds *greatly*.
8. Yesterday you seemed cheerful when I saw you.
10. All afternoon, Mario looked distracted.
12. Mailou grimaced because the soup tasted so salty.
13. The baby grew quickly.
14. During the movie, the kids looked curious at the old theater.
15. Please feel freely to look around the store.
16. The lecture at the auditorium was lengthily.
17. Is it me, or do you feel coldly also?
18. Rufina’s new hairstyle is curly.
19. The note Katy received from a secret admirer was unexpectedly.

**Examples**

I feel **bad** *(not badly)* about my mistake.

The homemade bread tastes **good** *(not well)*.
EXERCISE A  Underline the correct modifier in parentheses in each of the following sentences.

Example  1. The skies are (sunnier, more sunnier) today than yesterday.
1. I am (busier, more busier) this week than I was last week.
2. It’s the (most scariest, scariest) book I have ever read.
3. This salsa tastes (less spicy, less spicier) than the salsa I make.
4. He is (more smarter, smarter) than he thinks.
5. It is (easier, more easier) to jump than it is to dive.
6. This is the (most shortest, shortest) song on the album.
7. This dress is (bluer, more bluer) than the color I requested from the dressmaker.
8. This is the (most latest, latest) Chuck has ever been for practice.
9. At the dog show, Marcella’s dog performed (funnier, more funnier) tricks than my dog.
10. This is the (cutest, most cutest) mouse in the pet store.

EXERCISE B  Cross out any errors in the use of modifiers in the following sentences. Then, write the correct form of the modifier above each error.

Example  1. We fenced in the yard so it would be more safer for my younger brothers.
11. I have two brothers who are more younger than I.
12. Mick is the most friendliest little boy you will ever meet.
13. Mark, on the other hand, is more shyer than Mick.
14. Of all of us, Mark is the most quietest.
15. When Mick and Mark are together, however, they are both more louder than you would expect.
16. We recently moved into a house with a more larger yard than our previous house had.
17. Of all the houses we saw, this one was most best because of the large yard.
18. During the more warmer days this autumn, we will play ball in the backyard.
19. I am teaching Mick and Mark the most best way to catch a softball.
20. They are more curiouser, however, about the treehouse I am building than about softball tips.

Grammar, Usage, and Mechanics: Language Skills Practice
Double Negatives

**Exercise A** Underline the correct choice to complete each of the following sentences.

Example 1. I don’t know *(nothing, anything)* about engines.

1. No fish *(were, weren’t)* biting in the stream this morning.
2. Nobody *(was, wasn’t)* disappointed with the results of the fund-raiser.
3. The fable didn’t mean *(nothing, anything)* to him.
4. You *(can, can’t)* hardly find this type of pen in stores.
5. Don’t go *(nowhere, anywhere)* until I get back.
6. It *(was, wasn’t)* scarcely dark before the bats flew out of their cave.
7. On Mondays, Sheila *(can, can’t)* barely make it to school on time.
8. I can’t hear *(anything, nothing)* because of that hammering from the construction.
9. I promise I didn’t tell *(no one, anyone)* your secret.
10. Nate didn’t call, and he didn’t write *(neither, either)*.

**Exercise B** The following paragraph contains ten double negatives. Cross out each error and, if necessary, write a correction above it. Although sentences can be corrected in more than one way, you need to give only one correction.

Example. I can’t hardly wait to play the piano professionally.

Nobody never taught me how to play the piano, so I wasn’t hardly prepared for the surprise. At first, I played a few notes very softly. I didn’t want no one to hear me playing. When I didn’t feel shy no more, I played less softly. I still wasn’t taking no lessons. I didn’t go nowhere without thinking about the next time I could practice. I didn’t scarcely go out on the weekends when I could stay inside and practice. Then my grandmother asked me, “Wouldn’t you like to take no lessons?” I didn’t barely wait a second to shout “Yes!” I could scarcely believe it. I hadn’t never been so excited before.
for CHAPTER 11: USING MODIFIERS CORRECTLY  pages 275–276

Misplaced Prepositional Phrases

11h. Place modifying words, phrases, and clauses as close as possible to the words they modify.

Place a prepositional phrase used as an adjective or as an adverb near the word it modifies. Avoid placing a prepositional phrase so that it seems to modify either of two words.

MISPLACED  The dog belongs to that man with the black spots.
CLEAR  The dog with the black spots belongs to that man.
MISPLACED  We talked about the football game in the locker room.
CLEAR  In the locker room, we talked about the football game.
MISPLACED  We decided on Tuesday we would visit you.
CLEAR  On Tuesday, we decided we would visit you.
CLEAR  We decided we would visit you on Tuesday.

EXERCISE A  Underline the prepositional phrase in each sentence. Then, draw an arrow from the phrase to the word that the phrase modifies.

Example 1. I studied the fish in the aquarium.
1. The woman in the red car is Ms. Prasad, my principal.
2. I found your bracelet under the sofa.
3. With a map, we found our way home.
4. We used glue to repair the chair with the broken leg.
5. On Monday afternoon she told us that she had scored the game’s winning goal.

EXERCISE B  Each of the following sentences contains a misplaced prepositional phrase. Underline the prepositional phrase. Then, draw a caret (^) to show where the phrase should be placed.

Example 1. In the stew pot I salted the vegetables.
6. The parrot spoke three words to my mother in the brass cage.
7. We sat at the table and talked about our fishing trip in the kitchen.
8. In the game I scored two points at the high point.
9. I read about the lost puppy that was found in today’s newspaper.
10. The runner twisted her ankle with the blue T-shirt.
11. The rancher lassoed the steer in a cowboy hat.
12. I promised before the test on Friday I would help you with math.
13. The student with polka dots is painting his pottery.
14. In a ballerina costume Todd photographed the dancer.
15. I said during the break she should visit the nurse.
Misplaced and Dangling Participial Phrases

A participial phrase consists of a present participle or a past participle and its modifiers and complements. A participial phrase that is not placed near the noun or pronoun it modifies is called a misplaced modifier. A participial phrase that does not sensibly modify any word in the sentence is called a dangling modifier.

**Misplaced Modifier**
I saw a robin walking home.

**Correct**
Walking home, I saw a robin.

**Dangling Modifier**
Walking to school, the morning was pleasant.

**Correct**
Walking to school, I found the morning pleasant.

**Exercise A** Underline the misplaced modifier or dangling modifier in each sentence. Above the modifier, write M for misplaced or D for dangling.

Example 1. Hitting a home run, the crowd cheered.

1. I spoke softly to the horse sitting in the saddle.
2. Munching on popcorn, the movie was enjoyable.
3. Frosted with a fruit glaze, I couldn’t wait to eat the muffin.
4. Painted red, I noticed the new fire lanes.
5. Miguel saw a rabbit jogging in his new sneakers.

**Exercise B** Each of these sentences contains a misplaced or dangling modifier. On the lines provided, revise the sentences so that they are clear. You may need to add words so that the sentences make sense.

Example 1. Munching on carrot sticks, the lunch period went quickly. 

6. Modene did not hear the ringing telephone taking a shower.

7. The missing baseball card was found cleaning my closet.

8. Making the bed, my cat burrowed under the pillows.

9. Sitting in its nest, I saw a bluebird.

10. Running to catch the bus, a dog barked at me.
Misplaced Adjective Clauses

Exercise A
Underline the adjective clause in each of the following sentences. Then, draw an arrow from the clause to the noun or pronoun that the clause modifies.

Example 1. The person who called at midnight was my aunt.

1. The president whom I respect the most is Abraham Lincoln.
2. I would like to hike up a mountain that has a snow-covered peak.
3. The player who scores the most goals will be elected Most Valuable Player.
4. We drove to Springfield, which is about an hour away.
5. My best friend is Elbert, whose father was in the army with my father.

Exercise B
Each sentence below contains a misplaced adjective clause. Underline the adjective clause in each sentence. Then, draw a caret (^) where the clause should be placed in the sentence.

Example 1. The dog lives in the house that has the red collar.

6. I served the food to the athletes that had been made for lunch.
7. Mom chose the puppy as a gift for my little brother that has brown fur.
8. The actor gave me his autograph who starred in the film.
9. I put the camera in the closet that my uncle gave me.
10. My cousin gave me a parakeet who goes to college in Alabama.
11. The candles came from the corner store that I bought.
12. The people have arrived at the skating rink whom I invited to my skating party.
13. The strange thumping remained a mystery that I heard in the night.
14. The software crashed my computer system that I installed.
15. This poem is for your personal scrapbook, which I wrote myself.
Misplaced and Dangling Phrases and Clauses A

Exercise  Each of these sentences contains a misplaced modifier or a dangling modifier. On the lines provided, revise the sentences so that they are clear. You may need to add, delete, or rearrange words.

Example 1. Squinting into the sun, the dusty road seemed endless. **Squinting into the sun, I thought the dusty road seemed endless.**

1. Flipping through the yearbook, Jordan’s picture leaped out at me.

2. Understanding the problem, a solution suddenly became clear.

3. The room belongs to my brother with the blue walls.

4. Caught in the net, I examined the sandy starfish.

5. Ben carelessly left it lying on the bus, who borrowed my CD.

6. Painted with dyes made from berries, the archaeologist was fascinated with the pots.

7. Jan hid her dirty dishes when Alfredo unexpectedly visited behind the bookcase.

8. Here are the instructions for the baby sitter that I jotted down.

9. I promised the girl I would help her find her bird who wore a red dress.

10. The cat surprised Uncle Fred trotting by with feathers in his mouth.
Misplaced and Dangling Phrases and Clauses B

11h. Place modifying words, phrases, and clauses as close as possible to the words they modify.

1. The skater thanked the judges who won the competition. 

2. Cliff suggested after lunch we shoot some hoops. 

3. Boiling in hot water, Alberto stirred the rice. 

4. The dust won’t be visible to our guests under the rug. 

5. Covering more than three million square miles, the Sahara is in North Africa. 

6. I handed the basket to the lucky recipient filled with fruit, nuts, and a cheese log. 

7. The stale bread was eaten by birds that I tossed into the yard. 

8. I can’t reach the spices that I need for the recipe on the top shelf. 

9. Divided by an island, Niagara Falls breaks into two different waterfalls. 

10. I gave the stuffed animal to the cute toddler that I won at the carnival. 

Example 1. The pizza should be delivered to this address with anchovies. The pizza with anchovies should be delivered to this address.
for CHAPTER 11: USING MODIFIERS CORRECTLY

Review A: Comparative and Superlative Forms

**Exercise A**  Underline the correct form of the modifier in parentheses in each sentence.

*Example 1.* After eating the entire falafel sandwich, I didn’t feel *(good, well)*.

1. Trains can travel *(faster, more faster)* than horses.
2. I think swimming is *(excitinger, more exciting)* than baseball.
3. Hamid is the *(smarter, smartest)* boy that I know.
4. That was the *(better, best)* movie that we have ever seen.
5. I feel *(badder, worse)* than I did this morning.
6. Rats are *(larger, more large)* than mice.
7. Of all the trees in the forest, the pines are the *(more beautiful, most beautiful)*.
8. This book is the *(most interesting, more interesting)* of the two.
9. Hector felt *(bad, badly)*, so he went to see a doctor.
10. This is the *(best, goodest)* pasta salad that I’ve ever eaten.

**Exercise B**  On the lines provided, complete the following chart. For each modifier given, write the corresponding modifiers in the other degrees of comparison. Do not include forms showing decreasing comparison.

*Example 1.* thoughtfully  more thoughtfully  most thoughtfully

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Positive</th>
<th>Comparative</th>
<th>Superlative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>11.</td>
<td>near</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12.</td>
<td>many</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13.</td>
<td>more</td>
<td>more terrific</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14.</td>
<td>safe</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15.</td>
<td>more silently</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16.</td>
<td>bad</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17.</td>
<td>much</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18.</td>
<td>suddenly</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19.</td>
<td>most intelligent</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20.</td>
<td>far</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
EXERCISE A  Each of these sentences contains an error in the use of modifiers. Cross out each error, and write a correction above it.

Example 1. I couldn’t hardly fit the tiny ring on my finger.

1. Nobody doesn’t like to be late for school.
2. That’s the most silliest story I’ve ever heard.
3. Joanna works good with others.
4. I couldn’t hardly recognize Jorge in his costume.
5. The people who live in that house aren’t never home.
6. Of all the roads leading into the canyon, this one is the most steepest.
7. Toshi seems more bravely than Sid.
8. We didn’t have nothing to do.
9. I’ve never felt more sadly.
10. I couldn’t hardly move the heavy carton.

EXERCISE B  Correctly complete each of the following sentences with the correct modifier given in parentheses. Write the correct modifier on the line provided.

Example 1. (interesting, interestingly) Frogs are more interesting than most people realize.

11. (beautifully, beautiful) The pond where we saw the frogs looks ____________.
12. (good, well) Barry, who does ____________ in science class, told me that frogs lay eggs in water.
13. (younger, more younger) A tadpole is ____________ than a frog.
14. (good, well) The tadpole’s tail can propel it ____________.
15. (not hardly, not) The tiny tadpole does ____________ look like the frog it will become.
EXERCISE A  Underline the misplaced prepositional phrase in each sentence. Then, draw a caret (^) to show where the phrase should appear in the sentence.

Example 1. I saw a lion drinking water through the telescope.

1. Elena called while you were taking a shower from Texas.

2. My uncle made a table for my aunt with carved legs.

3. In the soup, Miriam ate all the noodles.

4. In a hurry, the drive seemed longer than usual to the reporter.

5. Over the buildings, Marcel and I saw a blimp flying by.

6. Vernon gave a fish to his friend with purple fins.

7. He wrote her name on the envelope with the fountain pen.

8. Stormy wants the bike for her birthday in the store window.

9. In the frying pan Elia scrambled some eggs.

10. In my report, I wrote about hurricanes for my science class.

EXERCISE B  Each sentence below contains a misplaced or dangling modifier. Rewrite the sentences to make them clear and correct. Delete, add, and rearrange words as necessary.

Example 1. Lapping at the shore, the sound was peaceful.  Lapping at the shore, the waves made a peaceful sound.

11. The house is about a mile from Dunbar High School that my parents want to buy.

12. My pen pal wants a dog who lives in Kansas.

13. That dog needs a bath covered with dirt.

14. Tired and sleepy, the bed seemed very comfortable.

15. The woman owns a horse who is Angelo’s teacher.
EXERCISE A  Underline the misplaced phrase or clause in each sentence. Then, draw a caret (\^) to show where the phrase or clause should appear in the sentence.

Example 1. Mr. Gallego announced on Monday that class was canceled.
1. Overgrown and full of weeds, I found the garden.
2. I was interrupted by a visitor eating my lunch.
3. Henry was reading a book about the grizzly bear relaxing in his armchair.
4. Interrupting the movie, the audience began to glare at the noisy children.
5. Recorded on the surveillance tape, the inspector searched for a suspect.
6. Stuck in a scrapbook, my uncle has several old photographs.
7. We saw the Grand Canyon flying home.
8. Chopped into small pieces, Ahmad put onions in the stew.
9. Give the sandwich to your friend that I toasted.
10. The artist painted a picture of lions in his studio.

EXERCISE B  Each sentence contains an error in the use of modifiers. Rewrite each sentence so that it is clear and correct.

Example 1. Wow! That was the most easiest exam I have ever taken! Wow! That was the easiest exam I have ever taken!
11. I didn’t never see that wall in the rearview mirror.
12. Tommy scored the harder goal of the entire game.
13. The telephone seemed more loudly than a siren.
14. I turned around quickly, but didn’t see no fire engine.
15. Shaped like a camel’s head, Mi Kyung saw a huge boulder.
EXERCISE  Underline the word or word group that is correct according to formal, standard usage.

Example 1. When the water balloon hit the ground, it (busted, burst).

1. The wallpaper looked (alright, all right) to him.
2. We need to get Crissy (all ready, already) by the time Dad gets home with the camping gear.
3. Mom said we (can't scarcely, can scarcely) afford the private music lessons.
4. Will you (bring, take) me a soda when you come back from the kitchen?
5. Adeola didn’t skate (bad, badly) the first time she was on ice skates.
6. I made a two-dimensional map for (a, an) history project.
7. We have (fewer, less) sopranos in the chorus than we did last year.
8. Donald told Professor Trapp that we (ain’t, aren’t) finished with the assignment yet.
9. Those crickets are (everywheres, everywhere)!
10. Larry does not eat (a lot, alot) of red meat.
11. Tommy explained the difference (among, between) adjectives, adverbs, and verbs.
12. Jay has (less, fewer) money than Amy does today, so she will buy the popcorn for the movie.
13. The three friends all agreed that Stan’s plan for the outing was (well, good).
14. Carmen gladly (accepted, excepted) the warm sweater from her father.
15. Dad was a few minutes late because he could not figure out where his car keys (were at, were).
16. When you visit Grandmother, please (bring, take) this package to her.
17. The consensus (between, among) the faculty was that the school should dismiss early.
18. After the water pipe (busted, burst), water flooded the room.
19. Rosa bragged that she (could of, could have) made the basketball team if she had tried out.
20. Jean (hadn’t ought to, shouldn’t) wear those hard-soled shoes on the basketball court.
**Exercise A** Underline the word or word group that is correct according to formal, standard usage.

**Example 1.** I have always liked *(these kinds, these kind)* of outdoor sports.

1. The kitten has been chasing *(it’s, its)* tail, and now the poor thing is dizzy.
2. The members of the drama club produced the play *(themselves, themselves)*.
3. *(Why do, How come)* the experiments need to be conducted in a vacuum?
4. *(This types, This type)* of fruit has seeds in the center.
5. This morning Dad cut *(hisself, himself)* when he was shaving.

**Exercise B** Each of the following sentences has an error in formal, standard usage. Cross out the error and write the correct usage above it.

**Example 1.** *It’s* been over five hundred years since Columbus first came to America.

6. Those *type of hats and coats* were popular during the late 1900s.
7. Abraham Lincoln dedicated *hisself* to a career in law and politics.
8. The members of the Iroquois Confederacy *they* were North American Indians who lived in an area of New York state.
9. How come those bears hibernate?
10. In 1959, Alaska took *it’s* place as the forty-ninth state of the United States.
11. The English Puritans who immigrated to North America in 1620 sought to gain more religious freedom for *themselves*.
12. The Smithsonian Institution engages in these sort of activities: research, publication, and preservation.
13. Samuel Morse *he* is given credit for creating the electric telegraph and its code.
14. I enjoy reading this magazine because it’s both informative and fascinating.
15. Betsy Ross *she* is credited with making the first American stars and stripes flag.
Glossary of Usage C

Review the glossary entries on page 294 of your textbook for information on the correct usage of the following words or phrases:

kind of, sort of  
leave, let  
like, as, as though

EXERCISE A  Underline the word or word group that is correct according to formal, standard usage.

Example 1. I tried to straighten the garage, but it is still (kind of, somewhat) messy.

1. The baby is (kind of, rather) cranky today because she hasn’t had a nap.
2. My skating instructor can (teach, learn) me how to skate backward on one foot.
3. I’d like to learn how to use a calculator (like, as) my math teacher does.
4. In cold weather, we all become (sort of, rather) irritable if we stay inside for several days.
5. (Leave, Let) me do the dishes, and you go out with your friends.
6. If you practice (like, as) we do, you’ll learn to dance in no time.
7. When we looked out the window, we saw that the sky was (kind of, somewhat) overcast.
8. At the camp I’m attending, the recreation teacher will (teach, learn) us to water-ski.
9. You look (as though, like) you’ve seen a ghost.
10. (Let, Leave) the parcel on the stoop.

EXERCISE B  Some of the following sentences have an error in formal, standard usage. Cross out each error and write the correct usage above it. If a sentence has no error, write C at the end of the sentence.

Example 1. At their birthday party, the twins felt like they were princesses.

11. Jaime is kind of scared of dogs, so we keep Buster in his kennel when Jaime visits.
12. My sister will learn me how to do a back flip at the pool this afternoon.
13. Barbara asked if I would let her borrow my regulation basketball.
14. Written by Betsy Byars, The Burning Questions of Bingo Brown looks like it will be fun to read.
15. Carol is sort of shy around people she doesn’t know.
16. My instructor said we would all learn how to dance the two-step.
17. Those trumpet players look like they have been practicing all day.
18. Leave her stay home if she doesn’t want to go shopping.
19. This shoe looks like a size eight.
20. Frank told me that he would learn me how to eat with chopsticks.
EXERCISE A  Underline the word or word group that is correct according to formal, standard usage.

Example 1. Bettina watched the cardinals and blue jays that were (outside of, outside) the window.
1. Bettina said she would (try and, try to) build a bird feeder for our patio.
2. When birds are nearby, (their, there, they’re) always visiting a neighbor’s bird feeder.
3. By leaning over the patio railing, I can see the birds (somewhat, some).
4. It would be (real, really) nice, however, if they were right outside our own window.
5. She said that if we set out our own bird feeder, (than, then) birds would come to our patio.
6. Bettina decided to place a feeder over (their, there, they’re) by the potted ivy.
7. Do you think (those, them) birds will be drawn to the seeds and nuts?
8. (This, This here) chair will have to be moved to allow space for the feeder.
9. We eventually placed the chair (inside, inside of) the apartment next to the window.
10. We are delighted now because more birds visit our patio (than, then) we ever expected.

EXERCISE B  Some of the following sentences have an error in formal, standard usage. Cross out each error and write the correct usage above it. If a sentence has no error, write C at the end of the sentence.

Example 1. I noticed an interesting picture, and than I read the article beside it.
11. The article said that the secretary bird is real unusual.
12. Protruding behind the secretary bird’s head are feathers that look some like quill pens.
13. Them ink pens are made of feather quills.
14. Secretary birds run in a zigzag fashion after there prey.
15. Their predators of snakes.
16. The bird in that there picture used its foot to attack the snake.
17. Secretary birds can beat a snake with their wings.
18. Them birds are found in Africa.
19. They’re habitat is in the part of the continent that is south of the Sahara.
20. This here bird is really tall; it grows to four feet in height!
Glossary of Usage E

Review the glossary entries on pages 300–301 of your textbook for information on the correct usage of the following words or phrases:

- use to, used to
- way, ways
- when, where
- who, which, that
- without, unless
- your, you’re

**Exercise A** Underline the word or word group that is correct according to formal, standard usage.

**Example 1.** Kano (use to, used to) take ballet classes, but now she prefers gymnastics.

1. Saint Bernards, (which, who) are very large dogs, can be trained to rescue people.
2. Never cross the street (unless, without) you look both ways first.
3. When I was nine or ten, I (use to, used to) play outside in the rain.
4. Carlos traveled a long (way, ways) to get to this country.
5. A square dance is (when you dance, a dance) with four couples grouped in a square.
6. Lorena will be part of (your, you’re) writing group in English class.
7. (Whose, Who’s) car is parked in your driveway?
8. A simile is (a comparison that, when a comparison) uses like or as.
9. JoAnne is the one (which, who) showed me how to make candles.
10. It’s a long (way, ways) from the school to my house.

**Exercise B** Some of the following sentences have an error in formal, standard usage. Cross out the error and write the correct usage above it. If a sentence has no error, write C at the end of the sentence.

**Example 1.** Tooling leather is when you create designs on leather with special tools.

11. The produce market is only a short ways from my house.
12. A pair of stone lions use to stand outside this library.
13. I can’t stay overnight at your house without I get my mother’s permission.
14. Watercolor painting is when you use water-based paint on paper or fabric.
15. Clarissa can run a long ways without getting tired.
16. These are the hyenas who need to be relocated.
17. There’s nothing better than an unexpected smile when your spirits are low.
18. I saw on the bulletin board where we will get a half-day holiday on Friday.
20. Ms. Roth is the person which schedules the yearbook photos.
EXERCISE A Underline the word or word group that is correct according to formal, standard usage.

Example 1. Harry Houdini was an entertainer (which, who) performed magic tricks.
1. For a few days, the student could not (accept, except) being cut from the soccer team.
2. Last winter, I built (them, those) birdhouses.
3. There are (less, fewer) people in the cafe now than there were an hour ago.
4. We were (already, all ready) sitting on the train when Corinne raced up to the ticket counter.
5. Ira explained that you cannot travel outside the country (unless, without) you have a passport.
6. Francine and Kurt play (alot, a lot) of miniature golf.
7. When Maryam tries to dress (like, as) her older sister does, she looks a little silly.
8. José is trying to teach (you’re, your) sister Gloria to swim.
9. The squid that I bought yesterday is (kind of, somewhat) tough, so I will pound it with a meat tenderizer before I cook it.
10. Can you tell whether that dog has a collar around (its, it’s) neck?

EXERCISE B Some of the following sentences have an error in formal, standard usage. Cross out each error and write the correct usage above it. If a sentence has no error, write C at the end of the sentence.

Example 1. The award was a unexpected honor for Sergeant Colmes.
11. When you go home today, please bring that book with you.
12. Although the gumbo is cold, it tastes alright.
13. The violin is one instrument that sounds really badly until you know how to play it.
14. There are less patches of snow on the mountain this year than there were last year.
15. If you have already painted a watercolor, why don’t you try oil painting for your next project?
16. Gazing through the binoculars, Ted asked where the island was at.
17. Helen taught me how to write a anagram.
18. Hana’s project didn’t turn out exactly like she thought it would.
19. Although we were nervous, we should of knocked on the door of the senator’s office.
20. You hadn’t ought to try to walk until your sprained ankle is better.
EXERCISE A Underline the word or word group that is correct according to formal, standard usage.

Example 1. Please come to my desk and (bring, take) your report with you.
1. The queen decided that she would never (accept, except) any man’s offer of marriage.
2. The milk smelled (bad, badly), so we had to throw it away.
3. If you take (less, fewer) money to the store, maybe you’ll keep more in the bank.
4. I don’t know (how come, why) the lawn sprinklers won’t work.
5. I’d like to go to Niyatee’s house now—Stacey and Maddie are already (their, there, they’re).
6. Skimming is (when you read, reading) quickly to get the general idea of a piece of writing.
7. Kendra and Alex walked a long (way, ways) to get to school from their parents’ farm.
8. Most of the speeches were interesting, but a few were (kind of, rather) boring.
9. Before the car was invented, people (use to, used to) travel by horse and carriage.
10. Dina read in the article (that, where) the mayor has decided to run for a seat in the senate.

EXERCISE B Some of the following sentences have an error in formal, standard usage. Cross out each error and write the correct usage above it. If a sentence has no error, write C at the end of the sentence.

Example 1. All the foliage except the pine needles was gone from our trees by December.
11. The sheep pressed theirselves together against the cold.
12. The talented actress cried like her heart would break—on cue.
13. I looked everywheres for the key but couldn’t find it.
14. Can you believe that there cat is two years old?
15. Susan didn’t feel good this morning.
16. A snake ain’t the kind of pet that I want.
17. If you teach me how to knit, I will show you how to crochet.
18. In the ballet that our teacher planned, some of the dancers move like fish move in water.
19. I can’t hardly find a ripe peach among all these green ones.
20. Janet wants to try and play the song in a minor key.
**Exercise** Underline the word or word group that is correct according to formal, standard usage.

**Example** 1. I decided to *(let, leave)* her borrow my paints.

1. The cat is licking *(its, it’s)* paw because it has a splinter.
2. The figure skater was *(real, very)* disappointed with her performance in the final round.
3. Hold your head high *(as, like)* a swan does, and your back will be straight.
4. I enjoy playing volleyball *(some, somewhat)*.
5. Helen’s glass fell *(off, off of)* the counter.
6. Jana’s watch *(busted, broke)* when she accidentally stepped on it.
7. I don’t *(except, accept)* criticism very well, but I do listen when someone is praising me!
8. To me, blue cheese tastes *(bad, badly)*, but Bobby really likes it.
9. Please put *(their, there)* art projects on the table.
10. Kara’s kindergarten teacher reported that the child plays *(well, good)* with others.
11. Whatever is making that noise has to be *(somewhere, somewheres)* around here.
12. I can tell the cake is done because *(its, it’s)* top springs back when I press it.
13. I decided to *(let, leave)* my sister borrow my green sweater.
14. Marge is the person *(who’s, whose)* horse was found wandering downtown.
15. I *(use to, used to)* be clumsy at all sports, but now I’m fairly good at baseball.
16. Everybody except him was shorter *(then, than)* six feet.
17. A marathon covers a little over twenty-six miles; that is a long *(way, ways)* to run.
18. Never play in a pile of leaves *(without, unless)* the leaves are off the street.
19. Mrs. Evans, *(which, who)* is running for mayor, visited our class yesterday.
20. A patent is *(when you have a right to, a right to)* an invention.
First Words and I

13a. Capitalize the first word in every sentence.

13b. Capitalize the first word in both the salutation and the closing of a letter.

13c. Capitalize the pronoun I.

EXAMPLES

The picture that I am painting is almost finished.

She said, “Please help me plan the costumes for the school play.”

Yours truly

EXERCISE A  In the following sentences, circle each incorrectly used lowercase letter.

Example 1. Will it sound too formal if I begin with the salutation “Dear Sir”?

1. the letter began, “dear friends of our fair city.”

2. Helen asked, “may I borrow that book when you’re finished?”

3. picking up a murder mystery, I wondered if Ms. Jay would approve it for my book report.

4. Luis wrote, “dear Jim Arnosky, I was fascinated by your recently published book.”

5. my teacher asked me to write a poem beginning with the line “roses are red; violets are blue.”

6. Wondering who the guests would be, I asked, “whom did you invite to our dinner party?”

7. When I saw the latest bestseller, I eagerly grabbed it.

8. Tom began reciting his poem: “falling, spinning, whirling—the dream had just begun.”

9. During lunch, Robin jotted a letter to Amy and signed it, “your friend, Robin.”

10. Christine raised her hand and asked, “may I read my short story to the class?”

EXERCISE B  In the following letter, underline each word that incorrectly begins with a lowercase letter.

Example  Mr. Jiménez said to the class, “write a letter to the author of this book.”

dear Louis Sachar,

we read your novel Holes in class, and I am writing to say I loved this book! when Mr. Jiménez said, “in this story, Stanley Yelnats is mistakenly sent to a juvenile detention camp,” I thought, “maybe I’ll skip this one.” When we started reading, however, I couldn’t wait to finish. the mysterious holes the boys had to dig kept me in suspense. keep up the fantastic work!

sincerely,

Leo Bellman
Proper Nouns A

13d(1). Capitalize the names of persons and animals.

**PROPER NOUNS**
- Denzel Washington
- Lassie
- Alexander the Great

**COMMON NOUNS**
- actor
- dog
- ruler

**EXERCISE A** In the following sentences, circle each incorrectly used lowercase letter.

**Example 1.** Let's meet at touch of spice, the restaurant near my house.

1. I just got the new CD by carrie underwood.
2. My favorite rabbit is peter cottontail.
3. Justine took her cat smokey to the vet.
4. Did you hear michael feldman on the radio this weekend?
5. My dentist, Dr. larry lane, always gives me free dental floss.
6. Tracy enjoys taking her dog bandit to the park.
7. Our neighbors, the garzas, are hosting the block party this year.
8. Did you read this biography of catherine the great?
9. One of my favorite authors is J.r.r. Tolkien.
10. Why did you name your parrot khan?

**EXERCISE B** Write proper nouns that correspond to each of the following common nouns.

**Example 1.** dog _______ Fido

11. actor
12. president
13. teacher
14. parent
15. cat
16. scientist
17. athlete
18. brother
19. horse
20. student
for CHAPTER 13: CAPITAL LETTERS pages 309–310

Proper Nouns B

13d(2). Capitalize geographical names.

EXAMPLES New Mexico, Ohio River, the West, the United States of America, Mount Rainier, state, river, west of town, nation, mountain

EXERCISE A On the lines provided, write a geographical name for each of the following common nouns.

Example 1. region ____________ the Southwest
1. continent __________________________
2. country ___________________________
3. city ______________________________
4. state ______________________________
5. island ______________________________
6. body of water _________________________
7. street _______________________________
8. park ________________________________
9. mountain __________________________
10. region ______________________________

EXERCISE B In the following sentences, circle each incorrectly used lowercase letter.

Example 1. My family is going to Big Bend National Park in Texas.
11. There is a rocky island in the Atlantic called St. Helena.
13. Thomas is drawing a map of Africa and has marked the location of the equator.
14. Ships use the Panama Canal to pass between the Caribbean Sea and the Pacific Ocean.
15. Although you may think Lake Charles is just a lake, it is also a city in Louisiana.
16. I spoke with a woman from Laos, which is a country between Vietnam and Thailand.
17. Sanya’s class toured the museum located at 249 Dixon Parkway.
18. The island of Puerto Rico, which is in the West Indies, covers nearly 3,500 square miles.
19. Located in two states, Death Valley contains the lowest point in the Western Hemisphere.
20. Kay enjoys spending time in her home on Fifty-Third St. in Minneapolis.
Proper Nouns C

13d(3). Capitalize names of organizations, teams, institutions, and government bodies.

**EXAMPLES**  Westwood Ballet Center, Houston Comets, University of California at Los Angeles, the House of Representatives

**EXERCISE A**  In the following sentences, circle each incorrectly used lowercase letter.

**Example 1.** Doesn’t your sister go to California Institute of Technology?
1. Brandon is helping to coach the broncos, which is a little league team.
2. In 1947, the Central intelligence agency was founded to coordinate the intelligence activities of government groups.
3. Margaret Thatcher was elected to the British parliament in 1959.
4. Has Julian done his research for the oral report on United Way?
5. The buffalo bills were runners-up in the Super Bowl four years in a row, from 1991 to 1994.
6. The United States congress was established in 1789.
7. When Paula turns fourteen, she plans to volunteer at Marshall memorial hospital.
8. Normally we use the school library, but today we’re going to the Sherman public Library.
9. The United States senate is composed of two senators from each state.
10. Did you hear the results of the vote in Durant city council today?

**EXERCISE B**  The following sentences contain errors in capitalization. Circle each incorrectly used lowercase letter.

**Example [1]**  Neil Armstrong taught aerospace engineering at the University of Cincinnati from 1971 to 1979.

[11] The national aeronautics and space administration was formed in 1958. [12] Eleven years later, nasa had landed the first people on the moon. [13] Neil Armstrong, who studied aeronautical engineering at Purdue University, was the astronaut who first stepped onto the moon. [14] In Cape Canaveral, Florida, space flights for nasa are launched from the John F. Kennedy space center. [15] Space flights with crews are controlled from the Lyndon B. Johnson space center in Houston, Texas.
Proper Nouns D

13d(4). Capitalize the names of historical events and periods, special events, calendar items, and holidays.

EXAMPLES the Renaissance, the Autumn Festival, Friday, April Fools' Day

13d(4). Capitalize the names of nationalities, races, and peoples.

EXAMPLES a Brazilian, Pakistani, Hebrews, the Hopi

EXERCISE In the following sentences, circle each incorrectly used lowercase letter.

Example 1. My goal is to speak the language like a native Italian.

1. The bedouins are nomadic arabs in Arabia, Syria, and North Africa.
2. The class’s thanksgiving party is this friday at noon.
3. It has been over half a century since world war II ended.
4. Last saturday I met a jamaican who was here to tour a nearby college.
5. Marcos and his horse will lead the tyler fourth of july parade.
6. Why don’t we get together to watch the super bowl?
7. My friend Mark Nguyen is a third-generation asian american.
8. Horace and Tamara both have birthdays in february, but mine is in august.
9. In the 1500s, a religious movement called the reformation led to Protestantism.
10. Mr. Paik is teaching us some interesting facts about the industrial revolution.
11. What does the groundhog’s shadow mean on groundhog day?
12. Many descendants of the maya live in Mexico and Guatemala.
13. The lead role in the movie called for an african american of around twenty years of age.
14. The U.S. civil war is also called the war between the states.
15. The war of 1812, which lasted from 1812 to 1815, was between the americans and the british.
16. Everyone is looking forward to the next outdoor jazz concert, called blues on the green.
17. The spring flight of fancy is a dance held every spring at my school.
18. Courtney enjoyed meeting the australian who spoke at her school.
19. “Are you going to watch the olympics?” asked Lucas.
20. Were the dark ages in Europe a time of poverty, lack of knowledge, and cultural decline?
Proper Nouns E

**13d(6).** Capitalize the names of businesses and the brand names of business products.

**EXAMPLES** Aardvark Ant Control, Best Buy, Hewlett-Packard DeskJet 500

**13d(6).** Capitalize the names of ships, trains, aircraft, and spacecraft.

**EXAMPLES** USS Minnow, Orient Express, Blue Trickster, Endeavour

**EXERCISE A** In the following sentences, circle each incorrectly used lowercase letter.

**Example 1.** For their fiftieth anniversary, my grandparents took a cruise on the silver mermaid.
1. I have shopped for clothes from the gap on the store’s Web site.
2. My homeroom teacher has a coffee cup from dunkin’ donuts on her desk.
3. Aaron and his friends met at taco hut before the basketball game.
4. The steamship great britain, which sailed in the 1840s, was driven by propellers.
5. Have you seen that television series about the spacecraft voyager?
6. My sister has several gund stuffed bears.
7. Should we get the xerox copier or the ricoh aficio 200, which also works as a printer?
8. For Tina’s birthday party, her grandmother threw a surprise party at baskin-robbins.
9. Charles Lindbergh made the first solo nonstop flight from New York to Paris in the spirit of st. louis.
10. Casey was pleased about his job as a teller at bank of north america.

**EXERCISE B** In the following paragraph, circle each incorrectly used lowercase letter.

**Example [1]** The advertisement featured the new nike air garnett III shoes.

[11] Each week my mailbox overflows with circulars advertising barbies and magnavox boom-boxes at target, hewlett-packard fax machines at office depot, and cruises on ships such as the royal princess. [12] Once, I received a brochure for a railway tour on the midwestern express. [13] Another time I received a voucher to fly on the President’s private airplane, air force one, but that was a joke concocted by my friend Charlie. [14] The Sunday paper is stuffed with ads for macintosh computers and minute maid orange juice. [15] If I bought all the stuff advertised by j. c. penney and the other stores, I would have to fly to outer space on columbia to find the space to store it all!
**Proper Nouns**

**F**

13d(8). Capitalize the names of buildings and other structures.

**EXAMPLES** White House, Tower of London, Great Wall of China

Do not capitalize such words as hotel, theater, or high school unless they are part of the name of a particular building or institution.

13d(9). Capitalize the names of monuments, memorials, and awards.

**EXAMPLES** Washington Monument, Alex Haley Memorial Statue, Purple Heart

**EXERCISE** In the following sentences, circle each incorrectly used lowercase letter.

Example 1. Daniel was surprised to receive the most valuable player award.

1. The mayor’s office is located downtown in city hall.
2. The gateway arch in St. Louis, Missouri, rises 630 feet high.
3. We do our holiday shopping at the galleria mall.
4. A distinctive structure in San Francisco is the golden gate bridge.
5. The leaning tower of pisa, a bell tower in Italy, leans ten degrees off center.
6. The frederick douglass national historic site honors the famous African American leader.
7. The colossus of rhodes was one of the Seven Wonders of the World.
8. Jennifer and Matt’s wedding reception will be held at the plaza hotel.
9. On our way home, we passed shepton middle school.
11. We have tickets to a performance at the metropolitan opera house.
12. During our visit to London, we went to see big ben, a famous clock.
13. Clara studied the photograph of mount rushmore national memorial closely.
14. The volleyball game will take place in the harriet johnson gymnasium.
15. My uncle, who is a Vietnam veteran, visited the vietnam veterans memorial yesterday.
16. English monarchs are crowned in westminster abbey.
17. My father’s office is on the tenth floor of georgetown towers.
18. Someone with a sense of humor named the bridge near my house rickety bridge.
19. David will play in a piano recital to be held at the denver civic center.
20. In the seventh-grade talent show, Vivica won an award called the sensational sevens.
Proper Nouns G

13d(10). Capitalize the names of religions and their followers, holy days and celebrations, sacred writings, and specific deities.

EXAMPLES  Islam, Muslims, Hanukkah, Talmud, Buddha

13d(11). Capitalize the names of planets, stars, constellations, and other heavenly bodies.

EXAMPLES  Orion, Neptune, North Star, Big Dipper

EXERCISE A  In the following passage, circle each incorrectly used lowercase letter.

Example 1. A follower of Islam is called a Muslim.

1. Many religions, including Christianity, Judaism, Buddhism, and others, stress the importance of moral integrity in one’s conduct.
2. For example, Christians follow the teachings of Jesus Christ, which are recorded in the Holy Bible.
3. Guided by the Hebrew Bible and the Torah, Jews strive to act with mercy and justice.
4. Students of the Buddha (Buddhists) as well as Hindus are taught dharma, which is right conduct, or duty.
5. Followers of a particular religion join together to celebrate events such as Easter, Lent, Advent, Passover, or other holy days that remind them of their religious heritage.

EXERCISE B  In the following sentences, circle each incorrectly used lowercase letter.

Example 1. I can always find the constellation Andromeda in the night sky.

6. The planet nearest the sun is Mercury.
7. On a cloudless night, I studied Pisces, a constellation in the north sky.
8. The brightest star in the constellation Centaurus is Alpha Centauri.
9. That planet with a thin, icy ring system around its equator is Saturn.
10. “First, locate the constellation Gemini,” said Professor Hermann.
11. “Then, look for the brightest star in Gemini, which is Pollux,” he said.
12. The Milky Way is a galaxy formed of stars and interstellar gas.
13. Looking up at the northern Cross, Kendra began planning an oil painting of the five stars.
14. The largest planet of the solar system carries the same name as the Roman god of thunder: Jupiter.
15. “Is that a bright star, or is that Venus?” asked Michelle as she gazed upward.
**Proper Adjectives and Course Names**

13e. Capitalize proper adjectives.

A *proper adjective* is formed from a proper noun.

**Proper Nouns**  
China, William Shakespeare, the Confederacy

**Proper Adjectives**  
a Chinese scientist, a Shakespearean play, a Confederate soldier

13f. Do not capitalize the names of school subjects, except course names followed by numerals and names of language classes.

**Course Names**  
art, French, History II

**EXERCISE A** In the following sentences, circle each incorrectly used lowercase letter.

**Example 1.** When you’re at the bookstore, pick up an Italian newspaper and a French magazine.

1. My mother bought an african lamp made of teakwood for my aunt.
2. My japanese friend took latin american history and enjoyed it.
3. Yesterday, a famous guest came to visit our music 102 class.
4. My british pen pal, Sarah, sent me an irish friendship ring.
5. I told my mother that the best way for me to practice speaking spanish is to talk with my argentinian friend every night.
6. The spanish explorers sailed up the florida coast.
7. According to the korean exchange student, english class is very different in this country.
8. Isak Dinesen was a danish author who wrote a story about a european girl named Babette.
9. When I go to college, I plan to take biology 101 and swimming I, II, and III.
10. Everyone who is in my english class is also in my math 202 class.

**EXERCISE B** In the following sentences, circle each incorrectly used capital or lowercase letter.

**Example 1.** I have Study Hall between social studies and French.

11. As an interior decorator, Molly enjoys adding peruvian Rugs to a room’s decor.
12. When Roberto left Science class, he went to his locker to pick up a book for English class.
13. In History class, we saw pictures of victorian children.
14. We brought back some beautiful Mexican Pottery from our vacation in Mexico.
15. Next year I hope to enroll in advanced computer programming IV.
First Words, I, and Proper Nouns and Adjectives A

Review Rules 13a–13f for information on the correct capitalization of first words, the pronoun I, proper nouns, and proper adjectives.

**EXERCISE A** Identify each underlined word or word group by writing above it CN for common noun, PN for proper noun, or PA for proper adjective. Then, rewrite any underlined word that should be capitalized but is not.

**Example 1.** American history is covered in history I.

1. The Marquis de Lafayette was a French soldier and diplomat.
2. He came to America in 1777 to join the staff of George Washington.
3. He helped the American colonists in their struggle for independence.
4. He persuaded King Louis XVI to send soldiers and ships to help, too.
5. Lafayette fought in many battles of the American Revolution.

**EXERCISE B** In the following sentences, circle each incorrectly used lowercase letter.

**Example 1.** Millie, a girl who sits next to me in English class, wrote a funny poem that begins, “The banana peel came out of nowhere.”

7. It takes several days to drive from Utah to Pennsylvania.
8. After dinner, my friend Arlis and I swam in the Gulf of Mexico.
9. During my vacation last summer, I took a picture of a statue of Dr. Martin Luther King, Jr., in Montgomery, Alabama.
10. Pola said, “This is such a pretty city. Let’s stop for the night here.”
11. Our book club always meets on the second Wednesday of the month.
12. As I walked through the front door, Dad asked, “Would you rather have vegetable spaghetti or baked fish for dinner?”
13. Hilda said, “Let’s try that new restaurant that serves Mediterranean food.”
14. Ms. Williams said, “Your assignment is to write a poem using the line ‘Some people don’t understand.’”
15. When I attend Savannah College of Art and Design after high school graduation, I’m going to study Roman architecture.
First Words, I, and Proper Nouns and Adjectives B

Review Rules 13a–13f for information on the correct capitalization of first words, the pronoun I, proper nouns, and proper adjectives.

Exercise A  Identify each underlined word by writing above it CN for common noun, PN for proper noun, or PA for proper adjective. Then, rewrite any underlined word that should be capitalized but is not.

Example 1. “This is a composition by Mozart,” Ms. Davis told us.

1. Wolfgang Amadeus Mozart was born in Salzburg, Austria.
2. By the age of four, Mozart had already shown great musical genius.
3. He toured the European courts, performing on the violin and organ.
4. This Austrian became one of the world’s greatest composers.
5. Mozart wrote many operas, including The Marriage of Figaro and The Magic Flute.

Exercise B  The following paragraph contains errors in capitalization. Circle each word that is incorrectly capitalized or lowercased.

Example ([1] Most people are unaware of how many American tourist attractions exist.

[6] Sherry and I took a trip one weekend. [7] On Friday, we arrived in Atlanta, Georgia, where we stopped for lunch at a place called Priscilla’s Pantry. [8] Then, we went to Burlington, North Carolina. [9] Sherry wanted to see the monument to Charles Drew, the famous doctor. [10] I decided that I would learn more about Dr. Drew once we got back home. [11] That night, we stayed in a hotel on the Roanoke River. [12] Then, on Saturday, we went to Gettysburg, Pennsylvania. [13] I learned that Gettysburg was founded by James Gettys. [14] The Battle of Gettysburg, an important battle in American history, was fought here. [15] After the Battle, Abraham Lincoln delivered the Gettysburg Address. [16] A version of this speech appears on a plaque in the Lincoln Memorial, which is located in Washington, D.C. [17] Because I had memorized this speech in History class, I was able to recite it. [18] As we traveled home on Sunday, we admired the Pennsylvania countryside. [19] When we reached the Ohio River, we knew our trip was almost finished. [20] After we got home, Sherry said, “We should take trips together more often.”
EXERCISE A In the following sentences, circle each incorrectly used lowercase letter. If a sentence is already correct, write C after it.

Example 1. Arthur enjoys talking with professor Bleau about archaeology.
1. For her birthday, my uncle Derwood gave aunt Bonnie a pair of earrings.
2. My grandpa owns stables where he boards and trains horses.
3. On Thursday, mayor Wilkins will be visiting our school.
4. Each morning, principal McVicar reads announcements.
5. Vickie listened with interest to a speech made by commissioner Jackson.
6. “Please ask Carlton whether he’d like to spend the night here,” said dad.
7. My mom wrote a note to excuse me from class for my appointment with dr. Lanier.
8. When you see mrs. Davenport, please ask her if she has seen my mom.
9. Is that a drawing of president Washington on the one-dollar bill?
10. As Douglas approached the table, he said, “Good afternoon, uncle.”

EXERCISE B The following sentences contain errors in capitalization. Circle each letter that is incorrectly capitalized or lowercased.

Example 1. Kenneth asked his dad for permission to go see a movie with Mike.

11. Our committee should speak with the principal about the dates for the party.
12. Before his birthday, I asked my brother to give me a list of items he wanted.
13. I asked my neighbor, mr. Elton, if he would hire me to mow his lawn.
14. Jenny has always enjoyed spending time with aunt Pattie.
15. The fire marshal and mayor Kniffin worked together on the parade committee.
**Titles and Subtitles**

13g(3). Capitalize the first and last words and all important words in titles and subtitles.

Unimportant words in titles include articles, coordinating conjunctions, and prepositions of fewer than five letters.

**EXAMPLES**  *The New York Times, The Old Man and the Sea, Masterpiece Theater*

**EXERCISE A** In the following sentences, circle each incorrectly used lowercase letter. If a sentence is already correct, write C after it.

**Example 1.** Please open your books to the poem “Ode to a Nightingale.”

1. Because I enjoy reading short articles, I subscribe to reader’s digest.
2. Justin used the lyrics of the song “Vincent” for his poetry analysis.
3. In the *tampa tribune*, I read about a statement made by Senator Lee.
4. Morton decided to subscribe to *sports illustrated*.
5. Do you know the words to “the battle hymn of the republic”?
6. My mother really liked Raul Julia in the movie *the addams family*.
7. Dale bought himself a tape of the musical play *cats*.
8. A popular movie during the holidays is *It’s a Wonderful Life*.
9. Once I started reading *the giver* by Lois Lowry, I couldn’t put it down.

**EXERCISE B** Circle each incorrectly lowercased or capitalized letter.

**Example 1.** For my birthday, Joey got me a copy of *Stories About Ghosts*.

11. One of my favorite movies is *king kong*.
12. At the bookstore, Mitzi browsed the racks of *magazines* looking for *national geographic*.
13. Paulie often stays up late watching old movies on the television program *film classics*.
14. The game *Sonic the Hedgehog* is on sale at the computer software store.
15. The ballad “the cremation of Sam McGee” is funny and unforgettable.
16. Does our homework include answering the questions at the end of “The American poets”?
17. Sandra lay on the couch and laughed as she watched *the simpsons*.
18. Would you help me find a copy of the declaration of independence on the Internet?
19. May I borrow your copy of *everlasting love* by CeCe Winans?
20. Carrie bought a black-and-white print by Ansel Adams called *Birds On A Beach*. 
In the following sentences, circle each incorrectly used lowercase letter. If a sentence is already correct, write C after the sentence.

Example 1. Last night I rented the movie *The Sound of Music*.

1. Marge admired the painting *Four Seasons—autumn*.
2. Rao enjoys watching broadcasts of the meetings of our United States senators.
3. Betsy said, "Andy, will you tell dad that I'm still at aunt Marge's house?"
4. Tom Hanks and Tim Allen provided voices for the animated film *Toy Story*.
5. I enjoyed reading Washington Irving's story "the legend of sleepy hollow."
6. My favorite song on your list is "Porgy and Bess: summertime."
7. After detective sergeant Desai spoke to our class, I decided to become a detective.
8. Kelly and Alex turned on the television to watch a new episode of *7th Heaven*.
9. *The Cherry Orchard* is a play by Anton Chekhov.
10. This biography about President Carter reveals what the daily life of a president is like.
11. In "a Scandal in bohemia," Sherlock Holmes solves a mystery involving Irene Adler.
12. Jared worked for weeks to complete a poem he titled "Lone Wolf in the Wilderness."
13. Drew says he learns a lot from reading the magazine *Popular Mechanics*.
14. My favorite part of the *Houston Chronicle* is the comics.
15. Which doctor examined your eyes for contacts, doctor Mae or doctor Phillips?
16. When I was learning to play the piano, I practiced "ode to joy" every day.
17. This sculpture, *couple dancing*, was created by a student in my art class.
18. Would you hand me the sports section from the *Los Angeles Times*, please?
19. I'll go next door and ask señora Ruiz if she can spare some eggs.
20. On the wall of my room, I hung a copy of the painting *The Starry Night*. 

**Titles A**

**13g(1).** Capitalize the title of a person when the title comes before a name.

**13g(2).** Capitalize a word showing a family relationship when the word is used before or in place of a person’s name.

**13g(3).** Capitalize the first and last words and all important words in titles and subtitles.

**Examples**

- The camping trip was organized by **Dad, Uncle James, and Mr. Johnson.**
- We are reading *Ode: Intimations of Immortality*, a long poem by Wordsworth.
Circle words that are incorrectly capitalized or lowercased.

**Example 1.** My Mom called grandmother from the supermarket.

1. My brother has read Jack London’s *white fang* several times.
2. “Tell general Foster that his plane is ready,” said the major.
3. Alfred spent his weekend reading *the Horse and his Boy*, which is a book by C. S. Lewis.
4. Becky said, “When are you taking your lunch break, doctor?”
5. Since I want to design rides for amusement parks, I was pleased to find *Roller coaster Tycoon* at the software store.
6. Does anybody know the words to our school song, “oh, westwood”?
7. My Cousin is working on mayor O’Shey’s reelection campaign.
8. Many famous actors provided voices for the animated movie *a bug’s life*.
9. I always read the comics page to follow the adventures of the Gumbo family in *rose is rose*.
10. When Janet entered the store, a clerk asked, “May I help you, ms. Monsanto?”
11. Are we eating Easter dinner at grandpa Olson’s house or at grandpa Hulen’s house?
12. The next chapter in the book is titled “the track of a storm.”
13. Lying in the sun, Lisa read the latest issue of *vogue*.
14. Uncle Enrique gave me a CD by Branford Marsalis, *renaissance*.
15. Does ERA stand for *equal rights amendment*?
16. *The Fellowship Of The Ring* is the first book in Tolkien’s trilogy.
17. Looking through his collection of video games, Raul selected *chess master*.
18. The author of this book, professor Simkins, is a friend of my Stepfather.
19. The church that Rosa attends is named after saint Mark.
20. The most exciting chapter of the book is “trouble at sea.”
Review A: Using Capital Letters

**EXERCISE A** In the following sentences, cross out each word that contains an error in capitalization. Above the error, write the word correctly.

*Example 1.* We spent the day swimming and picnicking at the Lake.

1. Sophomores at Lincoln high school take World History II.
2. Mount Whitney is one of the highest mountains in North America.
3. The author of the book *A Tale of Two Cities* is Charles Dickens.
4. I saw an exhibit of paintings by the Mexican artist José Orozco.
5. Then, Aunt Clara began to sing the song “Silver Threads among the Gold.”
6. The Cineplex Theater is two blocks North of our high school.
7. My Grandmother lives on the banks of the Ohio River.
8. There will be a full Moon on my birthday, September 14.
9. Harrison Ford stars in the Movie *Raiders Of The Lost Ark*.
10. Your aunt Modene will take you to your appointment with Dr. Block.

**EXERCISE B** Rewrite each of these word groups, using capital letters as needed. If the word group is capitalized correctly, write C.

*Example 1.* Declaration Of Independence

11. the united states senate
12. a puerto rican engineer for design, inc.
13. 145 Spring Avenue, Munster, Indiana
14. Tuesday, the fourteenth of November
15. the book *A Day No Pigs Would Die*
16. a beautiful river in North Dakota
17. a South American Jungle
18. a pizza from the restaurant known as Mama Leone’s
19. a summer trip to the beach
20. my cousin Hannah
Review B: Using Capital Letters

**EXERCISE A**  Rewrite each of these word groups, using capital letters as needed. If the word group is already capitalized correctly, write C.

**Example 1.** an asian american comedian  an Asian American comedian

1. water from the salton sea
2. general ulysses s. grant
3. a hispanic doctor, alex rodriguez
4. a quarterback for the chicago bears football team
5. 897 cricket avenue, fort worth, texas
6. a picnic at the beach on long island
7. the book the collected poems of w. b. yeats
8. a winter vacation in a warm climate
9. a legend about a monster in lake superior
10. my grandmother, minnie robinson

**EXERCISE B**  Each sentence contains one error in capitalization. Circle the word that is incorrectly capitalized or lowercased.

**Example 1.** Eva helped distribute programs in the Theater’s lobby.

11. My cousin Sheila asked, “what time does the play begin?”
12. I glanced at my timex watch and told her the time.
13. She and i were planning to go to the Lillian Beaumont Theater.
14. I had seen the play King Lear there last November.
15. This time, Sheila had Tickets to see the musical play Evita.
16. It’s the story of Eva Peron, a legendary figure in the history of argentina.
17. I had become interested in Eva Peron after studying her in History class.
18. Sheila and I had both read a biography of Peron, Evita: An Intimate Portrait Of Eva Peron.
19. After seeing Evita, I realized that she had led a fascinating Life.
20. I decided to ask mr. Mitchell if we could practice singing songs from the show in music class.
Exercise  Circle each letter that is incorrectly capitalized.

Example 1. Many barges and ships pass through the Panama Canal.
1. Juniors at Elkton High School must take World History.
2. The Larkspur Hotel is just north of an exit on the Turnpike.
3. The poet T. S. Eliot wrote the poem “The Love Song of J. Alfred Prufrock.”
4. The planets Saturn and Jupiter are much larger than Earth.
5. My uncle Patrick works as a dentist in Missouri.
6. On Tuesday, Brazilians will vote for a new president.
7. Drive west on Third Avenue until you come to the Burger Barn.
8. We saw a program about the planet Mercury last Sunday night.
9. Celine Dion sang “O Canada.”
10. Robin Williams played a modern Peter Pan in the movie Hook.
11. The birthday of Queen Elizabeth II is celebrated with a Parade in the United Kingdom.
12. The window of Blum’s bakery was full of Italian bread and French pastries.
13. Tennessee Williams, a playwright from the south, wrote The Night of the Iguana.
15. Babe Ruth was a great baseball Player for the New York Yankees.
16. Native American Indians joined the Pilgrims at the first Thanksgiving feast.
17. At certain points in its orbit, Pluto is the farthest planet from the Sun.
18. The British composer Andrew Lloyd-Webber wrote the musical play The Phantom of the Opera.
19. Did you read Ellen Goodman’s column in the Sunday Boston Globe?
20. The Butler Insurance Company has its Headquarters in Akron.
End Marks

An end mark is a mark of punctuation placed at the end of a sentence.

- Use a period at the end of a statement.
- Use a question mark at the end of a question.
- Use an exclamation point at the end of an exclamation.
- Use either a period or an exclamation point at the end of a request or a command.

**EXAMPLES**

- Charles Dickens is my favorite author.
- Who can ever forget Oliver Twist?
- What a likable character he is!
- Please return this book for me.

**EXERCISE A** Write the necessary end mark for each of the following sentences.

**Example 1.** What an exciting way to end a book that is! 

1. The library opens at 10:00 A.M. tomorrow
2. Did Randall finish the Stephen King mystery
3. Many movies are based on King’s books
4. What scary movies they are
5. I missed seeing the latest one when it was in theaters
6. Garth and Towanna saw it three times
7. How I wish I could have seen it
8. Have you read any mysteries by Sara Paretsky
9. Chicago is the setting for many of her stories
10. You should read one of these exciting mysteries

**EXERCISE B** Write end marks as needed in the following passage.

**Example** What is the title of the latest selection in Oprah’s Book Club?

You have probably seen or heard about Oprah Winfrey’s television show and book club. Do you know how she earned this recognition and success? As a child, Oprah struggled with problems of poverty, obesity, and abuse. What a tragic childhood this was! At age thirteen, however, she began living with her father, a devoted parent. Have you heard of Tennessee State University? This is the college that Oprah attended while working as a news anchor. What an interesting after-school job that must have been! She began hosting a talk show in 1984. The rest, as they say, is history.
Exercice A
Add the necessary periods to abbreviations in the following sentences. If a sentence is already correct, write C to the left of the item number.

Example 1. I’m working on an oral report on C.S. Lewis.
1. Al Unser, Jr, won the Indianapolis 500 in 1994.
2. Ms Dexter is here to see you.
3. Winnie-the-Pooh was written by A.A. Milne.
4. Alvin said, “Come watch this television special on the CIA!”
5. The letterhead says “Alma Rd.” not “Elma Dr”
6. “Shoes, Inc” is the name of the new store.
7. Please address the letter to 338 Norton Ln in Boston.
9. The shopping list says “one lb of apples.”
10. I want to work at Johnson Computer Corp, which offers weekend jobs to teenagers.

Exercice B
Some of the following sentences contain abbreviations that have not been correctly punctuated or capitalized. Cross out each incorrectly written abbreviation, and write the correct form above it.

Example Some materials for the school play were shipped by UPS.

ANNOUNCEMENT: The pta of Green Valley Jr High will meet in the Dr. Fitzhugh Auditorium at 7:00 on Thursday night. The address of the auditorium is 379 Fourth Ave, Lexington, K.Y. Refreshments will be provided by Ms Kingston, Mr Purdell, and Mrs Garza. Helen McKinney will be collecting donations for the seventh-grade play. Below is a list of items the seventh-graders still need.

8 yds. of light blue taffeta

ten in of silver metallic cord

red velvet around 3 ft by 2 ft in size

black paint
Exercise A  Insert periods, question marks, and exclamation points where they are needed in the following sentences. If a sentence is already correct, write C to the left of the item number.

Example 1. Don’t leave yet!

1. Please set the clock on the VCR for me
2. The listing says “6:30 on ch 5,” but I’ll be at the gym then.
3. We will record the film and watch it later
4. It is about Dr Martin Luther King, Jr
5. Send your request to the following address: 1010 Butler St, Orlando, FL 32887.
6. What fascinating classes hers must be
7. Sara read one of her poems at Mr Bannerjee’s retirement party
8. Have you read I Know Why the Caged Bird Sings
9. Oh no—watch out
10. Pick up those clothes, Rita

Exercise B  Insert periods, question marks, and exclamation points where they are needed in the following paragraph.

Example  I was up late working on my presentation for Dr. Johnson’s class.

What a crazy day this has been The Cedar Ave bus left early Wasn’t I lucky that Dr and Mr Moreno came by and drove me to school We got to school by 8:00, but it was closed because of a heating problem The principal, Martin Crowe, Sr, stood out front and sent everyone home I hope this means that I can give my UNICEF presentation next Friday
Commas A

**Exercise A** Insert commas as needed in the following sentences.

**Example 1.** I need tortillas, grated cheese, and ground beef.

1. Cars trucks and buses were stranded by the storm.
2. Mrs. Ortega won more votes than Mr. Harris Miss Steinberg or Dr. Gladstone.
3. Scallops oysters herring and shrimp are displayed in the fish-market window.
4. One tall weary man wearing a hat dropped a silver coin into the kettle hanging by the door.
5. The chairperson’s responsibilities included calling the meeting to order asking for the minutes and announcing new officers.
6. Howie’s dogs are friendly obedient and loyal to him and his family.
7. The zoo director had to feed the animals guide visitors and keep the grounds safe and clean.
8. A sleek powerful submarine slipped into the sea.
9. Many white purple and yellow crocuses grew on the hill.
10. Todd’s uncle asked who Rory was when she had arrived and why she was asleep on the porch.

**Exercise B** Insert commas as needed in the following paragraph.

**Example** I plan to spend a long, happy afternoon at the mall.

Have you heard about the new shopping mall? It is a big exciting place! It has department stores with clothing furniture and sporting goods. It even has specialty shops, such as those that sell only music boxes rare comic books organic health food shoes, or baseball caps. It has a noisy crowded food court that is filled with the smell of warm French bread. This weekend my father sister and I are going to find running shoes a music box with a ballerina, and crunchy trail mix. Why don’t you come with us?
Commas B

14h. Use a comma before and, but, for, nor, or, so, or yet when it joins independent clauses in a compound sentence.

EXAMPLES Joshua’s uncle drove us to the skating rink, and he decided to skate with us.
Ariel took her umbrella, for it looked like rain.

EXERCISE A Underline the conjunction in the sentences that follow. Then, add commas where necessary. If a sentence needs no comma, write C to the left of the item number.

Example 1. Some people enjoy long car trips, but others get restless in the car.
1. Our family planned a driving trip so we needed maps.
2. Mom looked carefully but couldn’t find Elgin.
3. She put on glasses for the print was tiny.
4. The scenery was great yet my sister was restless.
5. Is that normal or is something wrong with the car’s engine?
6. Carla noticed I forgot my pencil so she lent me one of hers.
7. My cousin Cary writes music and plays in a band.
8. He invited us to listen but we had no time.
9. Who woke us up and why must we leave early?
10. Yoko is not a good traveler nor am I.

EXERCISE B Combine two sentences to make a compound sentence. Include commas as needed.

Example 1. Rain was pouring down. The football game continued.
Rain was pouring down, yet the football game continued.

11. I brought a new camera. It broke.

12. It rained on Sunday. We were disappointed.

13. The mountains were snowy. The weather didn’t seem very cold.

14. I can borrow skis. Maybe I can rent some.

15. Mariana spotted a fire tower. Dad saw a deer.
EXERCISE A Each of the following sentences contains a nonessential phrase or clause. Insert commas as needed.

**Example 1.** Swimming, my favorite sport, is great exercise.

1. The Johnston City pool built ten years ago is a great place to swim.
2. City residents who are allowed to swim free use the pool all summer.
3. Our annual swim meet which was postponed will be next month.
4. Did you see Sheri my neighbor do a triple flip?
5. Mr. Epstein who is a retired firefighter teaches the beginning swimmers.

EXERCISE B Identify each underlined phrase or clause in the following sentences by writing above it N for nonessential or E for essential. Then, add commas to the nonessential phrases and clauses.

**Examples 1.** Parents who know how to swim can join the group.

2. Lana, the one who’s laughing, wants her mother to swim with her.

6. The park equipped with a pool is the one we choose.

7. The pool water sparkling in the sunshine invites me to jump in.

8. Only students who have paid their fees can attend.

9. How would you an experienced instructor educate swimmers about safety?

10. Should we ask Mrs. Sims who walks every day to join us?

11. The lifeguard wearing blue shorts is the strictest one.

12. He stresses good behavior which is important for everyone’s safety.

13. A child who is frightened can usually be calmed.

14. The third diving board which is the highest is reserved for experienced divers.

15. Nina Parks the Sentryville Middle School swimming champion is swimming laps.
Commas D

14i. Use commas to set off an expression that interrupts a sentence.

Use commas to set off words that are used in direct address and to set off parenthetical expressions.

**EXAMPLES**

- Yes, **Tina**, I have extra notebook paper.
- The best player, **in my opinion**, is Roberto.

**EXERCISE A**

The following sentences contain words used in direct address or as parenthetical expressions. Insert commas before, after, or both before and after the words as needed.

**Example 1.** The omelet, **to tell the truth**, tasted scorched.

1. The time of our club meeting by the way has been changed.
2. Juan the glove on the other hand of the mannequin does not match this one.
3. The landscape architect said, **“These pansies for example would look wonderful there.”**
4. I didn’t know Lorena that you could sing so beautifully!
5. I suppose that you Rudolfo will fill in for Perrin while she is on vacation.
6. On the other hand that old barn looks quite picturesque.
7. Marina may I borrow a pencil?
8. You must of course be home by curfew.
9. In fact these are the cathedral’s original stained-glass windows.
10. I’m not sure Kelly whether I want to go to the game.

**EXERCISE B**

Insert commas as needed in the following paragraph.

**Example**

Tell me, **Edna**, about your involvement in Habitat for Humanity.

Habitat for Humanity first caught my attention I suppose with its Web site. Victor do you know how to search for information on the Internet? To tell the truth searching on the Internet is quite simple. I will however e-mail you the URL you need. On this Web site Victor you will find lots of information. Habitat for Humanity for example welcomes volunteers to help build houses. You see the main purpose of the organization is to supply affordable housing to people who need it. The future homeowners of course help to build their houses. I thought that you Victor would be especially interested in this organization. Your goal of becoming an architect I think would be compatible with working for Habitat for Humanity.
EXERCISE A Insert commas as needed in the following sentences.

Example 1. Why, I see you cut your hair!

1. Under the picnic table beside the tent Frisky slept peacefully.
2. Hiding behind the bush during a game of hide-and-seek she scared me.
3. Well look who’s here!
4. Beyond that mountain with a snowy peak there’s a small cabin.
5. No it burned down last summer.
6. Although the air was muggy we turned off the air conditioner.
7. Oh look at all those birds!
8. Since their leaves stay green all year those trees are called evergreens.
9. After we ate we explored the woods surrounding the campground.
10. Why I wish all views were as beautiful as this!

EXERCISE B Insert commas as needed in the following paragraph.

Example Browsing Web sites on the Internet, I found some interesting information.

In the final month of the twentieth century Time magazine named Albert Einstein the Person of the Century. After I read the article by Frederic Golden I agreed with the choice. Yes Einstein won the distinction, but Franklin Roosevelt and Mohandas Gandhi were close runners-up. Although Einstein was a brilliant scientist everyday people recognize his name and photo. As a matter of fact you may even own a poster of Einstein. With his amazing intellect and his flyaway hair Einstein is a beloved figure in American culture. Indeed his ideas influenced more than just science. As Frederic Golden pointed out Einstein’s ideas have influenced the arts as well. In fact artists and poets have studied Einstein, and filmmakers have portrayed his life and ideas. Although he died in 1955 Einstein seems very much alive today.
Commats F

Use commas to separate items in a series.

Use a comma to separate two or more adjectives that come before a noun.

Use a comma before and, but, for, nor, or, so, or yet when it joins independent clauses in a compound sentence.

Use commas to set off an expression that interrupts a sentence.

Use a comma after certain introductory elements.

**Examples**

I sketched castles, dragons, and horses.

Heavy, gray clouds filled the sky, and rain began to fall.

Splashing in the pool, the children were, of course, enjoying themselves.

**Exercise A** Insert commas as needed in the following sentences.

**Example 1.** Since my boots are muddy, may I borrow yours?

1. This mild creamy cheese will taste good on toast.

2. No one claimed the lost dog that I found so I decided to keep her.

3. My school has a tennis court a baseball diamond and a jogging track.

4. Where are we eating lunch Maxine?

5. “He can shake hands he can roll over and he can play dead,” Scruffy’s trainer told us.

6. Before I can watch television I have to finish my homework.

7. A landscape painting in my opinion would look better in this room than a portrait.

8. I bought the latest issue and I eagerly read every article.

9. Your clothing designs Cheryl are very promising.

10. Running across the lawn a squirrel attracted Alex’s attention.

**Exercise B** Insert commas as needed in the following paragraph.

**Example** I missed the game on television, but Stephanie told me about it.

Smiling from ear to ear Stephanie had spectacular wonderful news. Yes the Bears won their fifth game! In the second half of the game they were awesome. When she told us we yelled jumped for joy and hugged each other. I pasted team pictures in my bedroom inside my locker on the refrigerator and on my notebook cover.
EXERCISE A  Insert commas in the following sentences as needed.

Example  1. Taught golf as a toddler, Tiger Woods was destined for greatness.

  1. Tiger Woods’s parents Earl and Kultida had Tiger playing golf at age two.
  2. When Tiger was fifteen he won the U.S. Junior Amateur championship.
  3. The dedicated gifted Tiger went on to win the 1992 and 1993 championships as well.
  4. In each of the following three years he won the U.S. Amateur championship.
  5. Tiger enrolled in Stanford University in 1994 but he did not give up golf.
  6. Turning pro in August of 1996 Tiger left college.
  7. He golfed in numerous events that year if I’m not mistaken.
  8. He won two titles earned almost $800,000 in prize money and was named outstanding rookie.
  9. Tiger is well known for his golf swing which is graceful and accurate.
  10. Tiger, in 1997, won the Masters Tournament a highly prestigious event.

EXERCISE B  Insert commas as needed in the following paragraph.

Example  Haunted houses, in Leon’s opinion, really do not exist.

         The grand old mansion fascinated neighborhood teenagers. Situated at the top of a hill it
looked very stately. An iron fence which was covered with vines encircled the property. The
teenagers discovered that they could part the vines peek through the fence and see a garden maze
in the yard. One of the children Leon wanted to climb the fence. When he put his foot on the fence
the other children shook their heads. Looking disappointed Leon said that he guessed the maze
should remain a mystery.
Commas H

Use commas in certain conventional situations.

Use commas to separate items in dates and addresses. Use a comma after the salutation of a personal letter and after the closing of any letter.

**EXAMPLES**

My grandfather was born on May 4, 1948, in Philadelphia.

His first apartment was at 32 Walton Street, Dayton, Ohio.

Dear Grandpa,

Sincerely yours.

**Exercise A** Insert commas as needed in the following sentences.

**Example 1.** The new wing of the school was dedicated on April 4, 2000.

1. The public library in New Falls South Dakota received an anonymous donation.

2. You’ll find the bakery at 719 Pixel Avenue Louisville.

3. Mary signed the letter, “Yours truly Mary Roberts.”

4. Spring Break will begin March 1 2009.

5. Cory wrote, “Dear Mrs. Reszke I am writing to volunteer for math tutoring.”

6. I have a pen pal who lives in North Platte Nebraska.

7. What was your mom doing on December 31 1999 when the clock struck midnight?

8. My mom’s address is P.O. Box 338 Bangor Maine.

9. The movie theater at 462 Locust in Avery Montana is closing down.

10. Charlene’s uncle will graduate from law school on May 17 2009.

**Exercise B** Insert commas as needed in the following letter.

**Example** Margo’s address is 432 State Street, Tampa, Florida.

December 30 2009

Dear Margo

I’m catching up on my letters. No, I didn’t forget your camp form. The camp’s office moved from 1234 Howard Street Springfield Missouri. Now they’re at 16 Rogers Road Deerfield Missouri. Camp starts on June 15 2010, but our forms need to be mailed by March 15 2010. Good news—they need counselors! I hope we both get jobs. Oh—use my new address when you write me back: P.O. Box 977 Fayetteville Arkansas.

Your pal

Nichola
Commas I

Review the rules on pages 336–349 of your textbook for information on using commas with items in a series, independent clauses, introductory elements, nonessential clauses and phrases, words used in direct address, parenthetical expressions, dates, addresses, and letters.

**EXERCISE**  Insert commas as needed in the following sentences. If a sentence needs no commas, write C after it.

**Example 1.** VCR, CD, and DVD are abbreviations we hear often.
1. I often rent a movie pop some popcorn and invite a friend over.
2. When I rent a movie I rent a copy on videotape.
3. If I had a DVD player I could rent the movie on DVD.
4. The abbreviation DVD stands for either “digital video disc” or “digital versatile disc.”
5. The DVD which is a newer technology than the videotape was introduced in 1996.
6. Consumers were curious about DVDs but they did not have access to them until 1997.
7. DVD players were widely available by December 1 1999.
8. You may remember Anthony how many holiday season advertisements featured DVD players that year.
9. I wonder how many kids wrote letters saying, “Dear Grandma Please give me a DVD player.”
10. The DVD a flat shiny disc looks much like a music CD or a computer CD-ROM.
11. A CD-ROM stores 650 million bytes of data but the DVD can store over 4 billion bytes.
12. Well imagine the difference in quality between a movie on videotape and one on DVD.
13. The DVD as you know has a much higher capacity for data storage.
14. It has higher quality video it has better sound and it can contain multiple movies.
15. Yes that’s right.
16. With the technology of the DVD a filmmaker can provide several versions of a movie on one DVD.
17. Different endings different languages and other variations can be offered.
18. The DVD player which is still rather costly for my budget is now a familiar sight in stores.
19. For now on movie night I will continue using my trusty VCR.
20. Maybe I’ll ask Grandma for a DVD player next year and sign the letter, “Your DVD-deficient grandson Chad.”
Commas J

Review the rules on pages 336–349 of your textbook for information on using commas with items in a series, independent clauses, introductory elements, nonessential clauses and phrases, words used in direct address, parenthetical expressions, dates, addresses, and letters.

Exercise  Insert commas as needed in the following sentences. If a sentence is already correct, write C on the line provided.

Example  1. These roofing shingles, which are made of wood, should be replaced.

1. They washed vegetables they baked chicken and they packed a picnic basket.
2. When did you write this poem Muriel?
3. The farmer’s market will open for this summer on May 31 2009.
4. Students who have finished their assignments may leave early.
5. Under the bushes by the back fence a small cottontail rabbit sat perfectly still.
6. Whenever you host one of your karaoke parties I laugh for days afterward.
7. Laura sings and Ricardo dances.
8. Santiago wrote, “Dear Grandmother I’m writing to wish you a happy birthday.”
9. The vice president of our class Jane Ellen has an announcement to make.
10. Ba Thi is not interested in soccer nor is he interested in hockey.
11. This brown fuzzy fruit is a kiwi.
12. There are campaign posters in the hallways in the cafeteria and on the locker doors.
13. This is the correct answer right?
14. Planted in early spring the seeds soon sprouted.
15. Shel Silverstein’s book The Giving Tree is my favorite of his works.
16. Across a field and down a hill the horse galloped at full speed.
17. The letter was signed mysteriously, “Yours forever Your Secret Admirer.”
18. For information write to the manufacturer at 2407 Smyth Ave. Bismarck, ND.
19. These floors by the way are made of Italian marble.
20. Sure go ahead and have the last muffin.
Semicolons A

14l. Use a semicolon between independent clauses if they are not joined by and, but, for, nor, or, so, or yet.

14m. Use a semicolon rather than a comma before a coordinating conjunction to join independent clauses that contain commas.

**Examples**

Anna Mary Robertson Moses had a goal; she wanted to be an artist.

I called Chung Sook, Van, and Ray; and Sam called Marva.

**Exercise A** Insert semicolons as needed in each of the following sentences.

**Example 1.** Many people love Grandma Moses’s paintings; others, though, find them too simple.

1. Hector’s mother is a painter; she told him about Grandma Moses.

2. Anna Mary Robertson Moses began painting in the 1930s; she was in her late seventies.

3. You won’t see her full name on her paintings; instead, you’ll see the name Grandma Moses.

4. Some people like folk art; others like abstract art.

5. Simone, Rita, and Hector are taking Art I; Anita is taking Art II.

**Exercise B** Some of the following sentences need semicolons. Above the sentence, write the semicolon and the words before and after it. In some sentences, semicolons will replace commas. If a sentence already has correct punctuation, write C on the line provided.

**Examples**

1. Jeremy and Thad returned early; LaVerne was late.

2. You help Dad, and I’ll help Uncle Seymour.

3. First, I delivered papers; then I practiced soccer.

4. Dan, I know you are tired, but the laundry is waiting.

5. Phillip, Homer, and Carla wrote poetry; Luis wrote a play.

6. The steady rain continued; yet nobody cared.

7. Helen, please sing the soprano part; Jean will sing the alto part.

8. Some of us marched; others, like John, rode on a float.

9. Ethel saw the danger; she shouted a loud, clear warning.

10. I like checkers, charades, and dominoes; and he likes chess.

11. Nicknames are fun; however, can embarrass you.

12. Lila forgot her umbrella; Janet, of course, had hers.
**Semicolons**

1. Use a semicolon between independent clauses if they are not joined by *and, but, for, nor,** or *yet.**

2. Use a semicolon rather than a comma before a coordinating conjunction to join independent clauses that contain commas.

**Examples**

- Don’t use those oil paints; use these watercolors instead.
- My relatives live in Nashville, Tennessee; Atlanta, Georgia; and Austin, Texas.

**Exercise A** Insert semicolons as needed in the following sentences. Above the sentence, write the words before and after the semicolon. In some sentences, semicolons will replace commas.

**Example 1.** I would like to visit San Diego, California, Lima, Peru, and Athens, Greece.

1. I declined Larry’s offer of a ride home; I wanted to walk.
2. Please wash the car’s windshield; I will fill the tank with gasoline.
4. Save those newspapers; we will need them when we pack the dishes.
5. I saw Ms. Norris and Ms. Carson, the chaperones; but, as I said, I did not see the principal.

**Exercise B** Insert semicolons in the following sentences as needed. In some sentences, semicolons will replace commas. Above the sentence, write the words before and after the semicolon.

**Example 1.** I handled the clock carefully; it was an antique.

6. There are international airports in Miami, Florida, Chicago, Illinois, and New York City.
7. Tina always does homework at the kitchen table; however, her mom is setting the table for dinner.
8. I cheered when I crossed the finish line; it was my first victory.
9. At the market Flora selected strawberries, which were on sale; a pineapple, which is her favorite fruit; and blackberries, which Todd had requested.
10. Please walk the dog; he hasn’t been out in several hours.
11. The team leaders are Janet, Terrence, and Phil; Roy will fill in if one of them is absent.
12. Fallen leaves cover the front yard; I should rake them soon.
13. Georgia enjoys reading; her sister is more interested in writing.
14. We need lots of ice for the party; let’s go to the corner market to get some.
15. I sent valentine cards to three people: Monica, my stepmom; Bertie, my pen pal; and Kat, a close friend.
for CHAPTER 14: PUNCTUATION pages 353–354

Colons

**14n.** Use a colon before a list of items, especially after expressions such as *the following* or *as follows.*

**14o.** Use a colon between the hour and the minute.

**14p.** Use a colon after the salutation of a business letter.

**14q.** Use a colon between chapter and verse in Biblical references and between all titles and subtitles.

**EXAMPLES**

For the picnic we need the following:
fruit, sodas, cheese, and crackers.

8:00 P.M.  2:15 A.M.

Dear Mrs. Cramer To Whom It May Concern:

Matthew 3:1–4 Robert Frost *The Official Biography*

**EXERCISE A** Insert colons as needed in the following sentences.

**Example 1.** The finalists are the following students: Aidan, Rowan, and Rebecca.

1. Our bus leaves at 6:23 A.M.

2. The languages the exchange student speaks are as follows: English, German, French, and Spanish.

3. Dear Mayor Winston


5. At 7:04 P.M. the spacecraft was launched.

6. Uncle Jerry likes the following authors: Alex Haley, Mark Twain, and Willa Cather.

7. Our reading assignment is the following:
   a short story by O. Henry, pages 4–18 in our text, and
   two newspaper editorials.

8. These students won awards:
   Tasha Zimmer, Blake Sanders, and Sam Reyes.

9. Carol titled her essay “Time How to Make the Most of It.”

10. Remember these tips when you drive:
    courtesy, caution, and judgment.

**EXERCISE B** Add colons as needed in the following memo.

**Example** The speech is titled “Workplace Friendships: Strength in Numbers.”

To All Employees

You are invited to a luncheon at 1:30 P.M. on Friday. The speakers are as follows:
Dr. Perez, Mr. Feldman, and Mrs. Puccini. Bring these items:

a notebook, a pen or pencil, and your list of questions for the speakers. The event will be over by 3:00 P.M.
Review A: End Marks and Abbreviations

**Exercise A** Add a period, a question mark, or an exclamation point to each sentence.

Example 1. Look at this hilarious cartoon!

1. Are you familiar with Gary Larson’s work
2. What a talented cartoonist he is
3. Have you seen *The Far Side*
4. The characters are sometimes animals who act like people
5. How did he become a cartoonist
6. When he was a child, Larson liked to draw dinosaurs and gorillas
7. In college, he wanted to save the world from boring advertising
8. How funny that is
9. Be sure to read his cartoon collections
10. You’ll like the dogs who wear glasses

**Exercise B** Add periods, question marks, and exclamation points as needed in the following sentences.

Example 1. Col. Mustard committed the crime with a candlestick in the library!

11. Please tell Mrs Neziri that we accept her party invitation
12. Oh no, stop that
13. Isn’t this movie based on a book by E M Forster
14. The school’s PTA will host a concert in June
15. Dr Nelson said that the Petrified Forest in Arizona covers over 93,000 acres
16. We need help over here, Dr Taylor
17. Does Facts by Fax, Inc close at 5:00 on weekdays
18. Ella’s older sister goes to a college in Morgantown
19. What year did E Annie Proulx win a Pulitzer Prize for *The Shipping News*
20. Spot, let go of Ms Sherling’s glove now
EXERCISE A  Add commas as needed in the following sentences.

Example  1. Putting on her sneakers, Megan prepared for the basketball game.

1. Albert what makes a sneaker comfortable?

2. I think support comfort and cushioning are three important things.

3. Our track team buys only one brand but it’s not easy to get all sizes.

4. My brother always wants the latest greatest style of shoe.

5. He plays basketball, he plays tennis and he runs track.

6. In fact he has several pairs of sneakers for these sports.

7. Since I jog almost every day I am most concerned with the shoe’s comfort.

8. I do however shop for a style and color that I like.

9. Dark blue, my favorite color, is always my first choice.

10. This sale on athletic shoes ends August 31 2009.

EXERCISE B  Add commas as needed in the following sentences. If a sentence is already correct, write C on the line provided.

Examples 1. Thumper, my pet rabbit, eats all of our vegetable scraps.

C 2. The person who made this holly wreath is Andrea Morton.

11. Covered with a layer of fluffy snow the sidewalk was completely hidden.

12. I don’t really like asparagus but I ate it to be polite.

13. Dad relaxed beside the fireplace was reading a Thomas Hardy novel.

14. Over the weekend we shopped, we talked and we ate dinner.

15. Those dusty, grimy windows should be washed thoroughly.

16. The equation that I found most challenging was the fifth one.

17. Ms. Hoffmann, the art teacher, always dresses colorfully and with style.

18. The salad on the other hand would be more healthy than the fried shrimp.

19. Under the weeping willow beside the lake we spread our blanket for the picnic.

20. Because he loves adventure Ronny rode the tallest roller coaster at the park first.
**EXERCISE A**  Add semicolons and colons as needed in the following sentences.

**Example 1.** We will arrive at the museum at 1:30 P.M.

1. Here is London’s famous wax museum, Madame Tussaud’s; it dates back to 1835.
2. This is a weird but interesting place; I’m sure we’ll enjoy our tour.
3. The Grand Hall features the following popes, politicians, and villains from history.
4. I want a picture of Ari, Ben, and myself; but I didn’t bring a camera.
5. This letter from the Friends of the Museum begins, “Dear Wax Enthusiasts Welcome.”
6. I asked one of the guards a question; then I realized he was made of wax!
7. Some of us know that’s true; others can hardly believe it.
8. A queen donated a gown; a king gave his cape.
9. Wax models are made using these materials; fiberglass, real hair, acrylic, and other materials.
10. Sandy says that she’s been to wax museums in New York, New York; Las Vegas, Nevada; and Salem, Massachusetts.

**EXERCISE B**  Add semicolons and colons as needed in the following letter.

**Example**  My plans for the afternoon include the following: writing letters, doing homework, and working on my Web site.

March 1, 2009

Dear Professor Rumbaugh

I will be in Finland on the following dates: March 10 through March 17. I know that Spring Break does not begin until March 12; that’s why I’m writing you this letter. I will miss your lecture, “Farming Communities Life on the Land;” on March 11 but I am really interested in the topic. Could I stop by your office around 10:30 A.M. on Thursday to discuss the topic?

You see, I’m going to work on a farm in Finland; I plan to write my term paper, “Small-Scale Farming America’s Future;” about the things I learn there. Before I go, I’d like to ask you some questions; I think you’ll have some good advice. For instance, I think I’ll need to take the following items: work clothes, a wide-brimmed hat, and boots. I’m not sure about the other supplies.

Thank you very much.

Sincerely,

Karen Kent
EXERCISE A  Add periods, question marks, exclamation points, and commas as needed in the following sentences.

Example 1. Gazing at the stars, I wondered if scientists had ever counted them all.

1. Do you enjoy looking at the stars
2. What a wonderful sight that will be
3. Kurt have you seen the Big Dipper
4. The Big Dipper a group of seven stars is in Great Bear.
5. Isn’t that a constellation
6. Did your parents see Halley’s comet in 1986
7. It was named for Edmond Halley an astronomer who died in 1742
8. Does Halley rhyme with daily valley or crawly
9. Halley’s comet won’t be back until 2062 I believe
10. After I finish my research I plan to write an essay about Halley’s comet

EXERCISE B  Add end marks, commas, semicolons, and colons as needed in the following sentences.

Example 1. I’ll invite Trish, Veronica, and Max, and you, please, invite the other people on this list.

11. Are you ready for some summer fun
12. What has the following things in common water music friends and food?
13. You guessed it
14. You’re invited to a Splash Party on Thursday May 26 2009
15. Come to my house at 2 00 call if you need a ride.
16. Look for a sign for Apt 215
17. Bring the following items bathing suit sandals towel and sunscreen lotion.
18. If possible bring some CDs then we can dance
19. My older brother and sister who are both college students will chaperone the party
20. Oh you don’t have to bring anything drinks and food will be provided
Underlining (Italics) A

Use underlining (italics) for titles and subtitles of books, plays, periodicals, films, television series, works of art, and long musical works.

**EXAMPLES**  

**EXERCISE A**  
In the following sentences, underline each title that should be italicized.

**Example 1.** Winnie and Carlo enjoy watching This Old House on television.

2. Norman Rockwell created covers for The Saturday Evening Post.
3. Does your library have a copy of Raiders of the Lost Ark?
4. My brother subscribes to Ebony.
5. One of Puccini’s operas is Madama Butterfly.
6. National Geographic had an interesting article about butterflies.
7. The famous statue by Auguste Rodin is called The Thinker.
8. During dinner, we listened to a long work by George Gershwin called Rhapsody in Blue.
9. Did you think the film Little Women accurately represented the book?
10. Roberta admired the photograph of the famous statue Venus de Milo.

**EXERCISE B**  
Add underlining as needed in the following conversation.

**Example**  
Marianne opened TV Guide to find today’s listings.


15. “That was a movie, too,” Marianne said. “We watched it along with The Black Stallion last weekend.”
Underlining (Italics) B

**Exercise A** In the following sentences, underline each word or item that should be italicized.

**Example 1.** My brother built a model of the USS Enterprise.

1. Shalom can mean “welcome” as well as “farewell.”
2. Have you seen photographs of Sputnik 1?
3. The speech therapist is helping Sheila learn to pronounce s’s without lisping.
4. Your passage has been booked on the Ocean Princess.
5. Stacey’s first word was Mama.
6. I’ve always found it difficult to write the capital letter Q in cursive.
7. Marty is writing a mystery that takes place on a train called American Majesty.
8. Boris draws a line through the stem of his 7’s.
9. At age 77, John Glenn served as part of the crew of the space shuttle Discovery.
10. On weekends, I am helping to rebuild an old boat, the Fly by Night.

**Exercise B** Add underlining as needed in the following paragraph.

**Example [1]** There are two 4’s, two 8’s, and one 9 in Aunt Rita’s ZIP code.

[11] “How many s’s are in the word Mississippi?” Jean asked her sister. [12] Jean was writing a letter to her aunt to ask her about a ship named Aurelia. [13] In July, Jean and Aunt Rita will take a riverboat cruise on the Spirit of Mississippi. [14] They are also considering an ocean cruise on the Atlantis. [15] They decided to save a train tour on the Sleek Mystique for future vacations.
Underlining (Italics) C

15a. Use underlining (italics) for titles and subtitles of books, plays, periodicals, films, television series, works of art, and long musical works.

15b. Use underlining (italics) for the names of ships, trains, aircraft, and spacecraft.

15c. Use underlining (italics) for words, letters, and numerals referred to as such.

EXAMPLES  The Adventures of Tom Sawyer, National Geographic, Apollo 8
Roll your r’s when you say burrito in Spanish.

EXERCISE  In the following sentences, underline each word or item that should be italicized.

Example 1. The Dawn Treader is a ship in one of C. S. Lewis’s books.
1. I’m going to spend the afternoon reading The Last of the Really Great Whangdoodles.
2. Gilligan and the Skipper are the crew of the SS Minnow.
3. At the art supply store, Megan bought stencils for the letters a, e, g, m, and n.
4. I bought four tickets to the musical Grease.
5. Tanya glanced at the headlines of USA Today.
7. Does your apartment number end in one 6 or two 6’s?
8. Sonya and her mother always watch Providence together.
9. Liberation, an artwork by M. C. Escher, shows triangles transforming into flying birds.
10. Terrence read about a space mission of the Endeavour.
11. The seventh-grade class will tour the Blue Rose, a yacht in the nearby harbor.
12. Squinting at the faded sign, Karla could make out only an H and a P.
13. We’ll get there faster if we buy railway tickets on the Midwest Express.
14. Martha named her small plane Amelia in honor of Amelia Earhart.
15. Have you ever seen The Phantom of the Opera?
16. Is this the letter l or the number 1 in your e-mail address?
17. May I read your copy of The Importance of Being Earnest?
18. Gustavo enjoys reading about current films and books in Entertainment Weekly.
19. I usually comes before e except in words such as neighbor and weigh.
20. Taylor studied Georgia O’Keeffe’s painting called Ram’s Skull With Brown Leaves.
Punctuating Direct and Broken Quotations

Use quotation marks to enclose a **direct quotation**—a person’s exact words.

**A direct quotation generally begins with a capital letter.**

**EXAMPLE**  
Mr. Colby said, **“The Titanic will never sink.”**

**15e.**  
When an expression identifying the speaker interrupts a quoted sentence, the second part of the quotation begins with a lowercase letter.

**EXAMPLE**  
**“The Titanic,”** said Mr. Colby, **“will never sink.”**

**A direct quotation can be set off from the rest of the sentence by one or more commas or by a question mark or an exclamation point, but not by a period.**

**15h.**
**A comma or a period should be placed inside the closing quotation marks.**

**A question mark or an exclamation point should be placed inside the closing quotation marks when the quotation itself is a question or an exclamation. Otherwise, it should be placed outside.**

**EXAMPLES**  
**“What a fabulous ship!”** Mrs. Colby exclaimed.  
**“Let’s go,”** suggested her husband, **“and join the others for dinner.”**  
Roberto asked, **“Where are we going?”**

**Exercise**  
Use quotation marks, commas, and capital letters where they are needed in each of the following sentences. If a sentence is already correct, write C above it.

**Examples**

1. **“Did you enjoy your dinner?”** asked Mrs. Colby.

2. Mr. Colby said that the Titanic would never sink.

1. The captain announced that dancing begins at midnight.
2. how can we dance if the sea gets rough? Mrs. Colby asked.
3. My dear her husband replied, we’ll just move with the waves.
4. What is that ahead? asked Clive.
5. A steward said that it looked like an iceberg.
6. The captain asked what’s causing the commotion?
7. A short while later, a telegraph operator said I heard a distress signal.
8. Someone asked where the signal originated.
9. I’m trying to figure that out he answered, but I’m not sure.
10. It might be coming from the Titanic another operator said.
In the following dialogue, insert paragraph symbols (¶) wherever a new paragraph should begin.

Example  Stanislav exclaimed, “I’ll take Swiss cheese anytime.” ¶ “Is that your favorite cheese?” asked Jeanne.

As he wrote on the chalkboard, Mr. Kaplan asked, “Does anyone know what causes the holes in Swiss cheese?” “I know the answer!” exclaimed Stanislav. “It’s the gas bubbles.” “How did you know that?” asked Mr. Kaplan. “My grandfather makes cheese,” answered Stanislav. “I’ve watched him many times. He adds bacteria for flavor, and adding bacteria makes gas bubbles.” “What happens next?” Alicia wanted to know. “When the cheese gets hard, the bubbles remain as the holes we see in Swiss cheese,” added Stanislav. “I never knew that,” said Jeanne. “I wish I hadn’t learned it,” whispered Alicia, “because that process doesn’t sound very appetizing to me.” “What do you mean? I think it’s interesting,” Jeanne told her, “and it doesn’t change the fact that Swiss cheese tastes good.” “I agree,” Stanislav said. Nodding his head, Mr. Kaplan looked at Stanislav and told him, “Thanks for sharing your story with the class.”
Quotation Marks in Dialogue

15j. When you write dialogue (a conversation), begin a new paragraph every time the speaker changes.

**EXAMPLES**

“Why do you have that odd look on your face, Whitney?” Ramona asked.

“Sorry, my dear. You must stay home and finish your chores,” replied her stepmother.

“It seems that I’m the only one working around here,” Cinderella complained.

15k. When a quotation consists of several sentences, put quotation marks only at the beginning and the end of the whole quotation.

**EXAMPLE**

“Everybody knows this is totally unfair! But if I finish quickly, maybe I’ll have a chance to go. Who knows? I might even dance with the prince.”

15l. Use single quotation marks to enclose a quotation within a quotation.

**EXAMPLE**

“Did she say ‘dance with the prince’?” one of the sisters asked.

**EXERCISE**

Insert any quotation marks that are needed in each of the following sentences. When the speaker changes, draw a paragraph symbol (¶) to show where any new paragraphs should begin.

**Examples**

Ramona asked, “Why do you have that odd look on your face, Whitney?”

¶ “Yeah, I was wondering that, too,” said Christopher.

Looking slowly around the room, Whitney stopped and said, Listen! Did you hear a noise? No, I didn’t hear anything. Do you think you might be imagining things? Ramona answered quietly. I’m worried, Christopher whispered. I heard a strange noise, too. Maybe someone is standing on the back porch! exclaimed Whitney. Let me check the back door, said Christopher in an unsure tone. I’ll go with you, volunteered Whitney. Shaking her head, Ramona said, Oh, you two. Nobody’s standing outside on the porch. Let’s just stay where we are. Christopher teased, Are you afraid to stay in here by yourself? No, silly! she answered. You’re the one who said I’m worried. You know, Whitney replied, our cat does walk around on the porch in the evenings. Now that I think about it, he sometimes makes sounds exactly like the one we just heard.
Quotation Marks with Titles

**Examples**

- “The Gift of the Magi”
- “The Raven”
- “I’ve Been Working on the Railroad”
- “How to Improve Your Bowling”
- “Using End Marks”

**Exercise**

Add quotation marks where they are needed in the following sentences.

**Example 1.** Turn to the fourth chapter, “The Solar System.”

1. The band plays Hail to the Chief for the president.
2. Jack London’s To Build a Fire is the first story in this book.
3. Man on the Moon is Nova’s program tonight.
4. What’s New in Videos is a daily column in our newspaper.
5. Nikki Giovanni’s poem Train Rides is about the power of love.
6. The Magic Barrel by Bernard Malamud is a short story about Leo Finkle and a matchmaker.
7. Uncle Rick likes to watch Scientific American Frontiers; his favorite episode is Journey to Mars.
8. In 1999, Santana’s song Smooth was the longest running number-one single.
10. I enjoyed Mark Twain’s short story called The Notorious Jumping Frog of Calaveras County.
11. The test had a section on The Aftermath of the Civil War, the chapter we studied last week.
12. My mom always reads Dear Abby aloud at the breakfast table.
13. The school newspaper is printing Crystal Stream, my haiku.
14. Did you see the episode of Frontline called High Stakes in Cyberspace?
15. This article, Speed-Reading Made Easy, is interesting.
17. Love-Charm Song is one of the songs in Chippewa Music.
18. I’m writing about Denise Chávez’s story The Last of the Menu Girls.
19. Rodney worked all afternoon writing a song he titled Sunday Serenade.
20. This article, No Lockers: No Tardies, recommends that schools remove student lockers.
Quotation Marks Review

Review the rules on pages 364–370 of your textbook for information on using quotation marks with direct quotations, broken quotations, punctuation and end marks, dialogue, a quotation within a quotation, and titles of short works.

EXERCISE A  Add quotation marks, capital letters, punctuation, and end marks where they are needed in the following sentences.

Example 1.  Who said, “Money can’t buy happiness”?

1. Carlton asked his aunt what’s your secret recipe for oatmeal bread?
2. Try reading your essay aloud, Dennis said the teacher.
3. I enjoy reading Places To Go, Things To Do in the Sunday newspaper.
4. Ouch Thea exclaimed as she pulled a splinter from her finger.
5. Melanie said, Last night my dad told me, Laughter is the best medicine.
6. Today’s episode of Nature is called Yellowstone Otters.
7. I’ve decided to re-landscape the front yard said Mom, but I’ll need help.
8. Did you hear Trina, who is on the trampoline, shouting Look at me
9. Ron said, what’s that? Did someone say we need to bring a side dish to the picnic? I’ll make fruit salad.
10. In 1986, said Ms. Mendell, Li-Young Lee wrote his poem Persimmons

EXERCISE B  Add quotation marks where they are needed in the following sentences. When the speaker changes, draw a paragraph symbol (¶) to show where a new paragraph should begin.


[19] You are right, said Amber. [20] This is a wonderful way to learn more about tigers!
Apostrophes A

15n. To form the possessive case of a singular noun, add an apostrophe and an s.

EXAMPLES
- the sun’s rays
- James’s scooter
- the city’s mayor

15o. To form the possessive case of a plural noun that does not end in s, add an apostrophe and an s.

EXAMPLES
- people’s votes
- men’s shirts
- the children’s toys

15p. To form the possessive case of a plural noun ending in s, add only the apostrophe.

EXAMPLES
- the classes’ election
- the Petersons’ snowmobile

EXERCISE A Above each underlined noun, write the correct possessive form.

Example 1. four weeks’ supply

1. three doctors’ opinions
2. Mrs. King’s business weeks’
3. Chris’s bicycle
4. the mice’s favorite hiding place
5. in ten years’ time
6. the women’s locker room
7. the team’s beloved mascot
8. New Orleans’s jazz scene
9. two sisters’ secret
10. the Wilsons’ house

EXERCISE B In each sentence, underline the word that should be in the possessive case. Above the word, write its correct possessive form.

Example 1. The five winners’ photographs are on page one of the newsletter.

11. The Mount Vernon Chorus sang Jason’s favorite songs.
12. One student’s brother had a minor accident in that big blue car.
13. The Garcías’s new neighbor is Sandra Johnson.
14. The banjo with broken strings is Jennifer’s.
15. Carlotta’s voice was hoarse from cheering for the volleyball team.
16. The raindrops patter could be heard on the tin roof.
17. We brought a day’s supply of granola bars, water, and sandwiches.
18. The photographer won an award for that picture of the wolves’ den.
19. Do you know Carlos’s e-mail address?
20. This weekend’s homework is written on the chalkboard.
EXERCISE A  Above each pronoun, write the correct possessive form. If a pronoun is already correct, write C.

Examples 1. somebody lost puppy
2. its new paint
3. her money
4. your skates
5. neither basketball
6. someone science book
7. anybody opportunity
8. The car is theirs.
9. no one first choice
10. Those books are yours.

EXERCISE B  In the following paragraph, underline each possessive personal pronoun and each indefinite pronoun. Then, above each indefinite pronoun, write the correct possessive form.

Example  [1] Someone trash is another person’s treasure, in my opinion.

[11] Everybody unwanted items can bring in a few coins at a garage sale. [12] When my family organized our garage sale, everybody attention was devoted to the project. [13] One night, someone dreams even focused on our garage sale! [14] We spent several days writing down anyone ideas. [15] We finally decided to make a list of everyone items for sale. [16] Soon, a friendly disagreement occurred when two different people thought the iron was theirs. [17] Dad claimed it was his, but Tanya was sure it was hers. [18] In the end, of course, no one possessions made him or her rich. [19] We set out everybody items together during the garage sale and then equally divided the profit. [20] We were all quite happy with our success.
Apostrophes C

15n. To form the possessive case of a singular noun, add an apostrophe and an s.
15o. To form the possessive case of a plural noun that does not end in s, add an apostrophe and an s.
15p. To form the possessive case of a plural noun ending in s, add only the apostrophe.

EXAMPLES  
dog’s bark  the oxen’s food  four brothers’ band

Exercise  In each of the following sentences, underline the noun that needs an apostrophe or an apostrophe and an s. Then, above the underlined word, write the correct possessive form.

Example 1. Which of Grimm fairy tales should I read tonight?
1. Jacob Grimm was Wilhelm older brother.
2. Only thirteen months time separated their births in 1785 and 1786.
3. The brothers enjoyed storytellers tales.
4. At that time, storytellers held audiences attention by telling stories aloud.
5. The brothers goal was to write down these stories.
6. They carefully recorded the folk tales content.
7. The Grimms notes for their work have been studied by other storytellers.
8. Each written story words were very close to the original, spoken version.
9. Have you read the story of Rapunzel long hair?
10. Do you know about Snow White friends, the seven dwarfs?
11. One of my sister favorites is the story of Hansel and Gretel.
12. She particularly enjoys hearing about the old woman cottage.
13. The cottages walls were made of gingerbread.
14. Many people favorite story is the tale of Cinderella.
15. Other stories appeal lies in their funny and fantastic scenes.
16. For example, consider Rumpelstiltskin promise to turn straw into gold.
17. Tom Thumb tiny size makes him another interesting character.
18. Some readers favorite stories are those that resemble their own lives.
19. A reader favorite story may present life as he or she wishes it were.
20. These fairy tales are certainly a beloved part of children literature.
Apostrophes D

**Exercise A**

On the lines provided, write the contraction for each set of words.

**Example 1.** should not ____________ shouldn’t

1. where is ________________
2. we are ________________
3. they will ________________
4. has not ________________
5. she is ________________
6. could not ________________
7. you will ________________
8. does not ________________
9. might have ________________
10. they are ________________

**Exercise B**

The following sentences have errors in the use of apostrophes in contractions. An apostrophe may be missing or in the wrong place. Underline each error. Then, above the error, write the contraction correctly.

**Example 1.** They’ve been reading quietly in their room.

11. There’s a hobby you may find interesting.
12. It’s called in-line skating.
13. Why haven’t I heard about it?
14. Here is a magazine article from October 99’.
15. You’ll have to finish reading it this afternoon.
16. I promised to meet Jessie tomorrow morning at eight o’clock and lend it to her.
17. Let’s all go in-line skating this weekend!
18. I know we don’t have skates yet.
19. Ben and Phoebe said they’re not using theirs and will lend them to us.
20. I think we’ll find in-line skating difficult but fun.
Apostrophes E

**EXERCISE A** Above each underlined item in the following sentences, write the item in its plural form.

**Example 1.** Did you get any A’s on your progress report?

1. Count the yes and the no.
2. How many n and e are in the word Tennessee?
3. My telephone number has two 2 and two 8.
5. There are too many or and but in that paragraph.
6. Be sure to write clearly, so people can tell your m and n apart.
7. The l in the word parallel are parallel to each other.
8. Don’t forget to use double s and p in the word Mississippi.
9. All the 4, 5, and 6 are blurred.
10. The why and wherfore will be covered later.

**EXERCISE B** The following letter contains errors in apostrophes in plurals. Insert apostrophes where they are needed, and draw a line through the apostrophes that are not needed.

**Example** [1] Your capital Y’s look like lowercase r’s in these note’s to Juan.

Dear Juan,

[11] I’m writing to tell you why 7s are lucky! [12] One of the nearby theaters’ had a contest.

[13] How many bean’s were in the jar? [14] It’s hard to tell by looking, but I decided to try-no ifs, ands, or buts about it. [15] My guess was 7,777, which is a lot of 7s. [16] Of all the guesses’ submitted, mine won! [17] The prize was, as you might guess, seven movie ticket’s. [18] Are you free to go to the movies’ with me? [19] Get ready for more 7s’: The first movie is on July 7 at 7:00 PM.

[20] Maybe next time 9s will be lucky, and I’ll win nine ticket’s!

Your friend,

Emily
Apostrophes F

Review the rules on pages 372–379 of your textbook for information on using apostrophes with singular nouns, plural nouns that do not end in s, plural nouns that do end in s, some indefinite pronouns, contractions, and the plurals of letters, numerals, symbols, and words referred to as words.

**EXAMPLES**

- book’s cover
- children’s toys
- students’ holiday
- someone’s bicycle
- can’t
- several l’s
- six s’s
- three $’s
- too many very’s

**EXERCISE A** For each of the following sentences, add apostrophes where needed. Cross out apostrophes that are not needed.

**Example 1.** Who chooses hurricanes’ names?

1. One person doesn’t choose a hurricanes name.
2. They’re chosen by scientists’ from all over the world.
3. Who’s idea was it to give hurricanes peoples names?
4. Probably its an international groups idea.
5. There’s a list of names’ for each coast.
6. As and Bs begin the names of the first hurricane’s of each season.
7. Hurricane Andrew was scientists choice of name for a hurricane in 1992.
8. I don’t think Id want that hurricane to have the same name as I have.
9. Andrews costly destruction caused many people to see $’s in their heads!
10. The damage caused by Andrew cost around fifteen billion dollar’s—there are a lot of 0’s in that number!

**EXERCISE B** For each of the following sentences, add apostrophes where needed. Cross out apostrophes that are not needed. If a sentence is already correct, write **C** after the sentence.

**Example 1.** How many e’s are in that girl’s name?

11. The shells’ of these pecan’s are hard to crack.
12. They’ll be pleased that you accepted their invitation.
13. I don’t usually care for soup, but Thereseas chicken soup is irresistible!
14. If you don’t use an apostrophe when referring to several as, the word looks like as.
15. In her class notes, Norma writes &s instead of ands.
Hyphens

15u. Use a hyphen to divide a word at the end of a line.

INCORRECT When the school year ends each summer, I am always ready for a v—
acation. By the end of summer, I'm ready for school again.

CORRECT When the school year ends each summer, I am always ready for a vaca—
tion. By the end of summer, I'm ready for school again.

15v. Use a hyphen with compound numbers from twenty-one to ninety-nine and with fractions used as modifiers.

EXAMPLES twenty-seven votes two-thirds majority

15w. Use a hyphen with the prefixes ex–, self–, all–, and great– and with the suffixes –elect and –free.

EXAMPLES ex-player self-cleaning wheat-free

Exercise A On the line following each word, write the word with a hyphen added to show how you would divide the word at the end of a line. If the word cannot be divided, write DND for do not divide.

Examples 1. luggage lug-gage

2. tiny DND

1. rocky
2. railroad
3. track
4. station
5. through
6. discount
7. jumping
8. seat
9. overnight
10. ticket

Exercise B In the items below, cross out each number and write above it the spelled-out version. Cross out each word that needs a hyphen, and write above it the correctly hyphenated word.

Examples 1. twenty-five

2. self-employed

3. a seven-eighths response rate

11. sugarfree gelatin
12. a three fourths success rate
13. 39 years
14. ex favorite dessert
15. great-grandfather clock
16. 52 points
17. governor elect of Montana
18. self-motivated student
19. all female soccer team
20. one third minority
Parentheses, Brackets, and Dashes

**EXERCISE A** Add parentheses and brackets where they are needed in the following sentences.

**Examples 1.** Shoshanna (Shanna) and I attended the outing together.

2. Shanna said, “Isn’t this [the picnic] as much fun as I said it would be?”

1. Read the article the one on page 5 about keeping dogs as pets.
2. Our school’s mascot that’s Anne’s Newfoundland dog won an award for bravery.
3. The dog otherwise known as Newfie once saved a boy from drowning.
4. Anne said, “Newfie Anne’s dog has always loved people.”
5. We were paddling a canoe it feels as if it happened yesterday the day of our big outing.
6. Nigel fell overboard everyone was scared and shouted for help.
7. Of everyone children, adults, and pets who was there, only our mascot leapt in to save Nigel.
8. Afterward Nigel said, “He Newfie seemed to come out of nowhere!”
9. Newfie happily chewed on his award a rawhide chew toy while Nigel rested.
10. Both of them Nigel and Newfie are doing well.

**EXERCISE B** In the following sentences, draw a caret (^) to show where a dash is needed. Then, write the dash above the caret.

**Example 1.** Would you like my opinion I know you didn’t ask for it about a gift?

11. We found the perfect gift Mother will love it to give her on her birthday.
12. I can’t believe even though I’ve seen it that we actually found it.
13. Aren’t you surprised I know I am I thought of it first?
14. Let’s not tell Dad he won’t believe it anyway until she opens the box.
15. Can you keep a secret it’s hard to do, I know until next Monday?
EXERCISE Add underlining and quotation marks as needed in the following sentences.

Example 1. The poem "My Last Duchess" is one of my favorites by Browning.

1. Many Walt Disney films, such as Bambi and The Jungle Book, are back again.
2. Sometimes I listen to Ravel’s famous Boléro when I study.
3. Aunt Fran sent our family a subscription to the magazine Birds and Blooms.
4. Dad suggested, Read the article called Best Buys in Bicycle Helmets.
5. Byron’s long poem titled Don Juan fills an entire book!
6. Here’s my copy of Anne of Green Gables, said Mother.
7. USA Today covers the news of all fifty states.
8. Did Columbus sail on the Santa María or on another ship? asked Larry.
9. Everybody Loves Raymond was Uncle Emil’s favorite television series.
10. Kelly exclaimed, Look, that hockey game we saw is on the cover of Sports Illustrated!
11. Listen to this recording of The Rite of Spring.
12. When I was a child, said Aunt Minnie, the U.S. flag had forty-eight stars.
13. The episode showing tonight is Crisis in Central City.
14. His article, How to Excel in Soccer, will be published soon.
15. Who said, It’s one thing to build castles in the air; it’s another thing to live in them?
16. One third of my cousin’s shelf is filled with Seventeen magazines.
17. I need two more weeks, she said, to finish reading them all.
18. Poems such as Edward Lear’s The Owl and the Pussycat are nonsense poems.
19. When I return The Yearling, I’ll owe the library about twenty-five cents.
EXERCISE A  On the lines provided, rewrite the phrases in the possessive case, inserting apostrophes as needed.

Example 1. the meeting of the teachers

1. the strategy of the opponent
2. the fears of the men
3. the tracks of the deer
4. the trips of the family
5. the victories of the candidates
6. the giggles of the children
7. the lines of the poem
8. the shouts of the girls
9. the worries of the parents
10. the population of Alaska

EXERCISE B  Insert apostrophes where they are needed in the following paragraphs. Delete any apostrophes that are incorrectly placed.

Example [1] I'm glad we're working together on our report's, Chen.

[11] “I'm sure we'll make As on our report’s!” said Chen. [12] “We're sure to hear ohs and ahs from the class, too.”

[13] “You're right,” agreed Latitia. [14] “I'll bet our scores will be in the 90s. [15] I'm going to tell about an article I read. [16] It's about a twelve-year-old boy who climbed Mount McKinley.”

[17] Chen asked, “Isn't Mount McKinley North America's highest mountain?”

[18] “That's right. Its over 20,000 feet high! There are a lot of 0s in that number.”

[19] “My papers about weight lifting,” Chen responded. [20] “Of our two papers topics, your’s is much more interesting, Latitia—no maybe’s about it!”
Review C: Hyphens, Parentheses, Brackets, and Dashes

**EXERCISE A**  On the line following each word, write the word with a hyphen added to show how you would divide the word at the end of a line. If the word cannot be divided, write **DND** for **do not divide**.

**Examples**

1. telephone — tele-phone
2. sticky — **DND**
3. pencil
4. shiny
5. principal
6. things
7. flagpole
8. weary
9. conduct
10. enough

**EXERCISE B**  Add parentheses, brackets, or dashes to each sentence, as needed. Draw a caret (^) to show where a dash belongs, and then write the dash above the caret.

**Examples**

1. The Olympics (the winter games) are happening this week.
2. Dad said, “They [the athletes] are inspiring!”
3. Where has the television schedule the guide you bought yesterday been placed?
4. Our entire family likes to watch who doesn’t? the Olympics.
5. Do we have a blank videotape I hope so to record our favorite events?
6. Maddie commented, “Even Rex and Zippy our dog and kitten seem to like the competition.”
7. Do you think they understand I’m not sure if I always do what’s going on?
8. Rex stares with great concentration it’s so cute at the ice-skating events.
9. My dad’s favorite event and mine, too is speed skating.
10. Mom said, “My favorite event alpine skiing is scheduled for tomorrow.”
11. Addie Sue wants to join us that is, if you agree to watch tomorrow night’s games.
12. Help me move this table I know it’s heavy so we can put the television on it.
13. I have always dreamed of winning believe it or not an Olympic medal.
EXERCISE A  Add underlining, quotation marks, apostrophes, and parentheses where needed in the following dialogue. Draw a paragraph symbol (¶) to show where a new paragraph should begin.

Example [1] My dad, Jamal (our neighbor), and I were talking about cartoons.


EXERCISE B  Add hyphens, brackets, and dashes where needed in the following sentences.

Example 1. The critic wrote, “It [Songbirds: A Photographic Journey] is stunning!”

11. Troy’s outstanding skills at soccer are self-taught.
12. The gift I hope you like it is outside on the lawn.
13. I agree with Abrams when he writes, “They the waters of the Caribbean are a scuba diver’s dream.”
14. The all amateur cast performed with unusual talent.
15. The juice there is orange or cranberry is in the refrigerator.
16. Jen said, “Take this a lantern and hang it from that high branch.”
17. Booker was elected class treasurer by a four-fifths majority.
18. I’ve collected twenty-five pounds of aluminum cans for the recycling bin at school.
19. I saw my favorite actress yes, this is a true story in Manhattan yesterday!
20. If you divide mistletoe at the end of a line, divide it like this: mistletoe.
EXERCISE A  In each of the following sentences, determine whether the underlined word is misspelled. If it is misspelled, write the correctly spelled word above it. If the word is already correct, write C above it.

Example 1. One of my hobbies is studying bats.
1. Did you watch the documentry about bats?
2. There are many difrrent kinds of bats.
3. One expert said that photos make bats look vicious.
4. If the bat was caged, it probably was scared.
5. A scientist’s laboratory isn’t a bat’s favorite roosting place!
6. Bats prefer dark, peaceful shelters such as caves.
7. They come out after sunset to search for insects.
8. People livin in cities rarely, if ever, see bats.
9. You can, however, see bats at some state parks.
10. Another option is to watch programs on television.

EXERCISE B  Divide each of the following words into syllables by drawing lines between the syllables. Use a dictionary if necessary.

Example 1. experiment
11. atrocious 16. insects
12. frightened 17. nighttime
13. habitat 18. wingspan
14. research 19. flying
15. scientist 20. beautiful
EXERCISE A

Above the underlined word in each of the following sentences, rewrite the word correctly if it is misspelled. If the word is already spelled correctly, write C above it. Use a dictionary if necessary.

**Example 1.** Can your eyes decei ve you?

1. Jason is one of my nieghbors.
2. Jason’s chief interest is magic tricks.
3. It all began when he recie ved a book for his birthday.
4. Would you believe that it was about famous magicians?
5. There’s a brief story about Harry Blackstone, Jr.
6. In one mischievous trick, he seemed to turn his wife into a tiger!
7. The audience was releived when she came out for a bow.
8. Some tricks are called “sleig hts of hand.”
9. Jason tried to hide eight scarves in his sleeve.
10. He either lost one or miscounted.

EXERCISE B

For each incomplete word in the following paragraph, add the letters ie or ei so that the word is spelled correctly.

**Example [1]** Here is the rec ei pt for your groceries, Mr. Liu.

Here’s something to do in your [11] l sure time. Maybe you and a [12] fr ie nd can start a service. It is many people’s [13] bel ie f that assisting others is a rewarding [14] exper ie nce. Offer to take an elderly [15] n ie ghbor shopping. In the store, you may be able to reach items at a greater [16] h ie ght than an elderly person can. You can also help this person by carrying all items of heavy [17] w ie gh t. [18] S ie ze this opportunity to help an older person relax.

Although your shopping trips may be [19] br ie f, let’s hope this idea will [20] y ie ld success!
Words with –cede, –ceed, and –sede

EXERCISE A
Underline the correctly spelled word in parentheses in each of the following sentences.

Example 1. Yes, I (conceed, concede) that your intentions were good.

1. Shantel’s goal is to (exsede, exceed) her teachers’ expectations.
2. Training typically (anteceeds, antecedes) a promotion.
3. In a good relationship, your needs do not always (supersed, superseed) the other person’s.
4. After a five-minute review, we will (proceed, proce) to take the test.
5. Lawyers (intercede, interceed) with the judge for their clients.
6. I always knew you would (succeed, succede) in your goal of forming a band.
7. If you no longer want to be a member, you may (secede, sesede) from the club.
8. Later, the tide will (rseede, recede).
9. The (prosedes, proceeds) from each sale will go to the church’s soup kitchen.
10. We always meet or (exceed, exsede) our sales quota.

EXERCISE B
Above the underlined word in each of the following sentences, rewrite the word correctly if it is misspelled. If the word is already spelled correctly, write C above it.

Example 1. Didn’t disagreements over slavery, tariffs, and states’ rights precede the American Civil War?

11. From 1860 to 1861, eleven states announced that they would secede from the Union.
12. President Lincoln would not accede to the secession.
13. Jefferson Davis decided to intercede on behalf of the South.
14. The eleven Southern states would proseceed to elect Davis their president.
15. Over the next four years, the lines of battle would advance and recede numerous times.
16. The great destruction caused by the war would surely exceed the expectations of many.
17. As you know, these Southern states did not succeed in their withdrawal from the Union.
18. By the end of the war, the goals of the North would supersede the desires of the South.
19. In 1865, the South was finally forced to concede victory to the North.
20. The North’s victory was decreed on April 26, 1865; the Southern states would not secede.
Prefixes

**EXERCISE A** For each of the following items, add the prefix given to form a new word. Write the new word on the line provided.

**Example 1.** over + run = __________ __________

1. in + direct = __________
2. dis + locate = __________
3. re + open = __________
4. il + legal = __________
5. un + safe = __________
6. over + take = __________
7. un + natural = __________
8. mis + state = __________
9. im + possible = __________
10. dis + service = __________

**EXERCISE B** On the line in each of the following sentences, rewrite the prefix and word in parentheses as a single word.

**Example 1.** (un + pack) Behruz had to __________ __________ his suitcase.

11. (re + wind) Please __________ __________ the videotape.
12. (over + cooking) Aunt Manuela was upset about __________ __________ the stew.
13. (Dis + respect) __________ __________ is an attitude I cannot tolerate.
14. (mis + spell) Did I __________ __________ your name on the invitation?
15. (in + visible) Helga wrote a story about an __________ __________ woman.
16. (dis + contented) Francine wondered why the baby seemed so __________ __________ today.
17. (un + nerved) The loud, cheering crowd __________ __________ the timid gymnast.
18. (over + estimated) Philip __________ __________ the cost of the old coin he found.
19. (re + cycle) Please stack the newspapers over there; I __________ __________ them.
20. (un + wind) Bettina could not __________ __________ the tangled fishing line.
### Suffixes A

16d. When adding the suffix –ness or –ly to a word, do not change the spelling of the word itself.

**Examples**

kind + ness = **kindness**  
total + ly = **totally**

Exception: For most words that end in **y**, change the **y** to **i** before –ly or –ness.

**Examples**

day + ly = **daily**  
lonely + ness = **loneliness**

---

### Exercise A

For each of the following items, add the suffix given to form a new word. Write the word on the line provided.

**Example 1.** silly + ness = **silliness**

1. beautiful + ly = _________  
2. routine + ly = _________  
3. busy + ness = _________  
4. main + ly = _________  
5. neat + ness = _________
6. tardy + ness = _________  
7. urgent + ly = _________  
8. forgetful + ly = _________  
9. scary + ness = _________  
10. shy + ness = _________

---

### Exercise B

In the following paragraph, add the suffix to the word given in parentheses to make a single word. Write the new word on the line provided.

**Example [1]** I have _________ (avid + ly) read all of Edgar Allan Poe’s stories.

Suffixes B

16e. Drop the final silent e before adding a suffix beginning with a vowel.

**EXAMPLES**

like + able = likable 

skate + ing = skating

Exception: Keep the silent e in words ending in ce and ge before a suffix beginning with a or o.

**EXAMPLES**

notice + able = noticeable 

courage + ous = courageous

16f. Keep the final silent e before adding a suffix that begins with a consonant.

**EXAMPLES**

care + ful = careful 

state + ly = stately

**EXCEPTIONS**

argue + ment = argument 

ture + ly = truly

**EXERCISE A**

For each of the following words, add the suffix given to form a new word. Write the new word on the line provided.

**Example 1.** share + ing = sharing

1. shake + er = 

6. sore + ly =

2. exterminate + or =

7. broke + en =

3. sedate + ly =

8. freeze + ing =

4. admire + able =

9. retire + ment =

5. argue + ing =

10. advantage + ous =

**EXERCISE B**

Cross out each misspelled word in the following paragraph. Above the word, rewrite it correctly. Hint: Some sentences contain more than one misspelled word.

**Example [1]** Gazing at the photos, I thought about our camping trip.

11. The remotness of our camping site did not stop us. 12. We would not give in to a little discouragement. 13. The uniqueness of this opportunity appealed to us, and we welcomed it. 14. We had packed all the camping gear that had been stored in our basements, including tents, shovels, an inflatable mattress, and a few crates of supplies such as ropes, matches, and canned food.

15. The trip was so amazing, we’re already planning the next camping trip.
Suffixes C

For words ending in \( y \) preceded by a consonant, change the \( y \) to \( i \) before any suffix that does not begin with \( i \).

**EXAMPLES**

- happy + ness = happiness
- carry + er = carrier

Words ending in \( y \) preceded by a vowel generally do not change their spellings before a suffix.

**EXAMPLES**

- play + ed = played
- array + ing = arraying

**EXCEPTIONS**

- lay + ed = laid
- pay + ed = paid

**EXERCISE A**

For each of the following words, add the suffix given to form a new word. Write the new word on the line provided.

**Example 1.** hairy + ness = ____________

1. scary + ness = ____________
2. marry + ing = ____________
3. coy + ness = ____________
4. inlay + ed = ____________
5. dirty + ness = ____________
6. contrary + ness = ____________
7. scurry + ing = ____________
8. employ + able = ____________
9. spray + ing = ____________
10. deploy + able = ____________

**EXERCISE B**

Cross out each misspelled word in the following sentences. Then, above the word, write it correctly. Hint: Proper nouns are spelled correctly.

**Example 1.** Because of the sofa’s heavyness, we’ll need three people to lift it.

11. Who is that mysteryous stranger?
12. The children’s enjoiment of his story pleased Miguel.
13. Janesha sayed that she’d be here by noon.
14. Luther is repaing me by teaching me how to pitch a knuckle ball.
15. Have you ever read funnyer poems than Shel Silverstein’s?
16. Alfred plaied the antique violin beautifully.
17. Kendra is triing to memorize her lines for the play.
18. “The winds are varyable,” stated the weather announcer.
19. Is Tara envyous of Tina’s awards?
20. We will be compliing with the fire code by placing fire extinguishers in the building.
Suffixes D

**16h.** Double the final consonant before adding –ing, –ed, –er, or –est to a one-syllable word that ends in a single consonant preceded by a single vowel.

Do not double the final consonant in words ending in w or x.

**Examples**
- swim + ing = swimming
- chop + ed = chopped
- fax + ed = faxed

For one-syllable words ending in a single consonant that is not preceded by a single vowel and for most words of more than one syllable, do not double the consonant before adding –ing, –ed, –er, or –est.

**Examples**
- roam + ing = roaming
- retain + er = retainer

**Exercise A** For each of the following words, add the suffix given to form a new word. Write the new word on the line provided.

**Example** 1. tan + ing = tanning

1. win + er = ____________  6. repair + ed = ____________
2. fast + est = ____________  7. mop + ing = ____________
3. drum + er = ____________  8. run + er = ____________
4. mat + ed = ____________  9. tow + ed = ____________
5. mold + ing = ____________  10. fit + est = ____________

**Exercise B** In each of the following sentences, underline the correct spelling of the word in parentheses.

**Example** 1. We are (traping, trapping) spiders to study in science class.

11. A mirror with a carved wooden frame was (centered, centered) over the fireplace.

12. I have (maped, mapped) out the route to the city lake.

13. What is a (gildded, gilded) cage, anyway?

14. Which is more (relaxing, relaxxing), reading or watching TV?

15. “Thank you for (treatting, treating) us to grape juice,” Felix said.

16. When I gently (petted, peted) the kitten, she began to purr.

17. I think the lawn (mower, mowwer) is in the toolshed.

18. “Is this a (snaping, snapping) turtle?” asked Wanda.

19. At the market, I selected the (redest, reddest) apples from the display.

20. Mindy, (knitting, knitting) a sweater, sat before the fireplace.
EXERCISE A  In each of the following sentences, underline the correct spelling of the word in parentheses.

Example 1.  Jai alai, which is (pronounced, pronounced) “hi u li,” means “merry festival.”

This (fascinating, fascinating) handball game is played in a three-walled court. The court is approximately (approximately, approximately) fifty-three meters long by fifteen meters wide, and the three walls are at least twelve meters high. (Spectators, Spectators) may watch the (excitement, excitement) of the game from bleachers at the fourth side of the court, which is open. On the court, players catch and throw a hard rubber ball with long, (curved, curved) wicker scoops that are strapped (straped, strapped) to one arm. One player begins by serving (serveing) the ball against the front wall so that the ball lands in a designated serving zone. (Quickly, Quickly), before the ball touches the floor more than once, the opponent catches and throws the ball back at the wall in one continuous motion. A (truly, truly) (envyable, enviable) return would be to bounce the ball off the front wall with such speed and spin that the opposition cannot return it and loses the point.

EXERCISE B  Cross out each misspelled word in the following sentences. Then, above the word, write it correctly.

Example 1.  Last weekend, we camped out in the backyard.

11.  The inventiveness of Jerry’s idea appealed to me.
12.  Before dark, we worked on the placement of the tent.
13.  Next, using a ring of rocks and some logs, Jerry’s father built a fire for us.
14.  We finished eating and cleaned up the site.
15.  Then we sat beneath the beautiful moon and played our guitars.
**EXERCISE A**
Write the plurals of the following nouns on the lines provided.

**Example 1.**

1. branch  
2. crayon  
3. monkey  
4. mix  
5. country  
6. buzz  
7. desk  
8. lady  
9. turkey  
10. crush  

**EXERCISE B**
Cross out each misspelled word in the following sentences. Then, above the word, write it correctly. If a sentence is already correct, write C on the line provided.

**Example 1.**
Samantha’s hobbies have always included drawing and painting.

11. Samantha likes to paint old churches.
12. She uses delicate brush strokes to create realistic details.
13. Some of her paintinges have a dark, gothic tone.
14. For instance, she painted angels on the roof of one church.
15. She has also developed wayies of creating a soft, peaceful tone.
16. Creating beautiful works, she said, helps relieve her worrys and stress.
17. She uses different brushes to achieve different effects.
18. She also arranges the draperyes in her studio so that the perfect amount of light enters.
19. Samantha’s future involves no uncertaintys or guesses.
20. She plans to take art courses in college and later open a gallery.
Plurals of Nouns B

16i. Observe the following rules for spelling the plurals of nouns.

(5) Form the plurals of most nouns ending in f by adding –s. The plural form of some nouns ending in f or fe is formed by changing the f to v and adding –es.

(6) Form the plurals of nouns ending in o preceded by a vowel by adding –s.

(7) The plural form of many nouns ending in o preceded by a consonant is formed by adding –es.

EXAMPLES belief—beliefs wolf—wolves video—videos fiasco—fiascos

Exercise A  Write the plurals of the following nouns on the lines provided.

Example 1. gulf ______ guls

1. elf ____________ 6. potato ____________
2. rodeo ____________ 7. calf ____________
3. studio ____________ 8. igloo ____________
4. leaf ____________ 9. wife ____________
5. roof ____________ 10. piano ____________

Exercise B  In each of the following sentences, underline the correct spelling of the word in parentheses.

Example 1. Several (chefs, cheves) worked to prepare a meal for the sailors.

11. One chef chopped several (tomatoes, tomatos) for a stew.
12. She then carefully cleaned and stored away the sharp (knifes, knives).
13. The crew of the submarine prided (themselves, themselfs) on running a tight ship.
14. Each sailor stores his or her clothes on the assigned (shelfs, shelves).
15. (Torpedos, Torpedoes) can be detonated by impact and by sound.
16. A lighthouse sat atop the (bluffs, bluves) overlooking the sea.
17. Some of the men and women studied training (videos, videos).
18. Others discussed some beautiful coral (reefs, reeves) they had seen recently.
19. Some of our national (heros, heroes) have served aboard submarines.
20. Several battery-operated (radioes, radios) were given to the sailors.
EXERCISE A

Write the plurals of the following nouns on the lines provided.

Example 1. sergeant-at-arms

1. child
2. mother-in-law
3. bookcase
4. man
5. backpack

6. ox
7. seashell
8. rack of lamb
9. love seat
10. woman

EXERCISE B

Cross out each incorrect plural in the following sentences. Then, above the error, write the correct plural. If a sentence is already correct, write C on the line provided.

Example 1. The restaurant had several coats rack behind the reservations desk.

11. The childs will eat earlier in the evening than the adults.
12. I really enjoy spending time with my two brother-in-laws.
13. The three mouses headed in three different directions when the cat showed up.
14. The dentist said that I have no cavities in my tooths.
15. Use one of the step stools to reach the top shelf.
16. Several videos game are on sale at the computer store.
17. Put the baseballs in this bag, and I'll grab some bats.
18. All editor in chiefs will attend a meeting in June.
19. I do not have a sister, but I have three wonderful sisters-in-law.
20. How many gooses are in a gaggle?
EXERCISE A  Write the plurals of the following items on the lines provided.

Example 1.  *hurrah* __*hurrah’s*

1. 1950 ____________
2. Z ____________
3. * ____________
4. *goodbye* ____________
5. *Vietnamese* ____________
6. # ____________
7. sheep ____________
8. *thank you* ____________
9. Sioux ____________
10. moose ____________

EXERCISE B  Above the underlined item in each sentence, write the item’s plural form. If the plural form is the same as the singular, write C.

Examples 1. I heard several *ah* as the magician pulled a dove out of a hat.
   2. From the tracks, I knew several *deer* had passed by.

11. I gasped when I saw how many *0* were on the price tag.
12. You have accidentally typed two *the* in a row in this sentence.
13. When do the *salmon* swim upstream?
14. The play takes place sometime in the late *1600*.
15. Are *@* used in e-mail addresses?
16. Several *sheep* are grazing in the farmyard.
17. Some people draw a line through their *Z*.
18. They do this to distinguish them from *Z*.
19. When giving a speech, try to eliminate all *um*.
20. The *Sioux* make their home in the northern United States and southern Canada.
EXERCISE A  Write the plurals of the following items on the lines provided.

Example 1. hero    heroes

1. table
2. watch
3. cranberry
4. journey
5. belief
6. sheaf
7. patio
8. veto
9. soprano
10. woman

11. editor in chief
12. spacecraft
13. salmon
14. X
15. @
16. and
17. four-wheeler
18. knife
19. wax
20. moss

EXERCISE B  Cross out each incorrect plural in the following sentences. Then, above the word, write it correctly.

Example 1 [1] Did you see Alvin’s sketch of the wolves with their two cubs?

[21] I don’t know any other fourteen-years-old who can draw as well as Alvin. [22] He has several sketchesbook full of watercolors and pen-and-ink drawings. [23] His mooses and oxen are especially realistic, but I prefer his landscapes and seascapes. [24] Alvin also makes drawings using nothing but #s and &’s. [25] If I could draw as well as Alvin does, I’d spend my weekends sitting on park benches with a sketch pad in my hand.
EXERCISE For each sentence below, underline the word or words in parentheses that correctly complete the sentence.

Examples 1. Would you (advice, advise) me to buy this jacket?

2. Yes, take my (advice, advise) and buy it.

1. How did your test score (affect, effect) your final grade?

2. I (already, all ready) have an A for the semester!

3. Will you follow Dwayne’s (advice, advise) about your project?

4. I was (already, all ready) to buy it, but then I saw another one.


6. If we (alter, altar) the collar, the shirt will look much better.

7. Did Ms. Rubio (advice, advise) you to take cheerleading?

8. She needs us (altogether, all together) for daily practice.

9. What were the (affects, effects) of the war with Iraq?

10. Dad, is it (allright, all right) that I told Mr. Valdez you’d bring snacks to the open house?

11. Patrick squeezed the hand (brake, break) on his bicycle to slow down.

12. I hope that our older cat will (accept, except) the two new kittens.

13. It’s (altogether, all together) too silly for me!

14. Do you need more time, or are you (already, all ready)?

15. Marguerite has finished all of her homework (accept, except) the history questions.

16. My mom said it’s (allright, all right) if you come over after school.

17. Would you place these candles on the (alter, altar) please?

18. I packed the crystal vase in layers of bubble wrap so it would not (brake, break).

19. I like all of these hats (accept, except) the one with orange flowers on it.

20. Edwina’s kind note had a positive (affect, effect) on my mood today.
EXERCISE A Underline the word in parentheses that correctly completes each sentence.

Example 1. Three new (councilors, counselors) were elected to the city council.
1. Our computer (coarse, course) sometimes baffles me.
2. You know what a spreadsheet is, of (coarse, course).
3. Joyce is a respected member of the student (council, counsel).
4. I’m writing about Washington, the (capital, capitol) of the United States.
5. After college, I plan to work as a student (counselor, counselor) at a middle school.
6. Mom invited me to help her (choose, chose) new curtains for the family room.
7. When I think of the (desert, dessert), I think of sand, camels, and hot sun.
8. The Colorado (capital, capitol) has a gold dome.
9. I decided to (complement, compliment) Antonia on the success of her party.
10. I used soft (cloths, clothes) to clean the TV screen and porcelain figurines.

EXERCISE B Choose words from the list at the top of the page to complete each sentence correctly.

Example 1. Would you like strawberry yogurt for dessert?
11. I organize the ____________ in my closet by color and season.
12. She thinks this fabric is too ____________ for a prom dress.
13. I knew you would ____________ me in my time of crisis.
14. Harvey’s deep green sweater ____________ his green eyes.
15. The town’s planning committee, ten ____________ in all, met last night.
16. At the plant nursery yesterday, I ____________ several potted plants for my room.
17. What city is the ____________ of your state?
18. An oasis is a welcome sight to any ____________ traveler.
19. Instead of criticizing failures, Mr. and Ms. Kent ____________ us on our successes.
20. Kaveh’s favorite ____________ this year is Spanish.
EXERCISE A  Underline the word in parentheses that correctly completes each sentence.

Example 1.  (Lead, Led)-based paint can be unsafe.

1. Look at that (peace, piece) of material on the shelf.
2. Miranda, did you (hear, here) about the test?
3. I think (its, it’s) warm enough outside to go swimming!
4. Luis bought a special key rack so that he wouldn’t (loose, lose) his keys.
5. The trainer expertly (lead, led) the horse along the path.
6. We will dress (formally, formerly) for the dance.
7. In the mall, a woman (passed, past) out perfume samples.
8. The seven-year-old wiggled his (loose, lose) tooth.
9. This plant is admired for (its, it’s) large red blossoms.
10. Can you (lead, led) me to the picnic spot you found?

EXERCISE B  In each of the following sentences, underline the word in parentheses that correctly completes the sentence. Then, write a new sentence using the other word correctly.

Example 1.  Instead of dwelling on the (passed, past), I dream about the future.

I am so happy I passed the spelling test!

11. Have you found the missing (peace, piece) of that model train? _____________________________

12. This new restaurant was (formally, formerly) a dry cleaner’s store. _____________________________

13.  (Lead, Led) is a chemical often used in batteries. _____________________________

14.  This tree shed (its, it’s) leaves later than the others did. _____________________________

15.  If you move your bed over (hear, here), you’ll have more floor space. _____________________________
EXERCISE A  Underline the word in parentheses that correctly completes each sentence.

**Example 1.** Do you want (plain, plane) yogurt or flavored yogurt for breakfast?

1. Your project is not (quiet, quite) completed.
2. You’ve already (shone, shown) me how to work the math problem.
3. For her birthday, I gave Leigh a box of (stationary, stationery).
4. Who is the new student sitting alone over (their, there, they’re)?
5. Grandma always says, “It’s as (plain, plane) as the nose on your face!”
6. First, practice dribbling, and (than, then) do some layups.
7. Try to be as (quiet, quite) as a mouse.
8. The (principal, principle) of my school likes to say he is our pal.
9. Uncle Henry uses a hammer and a (plain, plane) in his carpentry jobs.
10. The lights in the harbor (shone, shown) brightly.

EXERCISE B  Choose words from the list at the top of the page to complete each sentence.

**Example 1.** The Campbells had _______ house repainted.

11. We were _____________ how to sort the glass for recycling.
12. This box of books is _____________ heavy.
13. Ruben saw the Statue of Liberty from the window of the _____________.
14. Our teacher asked us to be _____________.
15. Shirley says that the golden rule is a good _____________ by which to live.
16. Ask Aunt Fern and Uncle Dale if _____________ going to the game with us.
17. Is our team ranked higher _____________ our rival’s?
18. Bison once roamed this _____________.
19. A spotlight _____________ on center stage.
20. You must remain _____________ until the swelling in your ankle goes down.
EXERCISE A  For each sentence below, underline the correct word in parentheses.

Example 1. (Who’s, Whose) going to coach girls’ basketball next year?

1. My walkie-talkie is too (weak, week) to pick up their voices.
2. Susan casually tied the sweater around her (waist, waste).
3. The criminal (threw, through) away the evidence.
4. I don’t know (weather, whether) I’ll try out for cheerleading or not.
5. (Who’s, Whose) jacket was left on my desk?
6. I was so thirsty that I drank (to, too, two) glasses of water.
7. It will take a (weak, week) to get my watch repaired.
8. I was able to reach him (threw, through) a friend.
9. Will this project take more than one (weak, week)?
10. These potatoes are (to, too, two) salty for my taste.

EXERCISE B  In each of the following sentences, underline the word in parentheses that correctly completes the sentence. Then, write a new sentence using the other word correctly.

Example 1. Your dentist appointment is next (weak, week). ____________________________

Because I have the flu, I am too weak to go to school.

11. My mom always says, “(Waist, Waste) not, want not.” ____________________________

12. Will the recycling drive last all (weak, week)? ____________________________

13. Do you know the way (to, too) Jared’s house? ____________________________

14. Which is (your, you’re) favorite subject in school? ____________________________

15. Loretta (threw, through) out some bread crumbs for the birds. ____________________________
EXERCISE A  For items 1–5, spell the word correctly, adding the given prefix. For items 6–10, write the plural form of the word given.

Examples  1. un + necessary = unnecessary  
          2. B (plural) = B’s

1. re + write =  
2. un + healthy =  
3. over + turn =  
4. im + mature =  
5. mis + inform =  
6. veto (plural) =  
7. wolf (plural) =  
8. box (plural) =  
9. 10 (plural) =  
10. man (plural) =  

EXERCISE B  Cross out any misspelled word in each of the following sentences. Above the word, write it correctly. If a sentence is already correct, write C on the line provided.

Example  1. It was hopless for Marta to win, since she didn’t practice.

11. In all fairrness, the judge will hear the case.
12. Much to our astonishement, Manfred won a trophy!
13. Finaly, the team has a chance for first place.
15. When did Henry VIII riegn over England?
16. Who owns that adoreable little kitten?
17. My cousin’s directions were worthless, so we got lost.
18. The clock in the hall chimes hourely.
19. What busyness do you have at the bank?
20. Aunt Thelma won the acheivement award.
Review B: Words Often Confused

**EXERCISE A** For each of the following sentences, underline the word or words in parentheses that correctly complete the sentence.

**Example** 1. I believe (its, it’s) your turn to rake the leaves.

1. The legislature meets on the second floor of the (capital, capitol).
2. Willard took his sister’s (advice, advise) and went to the party.
3. The coach said we’re not (quiet, quite) ready to compete.
4. Are you (already, all ready) for your trip?
5. I hope you counted every (peace, piece) of luggage.
6. When I had the flu, I felt very (weak, week).
7. The small (plane, plain) flew over the Grand Canyon.
8. Can you (hear, here) me?
9. I hope to take a cooking (coarse, course) this summer.
10. That decision might (affect, effect) your job.

**EXERCISE B** In the following paragraphs, underline the word or words in parentheses that correctly complete each sentence.

**Example** [1] Would you like to (hear, here) about the play *Macbeth* by William Shakespeare?


When the king visits Macbeth’s castle, Macbeth and his wife are ready to proceed with [16] (their, there, they’re) plan. While the king sleeps, Macbeth slips [17] (past, passed) the guards and does a terrible deed.

Macbeth mistakenly believes that nothing now can [18] (altar, alter) his plan to be king. He gains the throne but [19] (looses, loses) his [20] (peace, piece) of mind. Lady Macbeth loses her sanity.
EXERCISE A  For items 1–5, spell the word correctly, adding the given prefix. For items 6–10, write the plural form of the word given.

Examples  1. il + legible = ___illegible___
           2. 1900 (plural) = ___1900’s___

1. un + real =  6. hoof (plural) =  
2. re + tell =  7. deer (plural) =  
3. in + secure =  8. woman (plural) =  
4. mis + spell =  9. fox (plural) =  
5. over + run =  10. C (plural) =  

EXERCISE B  In each of the following sentences, underline the correct spelling of the word in parentheses.

Example  1. I’m (writeing, writing) to tell you some good news.

11. My older sister Holly has known her boyfriend since they were (childs, children).
12. Holly and Dirk talked about their (engagement, engagment) last night.
13. They’ll announce it (formaly, formally) in the newspaper.
14. We hope the wedding turns out to be a (joyous, joious) event.
15. The whole family is sharing their (happiness, happyness).
16. Tomorrow, Mom will help Holly shop for a dress and (veil, viel).
17. You will (recieve, receive) your wedding invitation in a few weeks.
18. I’m sure that Holly and Dirk will (succeede, succeed) in planning a special ceremony.
19. My little cousin Mary will (preseed, precede) Holly down the aisle as flower girl.
20. Close (friends, freinds) will be bridesmaids and groomsmen.
EXERCISE A  In each of the following sentences, underline the word in parentheses that correctly completes the sentence.

Example 1. Have you (already, all ready) adopted a kitten from the animal shelter?
1. It is only July, but that store has a large display of winter (cloths, clothes) such as coats and scarves.
2. “Both candidates for senator have very clear (principals, principles),” my father said.
3. The forecasters don’t know (weather, whether) the blizzard will hit our area tonight.
4. Dan said he is (quiet, quite) sure that the movie is too violent for his taste.
5. According to the sign, we have just (passed, past) the entrance to Lion Country Safari.
6. If you pull that cord too hard, it will (brake, break).
7. If you want my (advice, advise), you should buy a mountain bike, not a ten-speed.
8. “(It’s, Its) a shame that you can’t go to the play,” said Ahmed.
9. Yes, if enough people truly work at it, (piece, peace) on earth is possible, don’t you think?
10. The fabric on the couch in the waiting room is (coarse, course) and scratchy.

EXERCISE B  Cross out the misspelled word in each of the following sentences. Then, write the word correctly above the error. Hint: All proper nouns are already spelled correctly.

Example 1. I am planing to write a short report about the history of food.
11. Most of us probably beleive that food is one of the greatest subjects!
12. There’s no dening that wheat and barley were the leading grains in ancient Egypt.
13. The rich land in the Nile Valley allowed the Egyptians to succede in farming.
14. Olives, raw beans, and figs were often included in Roman dishes long ago.
15. The dayly diet of many Romans also included a cereal mixture called polenta.
16. Spices were extremly popular during the Middle Ages and the Renaissance.
17. Ships from the New World haulled potatoes to Europe.
18. To me, the strangeest thing is that potatoes were not known in Europe before then.
19. The beginning of canned food is not unoted in history books.
20. Truthfully, canned food was developed in the 1800’s; the can opener came later.
Sentence Fragments and Run-on Sentences A

**EXERCISE** On the line provided, identify the following word groups by writing *SF* for sentence fragment, *RO* for run-on sentence, or *S* for sentence.

**Examples**

1. *SF* Buying school supplies at the office supply store.

2. *RO* I chose self-stick flags and notes in different colors, I use these when I study.

3. *S* Have you ever marked pages in your books with reusable sticker flags?

1. *SF* Available in different colors, such as red, yellow, green, blue, and purple.

2. *S* At my school, we cannot write or highlight in our textbooks.

3. *S* I use small sticker flags to mark important passages I write notes on larger self-stick slips of paper.

4. *SF* A color-coded system for marking different types of information.

5. *SF* Occasionally a teacher will say, “This will be on the test.”

6. *SF* Marking the page with a red sticker immediately.

7. *SF* Red stickers are for high-priority passages, and yellow stickers are for low-priority passages.

8. *SF* Green is the color of growth I use green flags for difficult topics requiring extra study.

9. *SF* As a reminder of my own possible intellectual growth in this topic.

10. *SF* Blue, the color of smooth sailing.

11. *SF* Important information is not always difficult to understand I mark this type of passage with a blue flag.

12. *SF* Education, above all, should be challenging and inspiring.

13. *SF* Always looking for interesting or fascinating topics and ideas.

14. *SF* The purple flags for these creative topics.

15. *SF* For example, after reading a brief reference to ostrich farms.

16. *SF* I marked the reference with a purple flag that weekend I investigated ostrich farms.

17. *SF* Free access to the Internet at the public library near my apartment.

18. *SF* The Internet has become a useful tool for my research, I find information for tests and papers as well as information for my personal interest and enjoyment.


20. *SF* On these, I write short notes about my teacher’s comments.
**EXERCISE A** On the lines provided, revise each sentence fragment by (1) adding a subject, (2) adding a verb, or (3) attaching the fragment to a complete sentence.

**Example 1.** A new sport available this year at school. _A new sport available this year at school is golf._

1. Because I enjoy sports of any kind. _____________________________________________

2. Never played golf before. ____________________________________________________

3. Coach Mabry, the other players in seventh grade, and I. __________________________

4. That walking long distances is a part of golf. ______________________________________

5. On the golf course on a beautiful, sunny day. _____________________________________

**EXERCISE B** On the lines provided, revise each of the following run-on sentences by (1) making two sentences or (2) using a comma and a coordinating conjunction to make a compound sentence.

**Example 1.** I have always been interested in interior decorating my friends and family trust my advice. _I have always been interested in interior decorating, and my friends and family trust my advice._

6. I carefully study interior design magazines I then make sketches of my own ideas. _________________________________________________

7. One of my specialties is window treatments this category includes drapes and blinds. ____________________________________________

8. You can’t forget about the details for example, candlesticks or pillows brighten a room. _______________________________________

9. If I had to give one piece of advice, it would be about color choose neutral furniture colors. _______________________________________

10. Then, accent the room with colorful pillows or rugs these items are less costly to update. ______________________________________

---

**Sentence Fragments and Run-on Sentences B**

**NAME**

**CLASS**

**DATE**

---

**for CHAPTER 17: CORRECTING COMMON ERRORS**

**pages 455–457**

---

**Elements of Language | First Course**
EXERCISE  On the line provided, identify each of the following word groups by writing SF for sentence fragment, RO for run-on sentence, or S for sentence. Then, revise any sentence fragments or run-on sentences to create complete sentences.

Example 1. The planet Earth has been around for a long time scientists estimate it is 4.6 billion years old.  
RO: The planet Earth has been around for a long time; scientists estimate it is 4.6 billion years old.

1. Formed at the same time as the sun, from materials left over from the sun’s formation. ____

2. At first, Earth was extremely hot it then cooled. __________________________

3. Earth maintained a central core of iron and nickel it developed a middle layer of liquid metal and an outer crust. __________________________

4. Above the crust, an atmosphere, which constantly revolves. __________________________

5. Earth’s oceans appeared quickly once the planet cooled they have existed ever since. ____

6. Single-celled algae, the first form of life, after about 3.5 billion years. __________________________

7. Some fossils 570 million years old. __________________________

8. Dinosaurs lived in the Mesozoic Era, 225 million to 65 million years ago, mesozoic means “middle life.” __________________________

9. How long have human beings existed? __________________________

10. The present era is the Cenozoic, cenozoic means “recent life.” __________________________

Grammar, Usage, and Mechanics: Language Skills Practice
EXERCISE A  In each of the sentences below, underline the form of the verb in parentheses that agrees with its subject.

Example 1. Carmina and Gerald (read, reads) a book called Some of the Kinder Planets.

2. The stories in this book (was, were) written by Tim Wynne-Jones.

1. A boy in one of the stories (fear, fears) he has been abducted by aliens.

2. The “aliens” (is, are) actually a family living in a high-tech geodesic dome.

3. What (does, do) the planet Mars and the pomegranate fruit have in common?

4. If you (read, reads) “The Night of the Pomegranate,” you will find out.

5. Everyone (has, have) been ill at one time or another.


7. Then, in a very unusual way, he (begin, begins) to plan a trip to an exotic city.

8. Either you or your friends (has, have) probably written an essay about a vacation.

9. An imaginative boy and his friend (creates, create) an alternative to this assignment.

10. The story that tells about their activities (is, are) “Tweedledum and Tweedledead.”

EXERCISE B  In each of the following sentences, write C above the underlined verb if it agrees with its subject. If the underlined verb does not agree with its subject, write the correct form of the verb above it.

Example 1. Do you or a friend want to live forever at the same age you are now?

11. Winnie Foster, in Tuck Everlasting, face this exact choice.

12. Winnie, while playing in the woods, find a beautiful, clear stream of water.

13. Before she can take a drink, however, she is kidnapped by a very nice family.

14. When the Tuck family kidnap Winnie, she doesn’t expect magic.

15. The spring of water, these people tell her, are magical.

16. A tiny sip from this spring hidden among the trees give everlasting life.

17. Every one of the Tucks are immortal because they drank from the spring.

18. Over the years they have formed a definite opinion about their situation.

19. Winnie, faced with the opportunity of drinking from the spring, make a surprising decision.

20. Meanwhile, a mysterious stranger suspect Winnie’s secret.
EXERCISE A Underline the verb in each of the following sentences. If the subject and verb do not agree, write the correct form of the verb above it. If the subject and verb agree, write C above the verb.

Example 1. Has you considered the role of heroes in the lives of young people?

1. Not everyone nowadays have a personal hero.
2. Some people just hasn’t thought about the subject.
3. Others have not found an ideal hero.
4. Either people from history or someone alive today make a good choice for a personal hero.
5. For example, Helen Keller or Anne Frank may inspire people in difficult circumstances.
6. On the other hand, one of your own classmates are also a good candidate for a hero.
7. Have someone in your school been an “unsung hero”?
8. Each day peoples’ decisions affect the lives of people around them.
9. Has someone affected your life in a positive way?
10. That are the sign of a hero!

EXERCISE B In each of the following sentences, underline the subject once and the verb twice. If the subject and verb do not agree, write the correct form of the verb above the verb. If the subject and verb already agree, write C above the verb.

Example 1. The first of six successful lunar landings by the U.S. Apollo program were achieved on July 20, 1969.

11. One of the Apollo astronauts, Neil Armstrong, were the first human on the moon.
12. None of the early Soviet Sputnik satellites was designed for a moon landing.
13. Both Orville and Wilbur Wright was responsible for the first airplane flight, in North Carolina in 1903.
14. Computer-created images and touch sensations is often called virtual reality.
15. Pakistan, along with Bangladesh, were freed from British rule in 1947.
16. Neither Dan nor Jill know the capital of Canada.
17. The Philippines is an island system in the southwestern Pacific.
18. Qatar, one of many Middle Eastern countries, have made use of its oil resources.
19. Gu and Thy is planning a party for their uncle’s visit.
20. San Salvador, the largest of El Salvador’s cities, have suffered from recurring earthquakes.
EXERCISE A  In each of the following sentences, underline the word or word group in parentheses that creates pronoun-antecedent agreement.

Example 1. The doll, forgotten in an attic for years, is in (their, its) original box.
1. Have you tried in-line skating? (It is, They are) a fun outdoor activity.
2. Either Darren or Marco will present (their, his) report in Spanish.
3. One of my cats uses (its, their) paws to eat.
4. Angela and Trisha enjoyed (her, their) soccer team practice.
5. Neither of the bicycles still has (its, their) original tires.
6. One of our neighbors played (their, her) sitar for us.
7. The smaller of the two tables needs (its, their) top polished.
8. Everyone contributed (their, his or her) ideas during the brainstorming session.
9. Roy’s bedroom needs (his, its) walls repainted with a fresh, new color.
10. After a while, this chewing gum loses (its, their) flavor.

EXERCISE B  In the following sentences, cross out each pronoun that does not agree with its antecedent. Above it, write the correct pronoun. If a sentence is already correct, write C after the sentence.

Example 1. Here is the microscope, but where are their lenses?
11. Each science student is choosing their own project.
12. Both Jorge and Diana chose insect study as his or her projects.
13. Diana plans to study medicine when she is in college.
14. Jorge, unlike Diana, plans on making art their major in college.
15. Jorge will make sure that the photographs in their report provide good visual support.
16. Few of the other students are as sure about his or her career goals.
17. For many seventh-graders, choices about college are still far in their future.
18. Many students view the project as a way to explore his or her interests.
19. Perhaps someone in our class will realize their dream to become a scientist.
20. The idea of studying the world around me appeals to me. They would be an interesting career.
EXERCISE A In each of the following sentences, underline the pronoun or pair of pronouns in parentheses that agrees with the antecedent.

Example 1. One of the sled’s blades is loose, and (it, they) should be tightened.
1. Did someone that you know leave (their, his or her) umbrella at our house?
2. The roads are safe for travel because (its, their) surfaces have been cleared of ice.
3. Either Leona or Barbara can use these skis on (his or her, her) ski trip.
4. One of the girls, wearing (their, her) raincoat, splashed happily in the puddles of rain.
5. Because (its, their) surface is frozen, the small lake looks eerily motionless.
6. Josh and his brother Jake worked all morning to clear (his, their) driveway of snow.
7. No one enjoys having (their, his or her) car doors frozen shut.
8. Both Charlene and Kristin are spending (their, her) afternoon at the ice rink.
9. Icicles are beautiful, but (its, their) sharp points can be dangerous.
10. Winter is my favorite of all four seasons, and I always look forward to (them, it).

EXERCISE B On the line in each sentence below, write a pronoun or pair of pronouns that agrees with the antecedent.

Example 1. Is anyone able to share ____________ encyclopedia with me?
11. Either Lucy or Maxine will lend you ____________ encyclopedia.
12. Birds fascinate me because ____________ have the freedom of flight.
13. I’m sure the Wright brothers, who invented the first successful airplane, spent some of ____________ time watching and envying birds.
14. Everyone has ____________ own hobby; mine is ornithology, which is the study of birds.
15. Encyclopedias are great sources of information because ____________ have interesting articles and accurate drawings.
16. For example, I learned that penguins are birds, but ____________ cannot fly.
17. In ____________ oral presentation, Janice described a bird called the shoebill stork.
18. The shoebill stork has a distinctive bill; ____________ resembles a scoop or shovel.
19. Janice said that the bird looks clumsy on land, but ____________ is graceful in flight.
20. A few of my classmates asked Janice questions; ____________ share my interest in birds.
**Exercise A**  In each of the following sentences, write the correct past or past participle form of the verb in parentheses.

**Example 1.** Have you __________ any films made in Hong Kong? (see)

1. LaShonda __________ the honor roll again this semester. (make)
2. Bright green leaves __________ after last week’s rain. (grow)
3. Yesterday I __________ sushi for the first time. (eat)
4. My uncle __________ me a harmonica for my last birthday. (give)
5. Maria __________ me a card for Hanukkah last week. (send)
6. Has Mr. Kung already __________ you the story about that Chinese vase? (tell)
7. The principal has __________ highly of the seventh-graders’ charity work. (speak)
8. Last weekend, my family __________ to the opera. (go)
9. Pedro has __________ in this race each year since he was nine. (run)
10. I have __________ to my senator about the issue. (write)

**Exercise B**  In the following sentences, cross out any incorrect past or past participle verb forms. Write the correct form above the error. If a sentence is already correct, write C after it.

**Example 1.** Pamela speaked to me about her plans for earning money.

11. She is only thirteen years old, but she has begin to develop a good reputation for hair care.
12. For the past year, Pamela has run an informal hair salon in her kitchen on Saturdays.
13. She has ringed up enough sales to buy quality scissors and other equipment.
14. She says she has knowed for a long time that she will open her own salon after high school.
15. Pamela has builded up a strong base of knowledge about hair care.
16. She has always weared her hair in the latest fashion.
17. Last year, I taked her advice about cutting my bangs.
18. Pamela herself did the work.
19. I feeled great about the new look!
20. I gladly payed Pamela’s reasonable charge for the haircut.
Verb Forms B

Exercise A  In each of the following sentences, underline the correct verb form in parentheses.

Example 1. I was (give, given) swimming lessons before I was six years old.
1. I recently (heard, hear) about the first woman to swim across the English Channel.
2. Gertrude Ederle, an American, (swam, swum) the Channel on August 6, 1926.
3. She (break, broke) the current record by nearly two hours.
4. She (hold, held) the new record of fourteen hours, thirty-one minutes.
5. During the 1920s, Ederle (become, became) a well-known figure in sports.
6. In the early 1920s, she had (setted, set) women’s freestyle records for distances from 100 to 880 yards.
7. In 1924, she (win, won) an Olympic gold medal as a member of the U.S. women’s 400-meter relay team.
8. After the record-setting swim across the English Channel, however, she (lost, lose) some of her hearing.
9. After that, she (teach, taught) swimming and designed clothing.
10. With her many achievements, Gertrude Ederle (leave, left) her mark on the world of sports.

Exercise B  In each of the following sentences, cross out any incorrect past or past participle verb forms. Write the correct form above the error. If a sentence is already correct, write C after it.

Example 1. Tony’s parents gave him a Dalmatian for his birthday.
11. The dog grew into a friendly, helpful companion.
12. Tony taught the dog to catch tennis balls.
13. He has had the dog nearly a year now.
14. During that time, Tony has sought out information about Dalmatians.
15. People have found that Dalmatians make good guard dogs.
16. Shepherds have chose Dalmatians to help herd flocks of sheep.
17. You may have read about fire departments that have a Dalmatian as a mascot.
18. At one time in history, Dalmatians were sent to war as war dogs.
19. I have always thinked that Dalmatians’ spotted coats are beautiful.
20. Tony told me that Dalmatians can grow to almost two feet in height.
**Pronoun Forms A**

**Exercise** In each of the following sentences, underline the correct pronoun in parentheses.

**Example 1.** *(We, Us)* kids always enjoy a good party.

1. My neighbor asked all the families nearby to celebrate the Fourth of July with *(he, him).*
2. Mr. Cardenas has several grandchildren, and he invited *(them, they)* as well.
3. Before the party started, he asked my sister and *(I, me)* to help him with a project.
4. He gave *(us, we)* dozens of red, white, and blue balloons.
5. We filled *(them, they)* with water and tied them tightly at the top.
6. When kids arrived for the party, *(them, they)* were ready for fun.
7. Mr. Cardenas, my sister, and *(me, I)* asked half the kids to hold the edges of a large quilt so that it stretched out like a tablecloth, about three feet above the ground.
8. We gathered the other kids and had *(them, they)* hold another quilt in the same way.
9. Since the ones who would begin the game were *(them, they)*, I joined that group.
10. Mr. Cardenas named us the Reds and named *(they, them)* the Blues.
11. Then he tossed a water balloon toward *(we, us)* Reds.
12. Those of *(we, us)* holding this quilt moved in unison to position our quilt to catch the balloon.
13. Then our team held the quilt stretched nearly flat and raised it quickly to toss the water balloon toward *(them, they).*
14. We laughed as we watched *(them, they)* scramble to catch the water balloon in their quilt.
15. One girl stumbled when someone bumped into *(she, her)*, but the team didn’t lose the balloon.
16. Mr. Cardenas stood watching on the sidelines, and some of the parents joined *(him, he).*
17. Those who now had to scramble to catch the balloon were *(we, us).*
18. Unfortunately, the others and *(I, me)* missed catching the balloon by a few inches, and it burst.
19. The Blues cheered because the ones to score the first point were *(them, they).*
20. *(We, Us)* Reds weren’t worried; we knew we would win the next point!
EXERCISE A  Underline the correct pronoun in parentheses in each of the following sentences.

Example 1. One of the best tennis players in the history of the game was (her, she).

1. The committee is going to give the award to (she, her) now.
2. The principal and (I, me) cheered loudly at the soccer game.
3. (He, Him) and the other boys are planning to go to the Holocaust museum.
4. The recorder for the group assignment is (she, her).
5. Mr. Wu gave the sheet music to the flute players and (us, we).
6. Francine and (she, her) practice their snare drums in the band hall.
7. Felipe lent his comic books to Eddie and (I, me).
8. The president of the student council is (she, her).
9. Mr. Chee will award the trophy to you and (he, him).
10. The finalists read their poems to the teachers and (we, us).

EXERCISE B  In each of the following sentences, cross out each error in pronoun usage. Above the error, write the correct pronoun form. If a sentence is already correct, write C after it.

Example 1. I wasn’t sure who I would ask to the dance.

11. The football players congratulated theirselves on their victory over our rivals.
12. This secret must remain between you and I.
13. We seventh-graders have more school spirit than anyone!
14. Karen thanked me for helping she and Kevin with the science homework.
15. Whom is the singer who performed at the awards ceremony?
16. The principal hisself will cut the ribbon at the building dedication.
17. Vicky and them are going to the frozen-yogurt shop after school.
18. Give your ballots to us ballot counters.
19. Danny, David, and me are going to the ball field.
20. From who did you get these beautiful flowers?
### EXERCISE A

For each of the following modifiers, write the two missing forms of comparison on the lines provided.

**Example 1.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Positive</th>
<th>Comparative</th>
<th>Superlative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>stormy</td>
<td>stormier</td>
<td>stomiest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fluffier</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>good</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>worst</td>
<td>less tempting</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>salty</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>childlike</td>
<td>more entertaining</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>smoothest</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kinder</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### EXERCISE B

Underline the correct form of the modifier in parentheses in each of the following sentences.

**Example 1.** This is the (less expensive, least expensive) camera I could find at the store.

11. The food at this restaurant tastes (better, best) than the food at the diner.
12. That is the (tragicest, most tragic) story I have ever read!
13. Next time I will cook the eggs (more thoroughly, thoroughlier).
14. Which of the fifty states has the (mildest, milder) climate?
15. Which is (farthest, farther) from here, Kassy’s house or Harrison’s apartment?
16. Which dog is (most interesting, more interesting), Lassie, Courage, or Scooby-Doo?
17. When choosing among red meat, poultry, and fish, I choose red meat (less often, least often).
18. Janine, this essay is your (better, best) work all year!
19. I have to catch the school bus thirty minutes (early, earlier) than Shane does.
20. The farmers’ market boasts the (fresher, freshest) produce in town.
**EXERCISE A** For each of the following sentences, write the correct comparative or superlative form of the underlined word. Write your answer on the line provided.

**Example** *best* 1. Of all the stores, Freeman’s Sports offers the *good* price on tennis rackets.

1. São Paulo is the *big* city in Brazil.
2. Mount McKinley is the *high* mountain in North America.
3. Which do you like *well*, Ugli fruit or mangoes?
4. Belgium, the Netherlands, and Luxembourg have often fared the *bad* in wars between their bigger neighbors in Europe.
5. The capital of Nepal, Katmandu, is also the country’s *large* city.
6. Who do you think is *famous* worldwide: Michael Jordan or the Brazilian soccer star Ronaldo?
7. Neanderthal remains are *old* than the Cro-Magnon remains.
8. Of everyone’s scores on the quiz, Clara’s is *close* to one hundred.
9. Many people believe that solar power is the *clean* of all energy sources.
10. Is it *important* to feel good or to look good?

**EXERCISE B** On the lines provided, write the comparative and superlative degrees of the following modifiers.

**Example** 1. ambitious *more ambitious* *most ambitious* 

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Positive</th>
<th>Comparative</th>
<th>Superlative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>11. gently</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12. possible</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13. quiet</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14. curly</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15. interesting</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16. simple</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17. funny</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18. foolish</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19. purple</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20. sunny</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Double Comparisons and Double Negatives

**Exercise A**  Each of the following sentences contains a double comparison or a double negative. Cross out the word or words in error, and write a correction above the error.

**Example 1.** Jeff can’t believe in no such thing as ESP.

1. You’ll never guess who ran more farther than anyone else today!
2. I’m not going to no movies until I save up more of my allowance.
3. This dog’s coat is the most dirtiest I’ve ever seen it.
4. Miguel has hardly allowed any goals in neither of his two seasons as goalkeeper.
5. Dwayne can’t hardly wait for the tennis state semifinals.
6. Don’t buy your CDs at that store—their prices are the most highest in town.
7. Mr. Ali doesn’t never let a day go by without exercising.
8. Wei-Lin is much more better at painting than she is at sculpting.
9. Both my parents drink coffee, but I don’t think I’ll never like this beverage.
10. On the final day of the school year, the students were more livelier than they had been all year.
11. Cynthia hasn’t never invited me to one of her parties.
12. Nobody wasn’t surprised when Mark’s cow won first place at the livestock show.
13. My new alarm clock has the most loudest alarm you can imagine.
14. We should mix more yellow with the green to make the paint more yellower.
15. I wasn’t scarcely ready for school when my dad shouted, “Time to leave!”
16. You will never find a more cuter puppy than Freckles.
17. The officers didn’t tell no one outside the police department about the new evidence.
18. I don’t feel like eating a fish sandwich, but a salad isn’t appetizing neither.
19. I’m trying to keep my room more cleaner now that my friends come over more often.
20. Don’t put the keys nowhere where I can’t find them, please.
EXERCISE A  Underline the misplaced modifier in each of the following sentences. Then, draw a caret (^) to show where the modifier should be.

Example 1. ^I read a play written by Thornton Wilder relaxing on a Sunday.

1. I learned in 1938 that Wilder wrote the play *Our Town*.
2. Set in the early 1900s, I enjoyed the play’s story line.
3. The play named Grover’s Corners is about everyday events that take place in a small town.
4. Doing homework in her room each evening, George can see Emily from his window.
5. Talking to him through her window, George gets some homework help from Emily.
6. Their mothers spend their days doing housework, cooking, and caring for their families who are Mrs. Gibbs and Mrs. Webb.
7. The teenagers’ fathers go off to work each day who are a doctor and a newspaper editor.
8. The events are intended to show what life was like in the early 1900s in the play.
9. I think that everyday life is—and will be—different from the play in the early 2000s.
10. Homework, housework, and office work will, however, remain familiar to people which occupy nearly everyone’s time at some point in life.

EXERCISE B  Each of the following sentences contains a misplaced modifier. Revise each sentence so that its meaning is clear and correct.

Example 1. The ranch owner trains the horses who shook your hand.

11. We saw geese flying south from our porch.

12. Wearing their robes, Bryan saw the Buddhist monks enter the room.

13. Sitting at the bottom of her lunch sack, Brenda found her sandwich.

14. Recently given a fresh coat of paint, Ms. Chan admired the fence.

15. The Nguyens saw majestic buffaloes and huge moose on vacation.
Misplaced Modifiers B

EXERCISE  Each of the following sentences contains a misplaced modifier. Revise each sentence so that its meaning is clear and correct.

Example 1. Covered in a soft fuzz, Marcus selected a fresh peach from the bin. Marcus selected a fresh peach, covered in a soft fuzz, from the bin.

1. This story that helps his master solve mysteries is about a dog.

2. Running around the track, the crowd cheered for the athletes.

3. I said on Tuesday I would be there.

4. Students may sign up for next semester’s classes whose last names begin with the letters A–F.

5. The yellow-and-black butterfly would make a good specimen on that flower.

6. Clicking his heels together playfully, the photo captured a young man.

7. The joke across her face caused a wide grin to spread.

8. Meet me by the school under the oak tree.

9. Painted a warm yellow now, I thought the kitchen was much brighter than before.

10. I placed a kitchen chair to watch the falling rain on the wide front porch.
**Standard Usage A**

**EXERCISE A** In each of the following sentences, underline the word or words in parentheses that are correct according to the rules of formal, standard English.

**Example 1.** I looked (everywhere, everywheres) for the earring but couldn’t find it.

1. Justin was sure he (could of, could have) won the chess game if he had concentrated harder.

2. Professor Shipley said we (shouldn’t, hadn’t ought to) worry about the test.

3. (These types, This type) of math problem always confuses me but not Karmisha.

4. Everyone chose photos of (themselves, themselves) to include in the yearbook.

5. Watching the art teacher carefully, Phillippa sculpted her clay (as, like) he did.

6. These instructions look (like, as though) they will be simple to follow.

7. I promised that I would (try and, try to) keep my room cleaner.

8. Would you hand me (them, those) books from the top shelf?

9. Students should bring (their, there, they’re) signed permission slips in by Friday.

10. Waking up to bright rays of sunlight, I thought, “(Its, It’s) going to be a great day!”

**EXERCISE B** If the underlined word or phrase in each sentence below is used incorrectly according to standard English usage, write the correct usage above the error. If the word or phrase is already correct, write C above it.

**Examples 1.** Our neighbor is learning us how to make shish kebabs.

2. I always enjoy learning new ways of making tasty food.

11. We read where there’s going to be a Thanksgiving Day parade.

12. Them candles must have been difficult to make.

13. I can understand how come people view the United States as a land of opportunity.

14. My uncle is someone who’s interested in pioneer times.

15. “Let’s try and preserve our heritage,” he always says.

16. It looks like I’ll be going to the art exhibit on Saturday.

17. After recuperating from a long illness, Mr. Dahl finally felt good again.

18. Its complex rhythms are what makes Jamaican music so fun.

19. After running in the marathon, Julia felt kind of tired.

20. Tim would rather go swimming then spend the day indoors.
### Standard Usage B

#### Exercise A

In each of the following sentences, underline the word or words in parentheses that are correct according to the rules of formal, standard English.

**Example 1.** *(This, This here)* calf is the one we feed with a bottle.

1. Let the dog *(inside, inside of)* the back porch before the rain starts.

2. This painting is *(real, really)* expensive!

3. Keidron was happier *(than, then)* Kelly was about their move to a new town.

4. Don’t go to the movies *(unless, without)* you invite me!

5. Ms. Corbett is the one *(which, who)* will organize the book sale.

6. Five miles is a long *(way, ways)* to walk, so I’ll ride my bike.

7. *(use to, used to)* play on the basketball team, but I prefer tennis now.

8. Melissa is a friend *(whose, who’s)* always kind and supportive.

9. When *(your, you’re)* friends are here, I’ll prepare some snacks.

10. *(That, That there)* bush blocks the sunlight from my window.

#### Exercise B

In each of the following sentences, cross out the error in the use of formal, standard English. Above the error, write the correct usage.

**Example 1.** I read in a magazine *(where)* the juice of the aloe vera plant is good for cuts.

11. Yes, I’ll leave you stay out a half hour later tonight.

12. I need someone to learn me how to fix a leaky faucet.

13. I thought the lecture today was kind of interesting.

14. Pick the leaves of the herb when it’s blossoms have just opened.

15. How come the game is canceled?

16. Yodeling is when you sing meaningless syllables.

17. I think we should get these kind of pepper plants to grow at home.

18. Did we have less quizzes this month than last month?

19. I hear about that actress everywhere I go.

20. Is dinner already?
EXERCISE A Above each of the following items, rewrite the item using correct capitalization. If an item is already correct, write C above it.

Example 1. the Western Hemisphere

1. west tenth street
2. a chinese proverb
3. Winter in Alaska
4. Wednesday, June 8
5. American Indian
6. a government agency
7. senator Gonzales
8. the far East
9. a pair of nikes
10. West Hills hiking club

EXERCISE B In each of the following sentences, cross out each word that contains a capitalization error. Then, above the word, write it with correct capitalization. If a sentence is already correct, write C after it.

Examples 1. Have you ever heard the saying “great minds think alike”? C saying "Great Minds Think Alike"

2. “If Mr. Roy approves,” said Terry, “my report will be on these two men.” C

11. One great proponent of nonviolent protest was Mohandas K. Gandhi in India.
12. He was also known as Mahatma, which means “great soul.”
13. In History class, we learned that Gandhi’s peaceful methods led to Indian independence from Great Britain.
14. India finally gained independence after World War II.
15. another great leader who advocated nonviolent methods was Dr. Martin Luther King, Jr.
16. In the United States during the 1950s and 1960s, Dr. King led nonviolent protests as a part of the movement for civil rights.
17. His famous publication “Letter from Birmingham Jail” outlined his peaceful strategies.
18. in 1964, the Civil Rights Act was passed by Congress, and in the same year King won a Nobel Peace Prize.
19. These two great men were not the first to think of fighting injustice with nonviolence, however.
20. The Nineteenth-century American author Henry David Thoreau described many of the same principles in his essay “Civil Disobedience.”
EXERCISE A  Above each of the following items, rewrite the item using correct capitalization. If an item is already correct, write C above it.

Example 1. a Lake in Michigan

1. going east on the freeway
2. The hunchback of Notre Dame
3. the Civil war
4. four Chapters
5. Tuesday morning
6. thai food
7. my Uncle Frank
8. Venezuelan coast
9. the big dipper
10. a story, “Stan’s stupendous Saturday”

EXERCISE B  In each of the following sentences, circle each letter that should be capitalized.

Example 1. have you read nicholasa mohr’s *El Bronx Remembered: A Novella and Stories*?

11. When i read books, i enjoy reading about people who show me a view of life i haven’t seen before.
13. one character comments, “dating is not a concept adults in our barrio really get.”
14. the stories are about kids in puerto rican families.
15. Many of the kids speak both english and spanish.
16. They live in an american city, which is paterson, new jersey.
17. Some of the kids miss puerto rico, which seems as far away as mars.
18. if you like poetry, you should read *Cool Salsa: bilingual poems on growing up latino in the united states*.
19. Poems such as “school days” and “hard times” are written partly in english and partly in spanish or are printed twice—one in each language.
20. If you like these poems, look for the bilingual magazine named *Azul*, which means “blue” in spanish.
EXERCISE In each of the following sentences, insert commas where they are needed and underline the word before the comma. If a sentence is already correct, write C after it.

Example 1. The Incan empire, once centered in what is now Peru, had a highly developed civilization.

1. Often called the father of history Herodotus wrote an account of the Persian invasion of ancient Greece.
2. Julius Caesar supposedly described one of his victories by simply saying, “I came I saw I conquered.”
3. Montezuma II, a sixteenth-century Aztec emperor was overthrown by the Spanish conquistadors.
4. The Japanese surrender that ended World War II occurred on September 6, 1945.
5. During World War II more than 22 million people died and more than 34 million were wounded.
6. Aren’t red, white and blue also the colors of the French flag?
7. In 1992 Sarajevo came under a bloody siege by Bosnian Serbs.
8. The region of Indochina includes Cambodia, Laos, Malaysia, Myanmar, Thailand, and Vietnam.
9. How excited you must be about taking vacation in Santiago, Chile!
10. Well I’m not sure who is the prime minister of England.
11. Dear Friends, Mr. Thompson’s seventh-grade class is hosting an international food fair.
12. I’d like to ask you, Ms. Robertson, about the field trip to Gettysburg, Pennsylvania.
13. On the shelf beneath the window you’ll find the new globe.
14. Because I enjoy water sports and bright sunshine I want to visit Hawaii this summer.
15. Imported tea was costly in 1773 yet colonists dumped shipments of tea into the Boston harbor in protest of British taxes on tea.
16. The Seven Hills of Rome which are on the eastern bank of the Tiber river mark the site of ancient Rome.
17. The continents of the earth are Africa, Asia, Australia, Europe, North America, and South America.
18. Oh, I forgot to name Antarctica as one of the earth’s continents.
19. You can address your letter to the President of the United States, 1600 Pennsylvania Ave.
   Washington D.C. 20500.
20. On May 29, 1848 Wisconsin was granted statehood.
EXERCISE In each of the following sentences, insert commas where they are needed, and underline the word before the comma. If a sentence is already correct, write C after it.

Example 1. A lunar eclipse, which occurs when the earth casts its shadow on the moon, will occur tonight.

1. The letter she found was dated November 16, 1950.
2. If Leilani plans to go she will need to sign up.
3. June, July, or August will be the best month for the swim party.
4. Since Hank is not very hungry he will eat only half a bagel.
5. In my opinion students should decide for themselves.
6. Most salmon which live in salt water swim upstream and lay eggs in fresh water.
7. Most of the food that you see on the table was prepared by Mr. Khan.
8. Noticing a misspelled word Raymond looked up the correct spelling in his dictionary.
9. Monica was vacationing in Toronto, Canada, but she has returned.
10. Captain Martinez who owns the ship, has been sailing for thirty years.
11. Katrina, my sister’s college roommate, is spending the holidays with my family.
12. In the back corner of a dusty toy store I found an antique marionette.
13. The soccer players, intent on their exciting game, did not notice the storm clouds approaching.
14. Chili powder, in my opinion, should be used sparingly.
15. I’ll sweep the floor, straighten the living room, and make sandwiches if you’ll pick up Cecilia from the airport.
16. Yes, these are the baseball cards I want to trade.
17. When you hear your cue move to center stage, Aaron.
18. Jorge, who is an animal rights supporter, volunteers at the humane society, organizes pet adoptions, and always takes in stray dogs and cats.
19. Christie, you can go bowling with your brothers or you can go to the opera with Sandy and me.
20. The drab, boring walls of my room were transformed when I hung posters, photos, awards, and a calendar.
**Semicolons and Colons**

**Exercise A** Insert semicolons and colons where they are needed in the following sentences. If a sentence is already correct, write C after it.

**Example 1.** The Spanish colonized many parts of Latin America and South America; they brought the Spanish language to these regions.

1. I'll tell Ricky, Sue, and Rao about the field trip and you tell the others.
2. The Spanish Club will meet in front of the school at 7 15.
3. Mr. Fuentes will be there earlier he wants to oversee the loading of the bus.
4. The field trip should be a success last year, it went very smoothly.
5. Bring the following items lunch money, notepad, and a hat.
6. I would love to go however, I have conflicting plans.
7. The chaperones are these parents Mr. Kobek, Ms. Lee, and Mrs. Dayle.
8. I have pen pals in Monterrey, Mexico San Juan, Puerto Rico and Buenos Aires, Argentina.
9. This article, “In Demand Bilingual Workers,” raises some interesting points.
10. Dear Members of the Spanish Club Prepare for a day of fun, food, and friends.

**Exercise B** Insert semicolons and colons where they are needed in the following formal letter.

**Example** The students’ interests are these: pioneer Americans, war heroes, and athletes.

Dear Ms. Simiyu

Thank you for inviting me to speak to your class I will be there on Tuesday promptly at 10 00 A.M. I plan to speak about the following people Marshall Taylor, an African American cyclist Solomon Butcher, a photographer in pioneer times and Deborah Sampson, a woman who fought (disguised as a man) in the American Revolution. Your students are welcome to ask questions about other people from history almost everyone has a favorite historical figure. They have probably heard at least a little about Molly Bloom, Anne Frank, and Captain Cook and I can include some information on these people. Also, I will talk about a couple of my favorite books Astrid Lindgren Storyteller to the World by Johanna Hurwitz; and Stonewall by Jean Fritz, which is about General “Stonewall” Jackson.

Sincerely,

C. J. LeBeaux, Head Librarian

Centerville Public Library
Quotation Marks and Other Punctuation A

**Exercise A**  Add underlining, quotation marks, and parentheses where they are needed in the following sentences. Circle any letters that should be capitalized or made lowercase.

*Example 1.* Tranh said to his friend Kate, “How’s it going?”

1. “Do you have permission to go tomorrow? Kate smiling broadly asked him.
2. “Go where? Tranh replied. Is there a field trip?”
3. “You’re kidding!” Kate exclaimed. You don’t remember!
4. Sure I do, Tranh hedged, “But remind me anyway.”
5. “Tomorrow is the free concert, Kate said. I hear there will be a didgeridoo!
7. The didgeridoo a hollow wind instrument originated in Australia.
9. If you’ve never heard a didgeridoo being played, you could listen to Didgeridoo Dreamtime, a CD of music performed by Mark Atkins.
10. The two friends Tranh and Kate enjoyed the didgeridoo concert.

**Exercise B**  Add hyphens, brackets, dashes, and quotation marks where they are needed in the following sentences.

*Example 1.* My homework—I finished it already—is in my notebook.

11. These talented poets Langston Hughes, Shel Silverstein, and Jean Little wrote about friendship.
12. I see my exEnglish teacher, Ms. Sellers, going into that bookstore.
13. This poem I don’t know who wrote it is about unrequited love.
14. The mayor announced, “They the winners of the Young Poetry Contest will be announced at noon tomorrow.”
15. I read twenty five poems before I found the one I want to write about for class.
16. A two thirds majority of my classmates prefer humorous poems to serious ones.
17. The president elect of our writer’s guild is Emilio Bennett.
18. These poems they’re known as limericks are really funny!
19. Mr. Canon said, You’ll find Stopping by Woods on a Snowy Evening on page fifty.
20. He continued, “All of these the poems by Robert Frost are well loved by many readers.”
EXERCISE A  Add underlining, quotation marks, and parentheses, and brackets where they are needed in the following sentences. Circle any letters that should be capitalized or made lowercase.

Example 1. Isaac put down his copy of Motor Cross when Tina walked up.
2. Yes, you told me about his stamp collection, said Isaac.
3. Tina said, no, that was my Grandfather.
4. Oh, said her friend, I thought your grandfather collected baseball cards.
5. He collects both, Tina said, But Uncle Bernie works for Amnesty International.
6. Isaac nodded; he had read about Amnesty International in the Los Angeles Times.
7. He said, I read about it the organization and thought it was interesting. “
8. He continued, you have an active family. Didn’t one of your other relatives sail on the Queen Elizabeth 2?
9. “Yes, and he wrote a book about it called Sailing with the Queen.
10. Do you see the pun play on words in the book title?

EXERCISE B  Add hyphens, brackets, and dashes where they are needed in the following sentences.

Example 1. Michael is a self—motivated student, and I admire him.
11. Have you ever eaten a cheese free pizza?
12. Here is how you should divide competition at the end of a line: competition.
13. Serve each guest a one eighth portion of the quiche.
14. “I didn’t know anything about it the donation to the school until we received the check,” said a happy Principal Thomas.
15. You can get two notepads for ninety nine cents at the Corner Cupboard.
16. Chad, would you prepare the turnips I know they’re not your favorite vegetable for dinner?
17. Sally proclaimed, “I don’t wear anything made of that substance leather.”
18. The automatic sprinkler system we installed it last summer makes yard care much easier.
19. When I was a child, I was certain my mother was all seeing and all knowing!
20. Casey was proud of the score of eighty eight that he earned on the math test.
Apostrophes

**Exercise A**  Add apostrophes where they are needed in the following items. If an item is already correct, write C above the item.

**Example 1.** the Californians’ flag

1. didn't study
2. Brandons skates
3. how you write rs
4. womens league
5. both of the books titles
6. borrowing yours
7. the Chavezs house
8. youre my best friend
9. children’s voices
10. after theyre through

**Exercise B**  Add apostrophes where they are needed in the following sentences. Circle apostrophes that do not belong.

**Example 1.** Juan can’t find his neighbor’s lost dog.

11. Its been missing since the neighborhood party held at the Merrills house.
12. Their party wasnt that long ago—only yesterday—but Juan couldnt help worrying.
13. He played with the neighbor’s dog as much as if it were his’.
14. It’s name is Boo-Boo, which Juan at first thought was spelled with two u’s.
15. The neighbors got Boo-Boo in 95.
16. Finally, Juan found the dog in the backyard of the Changs’, whose hedge had been trimmed and shaped to form a maze.
17. The hedge, formed in a pattern of repeating ss, had confused the dog.
18. Juan had called out several Boo-Boos when the dog finally responded.
19. Juans face relaxed into a smile he couldnt repress.
20. At exactly four oclock, Boo-Boo had been found!
EXERCISE A  Add underlining, end marks, commas, semicolons, and colons where they are needed in the following sentences.

Example  1. Mr. Sizemore, my photography teacher, showed us some works by Dorothea Lange.
1. Lange a famous photographer decided while still a teenager to pursue photography
2. As a teenager in Manhattan Lange explored the city with the eyes of a photographer she promised herself she would one day take pictures for a living
3. What an ambitious admirable teenager she was
4. Lange did in fact become a professional photographer she took portraits of wealthy residents of San Francisco
5. When the Great Depression struck the country she began photographing migrant workers for the California State Emergency Relief Administration
6. Her goal was this to show the inhuman housing conditions in which these people lived
7. In a similar job for the Farm Security Administration she photographed farmers sharecroppers and other poverty-stricken groups
8. Referring to photography Lange once said “You go in over your head, not just up to your neck”
9. Do you feel this passionately about anything
10. Go to the library bookstore or Internet look at some of Lange’s work in Dorothea Lange Photographs of a Lifetime

EXERCISE B  Add apostrophes, quotation marks, hyphens, parentheses, brackets, and dashes where they are needed in the following sentences.

Example  1. I’m going to the party—I think I mentioned it—with a friend.
11. Duncan had been looking forward to the party the one at the ice rink for days.
12. When Chris he’s Duncan’s best friend had invited Duncan, hed said, “I’d love to come.
13. Ill meet you there the party location.”
14. Chriss great uncle and two of his aunts they are all quite friendly had helped plan the party.
15. Everyone all of the seventh grade class would enjoy three hours worth of skating, eating, and having fun.
**Exercise A** Add underlining, quotation marks, commas, and parentheses where they are needed in the following sentences. Circle any letters that should be capitalized or made lowercase.

**Example 1.** Here is a photograph of the space shuttle Columbia, Erin.

1. There are too many very’s in your paper, A Day in the Life of the President.
2. Casablanca check listings for show times is highly acclaimed by critics.
3. We have new students from Topeka Kansas and Portland Oregon.
4. When you pick up Ruthie from school Jane said would you also get some sandwiches?
5. Have you ever tasted cantaloupe? asked Horace. It tastes delicious. I like it.
6. The stories in this book I’m almost finished reading it have been quite entertaining.
7. Malcolm said, when you’re at the museum, look at Broken Bridge & Dreams by Salvador Dali.
8. I sat in one of the swings in the park and I watched my younger brother play.
9. John Hancock 1737–1793 was the first signer of the Declaration Of Independence.
10. Hanging from the strongest limb of the tree a swing made from an old tractor tire swayed in the breeze.

**Exercise B** Add apostrophes, hyphens, brackets, and dashes where they are needed in the following sentences. Then, add the necessary end mark for each sentence.

**Example 1.** A job—you know, work—is one of the best ways to become self—sufficient.

11. The childrens dance class is performing for their parents entertainment
12. Last week this is so funny twenty five clowns skated down Main Street
13. My cousin said, “I’ll call and tell you about it summer camp after I get there”
14. I didn’t know you’re full of surprises that you knew how to dance the salsa
15. Everyones vote counts equally in the Students Choice Award
16. The award in case you dont know shows appreciation for a teachers outstanding work
17. Are these 2s or zs? I cant tell
18. His mother-in-laws decision is final she will not sell her house this year
19. The final exam will be all encompassing that means comprehensive and will have seventy five questions on it
20. Someone’s car alarm is going off, and it couldnt be louder
EXERCISE A  On the line provided, spell each of the following words correctly or write C if it is already correct.

Example 1. resede ___________ recede
1. sheild ____________________________
2. father-in-laws ____________________
3. cheif ____________________________
4. wolfs ____________________________
5. puting ____________________________
6. disallow __________________________
7. heros ____________________________
8. childs ____________________________
9. lovelier __________________________
10. succede __________________________

EXERCISE B  For each of the following items, add the prefix or suffix given to form a new word. Write the new word on the line provided. Some letters may need to be changed, added, or dropped.

Example 1. over + run = overrun
11. in + operable = __________________________
12. dis + satisfaction = __________________________
13. open + ness = __________________________
14. il + legible = __________________________
15. safe + ly = __________________________
16. tan + ed = __________________________
17. beauty + ful = __________________________
18. mis + understand = __________________________
19. im + possible = __________________________
20. argue + ment = __________________________
EXERCISE A  In each of the following items, one word is misspelled. Underline that word, and write the correct spelling above the error.

Example 1. potatos moose receipt

1. statehood misspent unnatural
2. wiegh emptiness radios
3. taxes waxxes fazes
4. business argument rarely
5. purly oxen daily
6. knifes independent happier
7. succeed piece mother-in-laws
8. mischeif probably government
9. foxes carried procede
10. Joneses hobbys highways

EXERCISE B  Above the underlined items in each of the following sentences, write the plural form.

Example 1. How many s's and i's are in Mississippi?

11. My grandmother grows tomato and pea in her backyard garden.
12. All the Wednesday on this calendar except the one on the final two pages are misspelled.
13. Did you see any moose or wolf on your trek in the wilderness?
14. Should I make the bouquet from rose or pansy?
15. The story was illustrated with paintings of fairy and elf.
16. Both of my sister-in-law have piano in their houses.
17. The woman in this photograph are wearing clothing from the 1800.
18. Both of the lawyers placed their legal brief in their briefcase.
19. Two mouse scurried under the bush along the fence.
20. Replace all the really in this paper with more interesting word choice.
EXERCISE A  In each of the following sentences, underline the correct word or words in parentheses.

Example 1. The bright blue painting (complements, compliments) the decor of the room.

1. It has always been my (principal, principle) to treat people as I want to be treated.

2. Elena told them that (their, there, they’re) accents differ from those of South American Spanish speakers.

3. Jason doesn’t know (weather, whether) to go swimming or ride his bicycle.

4. (Its, It’s) not my fault a stray dog ate our lunches!

5. Whenever I try to wear my older brother’s clothes, they are too (loose, lose).

6. Gifts to the judges will not (affect, effect) their decisions.

7. I followed your (advice, advise) about getting plenty of sleep before the day of the test.

8. Camels are well-known for their endurance in the heat of the (desert, dessert).

9. The students had their photograph taken as they stood on the steps of the (capital, capitol).

10. Which person from your (passed, past) would you most want to see again?

11. It is the (principal, principle) who calls the assembly each week.

12. The letter was written on formal business (stationary, stationery).

13. There are (to, too, two) many details for one lesson; we’ll cover the rest tomorrow.

14. I found (your, you’re) bracelet where you had left it in the locker room.

15. I’ll (accept, except) your help with the yard work if you will join me for frozen yogurt later.

16. “Your visit is (altogether, all together) unexpected,” said Grandma, “but you are welcome nevertheless.”

17. Be sure to engage the parking (brake, break) if you park the car on a hill.

18. The texture of this sandpaper is too (coarse, course) to use for our project.

19. Martin has contributed a number of wonderful ideas to the school’s (council, counsel) on fitness.

20. Someone always (looses, loses) the remote control to the TV.
EXERCISE A  For each of the following items, add the prefix or suffix, or write the plural form of the word on the line provided. Some letters may need to be changed, added, or dropped.

Examples 1. rare + ly = ___________ rarely
2. & + (Plural) = ___________ #’s

1. un + real = ___________.
2. journey + (plural) = ___________.
3. curly + ness = ___________.
4. leaf + (plural) = ___________.
5. train + able = ___________.
6. drive-in + (plural) = ___________.
7. rate + ings = ___________.
8. approximate + ly = ___________.
9. 1950 + (plural) = ___________.
10. busy + ness = ___________.

EXERCISE B  In each of the following sets of words, underline the misspelled word. Then, write the correct spelling above it.

Example 1. serving dayly readily

11. unnatural intercede dancing
12. believe envyable tapping
13. taxxes conceit argument
14. supersede proceed succede
15. openness reddest wieght
16. employable cryzyness freezing
17. admireable yield impossible
18. cheif dislocate changing
19. formally discount conceed
20. loneliness routinly fiercest
Review A: Standard Usage

**Exercise A** Each of the items below contains one of the following errors: a sentence fragment, a run-on sentence, a lack of agreement between subject and verb, a lack of agreement between pronoun and antecedent, or a misplaced modifier. Revise each sentence to correct any errors.

**Examples**

1. Everyone in the bleachers waved **their** school banners.

2. Around the curve in the road, hidden from view. **the house was**

**1.** The bird had a red crest on **his or her** head.

**2.** After wiping the tables, I swept the floor the diner would be ready to open.

**3.** Our football team are going to the conference playoffs.

**4.** Hot and fluffy from the oven, the delicious muffin filled with raisins.

**5.** The candle sits on the nightstand that smells of berries.

**6.** Either Sarah or Lisa will share their book with you, but please bring your own book tomorrow.

**7.** The pages are the ones I wanted you to read with the corners folded over.

**8.** We planned a theme for the Valentine’s Day dance it was “famous couples from literature.”

**9.** Shopping for school clothes each August before school starts.

**10.** All members of the debate team **is** expected to attend the practice session.

**Exercise B** Each item below contains an error in verb form, in pronoun form, in comparative or superlative form, or a double comparison or double negative. Underline the error and write a correction above it.

**Example**

1. I’m not sure of the answers to **any** of these equations.

**11.** These jeans must have shrinked in the dryer.

**12.** Which of these four movies was interestinger?

**13.** In this fog I can’t hardly see the road before us.

**14.** Mr. McKay said that **us** volunteers are needed in the red tent.

**15.** Hockey practice today was the most longest it’s ever been.

**16.** Which are warmer: wool coats, leather coats, or down-filled coats?

**17.** It is more rapider to write your paper on a computer than by hand.

**18.** Several eggs bursted when the carton fell to the ground.

**19.** The author of the lead story in the school newspaper is **her**.

**20.** I don’t remember **nothing** about the rules for playing solitaire.
EXERCISE A  The items below contain errors in capitalization and punctuation. Circle each letter that should be capitalized or made lowercase, and add punctuation where it is needed.

Example 1. I saw my teacher at the grocery store and said, "Hello, Ms. Williams."

1. Have you ever read O. Henry’s story The Gift Of The Magi
2. The ingredients are as follows peanut butter, jelly, bread, and bananas.
3. look out for the angry wasp
4. Which street do you live on JoEllen
5. “I can offer you iced tea, said our hostess, Or I can offer you lemonade.”
6. My Mom works at Arlington Memorial hospital.
7. Answer the first twenty five questions in the third chapter of your History book
8. I called Travis Sela and Gordon but none of them were home.
9. One of my favorite books is Something Wicked This Way Comes by Ray Bradbury.
10. The calligraphy teachers instructions are to practice writing As Bs and Cs.

EXERCISE B  In each of the following sentences, underline the correct word or words in parentheses.

Example 1. You can get a refund if you still have your (reciept, receipt).

11. I enjoy the (piece, peace) and quiet of a lazy summer day.
12. Do you (truely, truly) believe I’ll win the audition?
13. The Robinsons have planted colorful marigolds in (their, there, they’re) flower beds.
14. The (facilities, facilitys) include a weight room, an aerobics studio, and an indoor track.
15. Are the dogs (already, all ready) for the show?
16. The movers (padded, paded) the furniture with protective quilts.
17. James has (shone, shown) the new student around the school.
18. Let’s take our (sleds, sledds) to the top of the hill.
19. The Jacksons (formally, formerly) lived in North Carolina.
20. Please be (carful, careful) when dusting the glass figurines.
EXERCISE A  Each item below contains an error in sentence structure, subject-verb agreement, pronoun-antecedent agreement, placement of a modifier, verb forms, pronoun forms, or formal, standard English. Revise each sentence to correct any errors.

Examples 1. The ones who are interested in your band are them.
2. Filling the vase with carnations, irises, and ferns before the party.

1. I watered the lawn before leaving for school the sun would be hot today.
2. Neither Frederick nor Heidi know when the package arrived.
3. Making a chain out of the paper clips in his desk.
4. Each of the gymnasts performed their routine for the coach.
5. Hidden in the bottom of a large red toolbox, Jamie finally found the pliers.
6. Someone ringed the doorbell, and Felicity hurried to the door.
7. Shelby, Carrie, and me are playing miniature golf on Saturday.
8. Natasha asked Jamud how come he decided against running for class treasurer.
9. Since the mail carrier had already delivered mail to the large yellow house.
10. Valued for their friendly personality, the golden retriever makes a good pet.

EXERCISE B  In the sentences below, underline the errors in capitalization, spelling, and word usage. Then, write a correction above each underlined error. Also, add any missing punctuation.

Example 1. The clerk in the dress store announced, “all clothes on this rack are on sale today.”
11. the teachers meeting included some announcements from the principle.
12. The school councilor helped me with my college applications said Josephine
13. for everyones comfort, this is a smoke free establishment
14. How did you earn fifty nine dollars asked Margaret.
15. The donations from my family are these Bens skates moms winter coat and dads extra basketball.
16. the marching band put on quiet a show the crowd loved the new routines.
17. Someday i plan to visit Paris France Rome Italy and London England.
18. These boxxes wiegh to much please help me lift each of them Rodney.
19. Meet me at 7 30 in front of the school and Ill help you memorize Genesis 1–10.
20. For my report on coral reeves I’m using a book called Underwater Life and an article titled Coral in tropical seas.
ANSWER KEY
Chapter 1: The Sentence, pp. 1–19
Choices: Exploring Sentences, p. 1

Sentences and Sentence Fragments A, p. 1

EXERCISE A

1. S 5. S 8. S
4. F

EXERCISE B
Answers will vary. Sample responses are given.
11. She sat down after she spoke.
12. She spoke for thirty minutes about her research on whales.
13. Seen from shore, a pod of whales is an exciting sight.
14. The girl in the boat was close enough to take pictures of the whales.
15. Walking on the beach, we talked about other sea mammals.

Sentences and Sentence Fragments B, p. 2

EXERCISE A

1. F 5. S 8. S
3. F 7. S 10. S
4. S

EXERCISE B
Answers will vary. Sample responses are given.
11. Yesterday, a fortunate turn of events brought a new friend into my life.
12. The cat sat at the window watching the rain dripping from the edge of the roof.
13. The surprise birthday party guests waited just inside the front door.
14. His remarkable hat, with a wide brim and a pheasant feather in the hatband, signaled the audience that he was the play’s hero.
15. How could any enemy invade the castle, built with huge, gray stones?

Sentences and Sentence Fragments C, p. 3

EXERCISE A

1. S 5. S 8. S
3. F 7. F 10. S
4. F

EXERCISE B
Answers will vary. Sample responses are given.
11. At dawn, the mountains in the east began to glow with faint colors.
12. The tumbleweed was tossed and turned by the wind.
13. Because it’s snowing tonight, the skiing will be wonderful tomorrow.
14. Whenever I see a sunset, I marvel at its beauty.
15. The colorful tropical fish are more expensive than the freshwater fish.

Subjects and Predicates, p. 4

EXERCISE A

1. S 3. S 5. S
2. S 4. P

EXERCISE B

6. Roald Amundsen led the first successful expedition to the South Pole in 1911.
7. The well-seasoned Amundsen was nearly forty years old at the time.
8. Much earlier in life, Amundsen had planned for a career in medicine.
9. By age twenty-five, the adventurous young man had changed his goal to a life at sea.
10. Who first reached the North Pole?
11. Claiming to be first was the United States explorer Robert E. Peary.
12. Another U.S. explorer, Frederick Cook, made the same claim.
13. Peary’s claim was accepted by Congress.
14. The American admiral Richard Byrd made the first flight over the South Pole in 1929.
15. Byrd had made the first flight over the North Pole in 1926 with Floyd Bennett.

**Simple and Complete Subjects, p. 5**

**EXERCISE A**

1. CS
2. SS
3. SS
4. SS

**EXERCISE B**

6. One fascinating nocturnal animal is the aardvark.
7. That strange name always makes me laugh.
8. Another animal with a strange name is the platypus.
9. One of the biggest moths in the world was named for Hercules, a mythological hero.
10. The ant lion captures ants and other insects in its sand traps.
11. The armadillo lives as far north as Texas and as far south as Argentina.
12. Some armadillos may be up to five feet long.
13. The wingspan of the American crow can reach up to three feet.
14. An intelligent bird, the crow can sometimes learn simple words and phrases.
15. Like the parrot, the crow mimics phrases of human speech.

**Simple and Complete Predicates, p. 6**

**EXERCISE A**

1. I had used a computer only a few times before this school year.
2. My classmates and I will soon be computer experts.
3. Shouldn’t every student have experience with the latest technology?
4. We have been using the computer for research assignments.
5. For example, yesterday I was researching Mark Twain.

4. At first, movies must have amazed people.
5. For many years, moviegoers watched newsreels at movie theaters.

**EXERCISE B**

6. Our trip took us through misty mountains and shady, green forests.
7. Dairy cows were grazing on the lower slopes of the hills.
8. We arrived at our destination before late afternoon.
9. The whole family was looking forward to a pleasant vacation.
10. Have you ever breathed air as pure as country air?
11. We planned as many outdoor activities as possible.
12. My personal favorite was the daily canoe trip upriver.
13. My older brother had never canoed before.
14. Did he catch fish from the stream for breakfast?
15. My sister caught several trout.

**Verb Phrases, p. 7**

**EXERCISE A**

1. I had used a computer only a few times before this school year.
2. My classmates and I will soon be computer experts.
3. Shouldn’t every student have experience with the latest technology?
4. We have been using the computer for research assignments.
5. For example, yesterday I was researching Mark Twain.
6. I had not yet read *The Adventures of Tom Sawyer.*
7. I was surfing the Internet in the computer lab.
8. I had quickly found a complete copy of the book on the Internet.
9. Since then, I have read as much of the story as possible.
10. Can you believe my good fortune?

**EXERCISE B**

11. Please don’t forget my e-mail address.
12. Every day during the holidays, I will check my messages.
13. I have always enjoyed your friendly notes.
14. We will probably exchange e-mails all summer long.
15. Isn’t technology becoming part of everyone’s social life?

**Complete and Simple Subjects and Predicates, p. 8**

**EXERCISE A**

1. The microscopic dust mite was discovered less than three decades ago.
2. This eight-legged pest is related to the tick and the spider.
3. Do you ever wash your pillow in very hot water?
4. Someone in your household should probably do so as soon as possible.
5. The daily diet of the dust mite consists of tiny skin flakes on your pillow and sheets.
6. The creatures leave tiny waste droppings in your bed.
7. These microscopic droppings mix with dust in your bedroom and in the house.
8. Unfortunately, this tainted dust may cause an allergic reaction in you or a family member.
9. How can a concerned person remove these pesky flesh-eaters from bedding?
10. Any person with laundry skills can wash bedding in the hottest wash cycle possible.

**EXERCISE B**

11. The body of the bedbug is flat and wingless.
12. This bloodthirsty bug belongs to the insect class.
13. The blood of mammals such as humans forms the bedbug’s diet.
14. A bedbug may grow to a length of a quarter of an inch.
15. The little insect usually sucks the blood of its host at night.

**Compound Subjects, p. 9**

**EXERCISE A**

1. Live oaks and white oaks should not be confused with one another.
2. The redwood and the sequoia are found in California.
3. Douglas firs and other trees of the pine family appeal to Christmas tree shoppers.
4. Most conifers and many broad-leaved plants are evergreen.
5. Does the cypress or the magnolia bear cones?
6. Maples and elms are deciduous trees.
7. In the autumn these and other deciduous trees lose their leaves.
8. Do the reds and golds of autumn trees appeal to your sense of beauty?
9. During the fall my best friend and I always gather colorful leaves.

10. These fragile, beautiful leaves and our original poems make special cards for friends.

EXERCISE B
Answers will vary. Sample responses are given.

11. Tucked away in my school bag are my books and other supplies.

12. Either our school’s amateur comedian or my best friend Todd will be voted Funniest Student of the Year.

13. Will a good band or a DJ be at your party on Saturday?

14. A muddy dog and a kid with a flashlight came bounding out of the murky darkness straight toward me.

15. In the school cafeteria today, spaghetti and spinach lasagna are the two main dishes.

Compound Verbs, p. 10

EXERCISE A

1. Some bats can fly sixty miles per hour and can also soar to a height of ten thousand feet.

2. Some species of bats fly much slower and cannot reach the same heights as others.

3. In all, more than nine hundred species of bats exist and find habitats worldwide.

4. Bats are the world’s only flying mammals and may have wingspans of over five feet.

5. The flying fox hangs in trees and can have a wingspread more than five feet across.

6. The bumblebee bat has a five-inch wingspan and weighs less than a dime.

7. All mammals, including bats and humans, grow fur or hair and nurse their young.

8. Honduran white bats grow long white fur and eat only fruit.

9. The vampire bat drinks cows’ blood but seldom consumes human blood.

10. This bat bites its prey and then hungrily laps blood from the wound.

EXERCISE B
Answers will vary. Sample responses are given.

11. In the backyard, my puppy digs holes and buries her toys.

12. Can Keisha study and eat during lunch period?

13. Every so often, I snooze and snore.

14. We run laps or climb bleachers at the track after school.

15. Do the seventh graders tutor younger kids or help them with tests?

16. Birds and squirrels squabble and tussle with each other at the bird feeder.

17. The runners stretched and sprinted before they went to the starting line.

18. Will you and Suzi wash up and set the table before dinner?

19. Each student researches and composes a paper on a topic of his or her choice.

20. The ball bounced twice and then rolled toward the end zone.

Compound Subjects and Verbs, p. 11

EXERCISE A

1. Peanuts and soybeans are the two most important sources of vegetable oil.

2. The U.S. scientist George Washington Carver researched the peanut and found more than three hundred uses for it.

3. Aren’t China and India the two major producers of peanuts in the world today?
4. Peanut plants are native to South America and belong to the pea family.

5. Does your family ever make old-fashioned peanut butter or buy it at the supermarket?

**EXERCISE B**

*Answers may vary. Typical responses are given.*

6. The private eye ducked behind the bookcase and listened to the suspects’ argument.

7. The birdbath and the small, wooden birdfeeder attract many birds.

8. The plumber fixed the pipe beneath the sink and checked the water pressure.

9. The plane lifted off and soared quickly out of sight.

10. Tweedledum and Tweedledee are characters created by Lewis Carroll.

**Subjects and Verbs A, p. 12**

**EXERCISE**

1. Have you or one of your friends ever used an abacus?

2. The abacus is an ancient arithmetic tool and consists of a frame with vertical wires or slots.

3. Beads or balls may be moved up or down in the slots in various combinations.

4. In this way, the user quickly performs calculations such as addition and subtraction.

5. You and your friends can easily find more information about the abacus on the Internet.

**EXERCISE B**

*Answers may vary. Typical responses are given.*

6. Basketball and track can give you a good cardiovascular workout.

7. Blue and gold are our school colors.

8. When will you practice your trumpet and finish your homework?

9. Will you or Bernard go to the game with Sandra’s family?

10. Members of the yearbook staff and journalists on the newspaper staff take photographs at every game.

**Subjects and Verbs B, p. 13**

**EXERCISE**

1. Have you or Kimberly found your tap shoes yet?

2. Alec or James will wash and dry the dishes after dinner tonight.

3. In my school, both the Spanish club and the German club have at least twenty members.

4. Where are the batteries for this flashlight?

5. At the end of the school year, we will either take a class trip or have a party.

6. She added the numbers and then checked the answer.


8. Andrés and Clarence searched the room and looked on all the shelves.

9. You should wear sturdy shoes and pack a raincoat.

10. Are you expecting rain during the hike?

11. The newspaper and the radio carried stories about the weather.

12. Fog and rain are expected this afternoon.
13. We could cancel the hike and meet at the museum.

14. The new exhibit about Egypt is open and should be interesting.

15. Do you and your sister take the bus or walk to school?

16. We usually take the bus in the morning and walk home in the afternoon.

17. She has band practice and works in the library after school.

18. My friend Nita and I belong to several of the same clubs.

19. Nita walks home with my sister and me on Tuesdays and Thursdays.

20. Either Max or his brother Sam rented a boat and went fishing last summer.

Classifying Sentences by Purpose A, p. 14

EXERCISE A
1. IMP  3. DEC  5. EXC
2. INT  4. IMP

EXERCISE B
1. DEC
6. I have recently learned some interesting facts from American history.

2. IMP
7. Consider the similarities between President Lincoln and President Kennedy.

3. DEC
8. President Abraham Lincoln was elected in 1860.

4. EXC
9. Did you know that John F. Kennedy was elected president in 1960?

Classifying Sentences by Purpose B, p. 15

EXERCISE A
1. DEC
6. The sculptor recycles metal in her work.

2. INT
7. Isn’t that the rim of a bicycle wheel?

3. IMP
8. She has transformed junk into animals and other recognizable forms.

4. DEC
9. What a sense of humor she has!

EXERCISE B
Answers may vary. Typical responses are given.
6. How brilliant the colors in the stained-glass window are!

7. I wonder whether I have time to get to the store before it closes.

8. Did you forget to bring the library books to school?

9. That was an exciting race.

10. Turn off the lights when you leave the room.
Review A: Sentences and Sentence Fragments, p. 16

EXERCISE

1. F
2. S
3. F
4. F
5. S
6. S
7. F
8. F
9. F
10. S
11. F
12. S
13. S
14. F
15. F
16. S
17. S
18. S
19. F
20. S
21. F
22. S
23. F
24. S
25. F

Review B: Subjects and Predicates, p. 17

EXERCISE

1. An unusual event occurred at our beach last summer.
2. Two girls were jogging along the beach.
3. They heard a strange sound.
4. Thrashing around in the water was a dark object.
5. A helpless dolphin was being tossed around by the waves.
6. The worried joggers called the Center for Coastal Studies.
7. Two dolphin experts soon arrived at the beach.
8. They moved into the cold surf near the dolphin.
9. Scientists at the local aquarium cared for the dolphin.
10. The healthy dolphin was released into the ocean several months later.
11. Have you ever been to the ocean?
12. Dolphins and whales are mammals, not fish.
13. An aquatic mammal, such as a dolphin or whale, breathes air through a blowhole on top of the head.
14. Fish have gills.
15. Most salmon are born in fresh water but live part of their lives in the ocean.
16. The thousand-mile migration of the salmon fascinates me.
17. Fish “ladders” are built near dams and help the salmon on their voyage.
18. Leaps of more than ten feet have been recorded.
19. The longest spawning trip exceeds two thousand miles.
20. Salmon spawn in fresh water.
21. A Pacific salmon spawns in the stream of its birth and then dies.
22. An Atlantic salmon may spawn as many as three times in its lifetime.
23. The female fish digs several saucer-shaped nests in the bed of a stream.
24. One ten-pound female may deposit up to ten thousand eggs at spawning time.
25. A smolt is a young salmon.

Review C: Compound Subjects and Compound Verbs, p. 18

EXERCISE

The rewritten sentences will vary. Sample responses are given.

1. will hike, take—Today my cousin Luke and I will hike and take photographs of the land behind his house.
2. reviews, summarizes—Before tests, Shanti and her friends review and summarize all their notes from class.
3. smiled, waved—The pilot and the co-pilot smiled and waved at the crew.

4. reduced, delayed—The sleet and rain reduced visibility at the airport and delayed the flight.

5. joined, accompanied—The new bus driver and tour guide joined us at Stonehenge and accompanied us to London.

6. was cleaned, given—The table and chairs were cleaned thoroughly and given a fresh coat of paint.

7. singing, dancing—Rachel and Tom are singing a song and dancing for the talent show.

8. filled, created—Cars and trucks filled the roadways and created a massive traffic jam.

9. frowned, sighed, did—My brother Angelo and I frowned and sighed but finally did the yardwork.

10. takes, hopes—Tara and Jena take ice-skating lessons and hope to skate professionally.

Review D: Kinds of Sentences and Sentence Fragments, p. 19

Exercise

1. Named for the Roman goddess Juno.

2. Please bring me that calendar.

3. When will we plan the birthday party for Julio?

4. How exciting it was to win a gold medal!

5. Please be careful with the bleach, Suzi.

6. After Emily and Rosa climbed slowly up the side of the hill...

7. How magnificent the view of the valley is!

8. Can you see the village from there?

9. Hand me the binoculars, please.

10. As a hawk soared gracefully over the valley...

11. Waiting for fifteen minutes in the rain...

12. Watch out!

13. How often do you baby-sit for the McCluskys?

14. I promise that I won’t forget about our next appointment.

15. Since repairing the broken appliance...

16. Please don’t stand so close to the curb.

17. Carrying my little sister all the way across the rickety bridge and to safety...

18. Put down your pencils and pass your papers forward.

19. Will be sitting in front of you tomorrow after lunch.

20. Would you volunteer?
Chapter 2: Parts of Speech Overview, pp. 20–36

The Noun, p. 20

EXERCISE A

1. When a volcano erupted in the Sunda Strait of Indonesia, the whole world felt the effects.
2. The noise from the eruption of Krakatoa could be heard at great distances.
3. The force from the blast could be felt as far away as Hawaii.
4. A cloud of ash circled the globe and created spectacular sunsets.
5. Volcanic eruptions are powerful forces that can affect the entire planet and its living creatures.

EXERCISE B

6. Please put these new books in the bookcase over there.
7. Takako Mioshi, an exchange student, is here from Japan for the year.
8. Mr. Morales was fascinated by the koalas at the San Diego Zoo.
9. Manuel is the new goalie on the team.
10. Stephanie is having a party after the football game.
11. Did your grandparents go to Hawaii for a convention or a vacation?
12. The storm interrupted the final game of the World Series.
13. The journalists learned to have faith in their editor in chief.
14. Lucy, a young chimpanzee, learned several words in sign language.
15. Ryan always puts a little humor into his term papers.

Common and Proper Nouns, p. 21

EXERCISE A

1. Jules Verne must have loved adventure.
2. Born in France, he worked on a ship when he was a boy.
3. Later he studied law in Paris, but he preferred a career in literature.
4. He wrote a popular play, which provided only a little income.
5. Verne found a job as a stockbroker, but he also pursued his literary dreams.
6. He wrote books about imaginary adventures, such as A Journey to the Center of the Earth.
7. The public loved these stories and eagerly awaited each new novel.
8. Many of his books, including Around the World in Eighty Days, have been made into movies.
9. These novels by Verne influenced another famous writer, H. G. Wells.
10. Wells wrote over one hundred books, including The War of the Worlds.

EXERCISE B

Answers will vary. Sample responses are given.

11. Don’t forget to take your copy of Barrio Boy to English.
12. I would love to travel to England and Japan.
13. To get to Tallahassee, you need to get on I-10.
14. Before we go to the Paramount Theater, I should tell Uncle Josh where we’ll be.
15. I am learning to speak Spanish and French.
Concrete Nouns, Abstract Nouns, and Collective Nouns, p. 22

EXERCISE A

1. ABS
2. CON
3. CON
4. ABS
5. CON
6. CON
7. ABS
8. CON
9. ABS
10. CON

EXERCISE B

11. I sing tenor in a quartet.
12. Everyone in the group received a door prize.
13. The team arrived early and went to the locker room.
14. As I watched, a flock of geese flew overhead.
15. The jury filed into their seats and listened to the judge’s instructions.
16. During lunch today the committee will meet to plan fund-raising events.
17. Can you find your way through this thick grove of trees?
18. The cat and her litter found a home in my dog’s abandoned doghouse.
19. When Jared hit the beehive with a stick, a swarm of angry bees flew out.
20. For this short flight, the plane needs a crew of only three.

Identifying Kinds of Nouns, p. 23

EXERCISE

1. Mrs. Perry was planning a field trip to Carlsbad Caverns in New Mexico.
2. Parts of Carlsbad Caverns are still unexplored.
3. The giant formations produce feelings of awe in many visitors.
4. She captured our interest by describing cave-dwelling animals and fish.
5. Blindfish live in dark areas such as caves and underground streams.
6. A distinguishing characteristic of these fish is blindness.
7. They have nerves on their bodies that have a special sensitivity.
8. When tiny animals such as amphipods move, the blindfish sense the movement.
9. In this way, the fish can find and eat smaller animals without using sight.
10. A blindfish may eat its own offspring if it senses their movement.
11. These young fish stop moving when they feel something swimming nearby.
12. Blindfish may be found in Mammoth Cave in Kentucky and in other caves across the U.S.
13. Mammoth Cave is part of the longest known cave system in the world.
14. As a result of our field trip to the caves, I developed a desire to learn more.
15. I learned that geologists study caves and the stalactites and stalagmites within.
16. The Geology Department at Idaho State University has an interesting Web site.
17. It contains photos, information, and links to other Web sites about geology.
18. All of this fascinating information has increased my enthusiasm and curiosity.
19. My cousin belongs to a group of cave explorers.
20. Before I join, I will have to conquer my fear of the dark.
Pronouns and Antecedents, p. 24

EXERCISE A
1. You have probably read or heard Aesop’s fables.
2. Aesop was once a Greek slave; he may have lived on the island of Samos.
3. Aesop told stories about animals with human traits; they spoke and thought like people.
4. One well-known story is about a boy who cried “Wolf!” even though he saw no wolf.
5. Later, when the boy was in real danger from a wolf, he again cried “Wolf!”
6. The villagers had grown tired of the boy’s false alarms, and they ignored his cries.
7. Have you heard the story about the ant and the grasshopper?
8. The grasshopper chirps and plays during summer, and it does not prepare for winter.
9. The ant works hard at storing food, and this food saves it from starving in the winter.
10. Reading these tales is enjoyable, and it doesn’t take long.

EXERCISE B
Answers may vary slightly.
11. Larry, will you please work this math problem?
12. These plants do not bear flowers, nor are they poisonous.
13. My ten-year-old cat is jealous, and my ten-year-old cat has not accepted the new kitten.
14. When Amanda and Kirsten got to class, Amanda and Kirsten realized they were late.
15. Learning to type is slow, but learning to type is worthwhile.

Personal, Reflexive, and Intensive Pronouns, p. 25

EXERCISE
1. Sara picked up a handout for herself.
2. Are you aware of the dangers of smoking?
3. We should not let ourselves overlook the plight of the homeless.
4. “I will not tolerate lateness,” the band leader told us.
5. The principal himself called me with the good news.
6. “Jogging is not for me,” said Dr. Wong.
7. The cat found a hiding place for itself.
8. After the twins frosted the cake, they looked for candles to put on it.
9. Before you mop the floor, please move the chairs.
10. Don’t wear the new boots until you waterproof them.
11. I can’t believe they won the contest!
12. Sometimes I make myself laugh.
13. Max asked, “Are you ready to come with me and do our homework now?”
14. Ms. Lin found herself looking forward to the afternoon classes.
15. Where will you find yourself a sweater like Kerry’s?
16. The choir director said that he himself would sing a solo.
17. If you want to join us, call him now.
18. The dog itself opened the gate!
19. Have you met them?
20. The climbers pulled themselves onto the narrow ledge.

Demonstrative Pronouns and Relative Pronouns, p. 26

EXERCISE

1. The equator, which crosses Africa, is at 0° latitude.
2. These are the Atlantic and the Indian Oceans.
3. Chinua Achebe, whose native country is Nigeria, won the Nobel Prize in literature in 1989.
4. The water that lies to the west of Africa is the Atlantic Ocean.
5. “That is the small African republic, Togo,” Mr. Lawson told us.
6. The Mediterranean Sea, which borders Africa to the north, is the largest inland sea in the world.
7. Commercial fishers who work in the Mediterranean Sea catch tuna, sardines, and anchovies.
8. These are among the four hundred species of fish in this sea.
9. Is that the Kalahari Desert or the Sahara?
10. The country in Africa that fascinates me most is Egypt.
11. Joseph Conrad, whom I studied in English class, wrote a novel about the Congo.
12. Captain Marlow, who is the main character of Heart of Darkness, is a sailor.
13. Libya, which lies south of the Mediterranean Sea, borders the western side of Egypt.
14. “Is this Madagascar?” I asked, pointing to an island east of Africa.
15. The map doesn’t show the Tropic of Capricorn, which runs through Madagascar.
16. That is not possible!
17. The Tropic of Capricorn is an imaginary line that marks the southern edge of the tropics.
18. That is the Tropic of Cancer, the northern boundary of the tropics.
19. They are the southernmost and northernmost points at which the sun is directly overhead.
20. These are really hard to see on this map.

Indefinite Pronouns and Interrogative Pronouns, p. 27

EXERCISE A

1. Will many attend the school play?
2. Several of my friends are attending with me.
3. Who did you say is the lead actor?
4. Nobody is more excited about the play than I!
5. Which of the costumes do you prefer?

EXERCISE B

6. Whom are you tutoring in Spanish?
7. Everything is starting to make sense now.
8. Few could restrain their laughter at the unexpected joke.
9. Will somebody erase the chalkboards, please?
10. Others are low-fat, such as the baked chicken and rice.
11. Who will volunteer as a tutor this semester?
12. Whose is this backpack blocking the aisle?
13. Many of the dishes in the cafeteria are vegetarian.

14. Which of these science experiments is yours?

15. The principal announced that all will participate in the fund-raising event.

**Identifying Kinds of Pronouns, p. 28**

**EXERCISE**

1. These are Elberta peaches, which are very popular in the United States.

2. Nobody really knows where the fruit came from originally.

3. We read a story that may or may not be true.

4. Who started the story?

5. A man in Georgia, whose name was Samuel Rumph, grew peaches.

6. One of them was particularly beautiful.

7. The man named the peach after his wife, Elberta.

8. He soon found himself at the forefront of commercial peach production in Georgia.

9. He developed ways to ship peaches so they would arrive in good condition.

10. The Elberta peach itself is very firm and ships well.

**Adjectives and Articles, p. 29**

**EXERCISE A**

1. Yes, Sylvia has an older brother.

2. The sudden wind chilled us.

3. Someday you may own a small electric car.

4. Edna ordered a large sandwich with extra onions.

5. The mysterious noises terrified everyone.

6. Mary Shelley wrote a horror story.

7. The plot of the story was imaginative.

8. One rainy summer, she had listened to several stories about ghosts.

9. Friends had made up scary stories about monsters.

10. Someone challenged the group to write a ghost story.

11. Mary thought about the stories all night and had a strange nightmare.

12. She dreamed of a young scientist who created a monster.

13. Mary wrote a story of the ghastly nightmare and called it *Frankenstein*.

14. The eerie novel was very successful.

15. Several movies have been made from it.

**Noun or Adjective? p. 30**

**EXERCISE A**

1. This town needs a good dress shop.

2. Allison bought a white dress for the dance.

3. The glass top on that table is difficult to clean.

4. This glass is still dirty.

5. Tomorrow is my birthday.

6. Ramona mailed a birthday card to her grandmother.

7. Put some of this good Texas barbecue sauce on your sandwich.

8. Sam Houston was the president of Texas before it became a state.

9. Many attended the holiday festival.

10. I received many cards during the holiday.
**EXERCISE B**

*Answers will vary. Sample responses are given.*

11. Silver is the precious metal given at twenty-fifth wedding anniversaries. / The silver ring symbolizes enduring love.

12. Will somebody please answer that annoying telephone? / The telephone booth was missing its phone book.

13. We recycle most of our paper. / Do you know how to fold a paper airplane?

14. Eek! I just saw a mouse in the pantry! / Becca, please keep the trackball on the mouse pad.

15. Wear a hat to protect your head from the fierce sunlight. / Meet me in the hat store.

**Demonstrative Adjectives, p. 31**

**EXERCISE A**

1. Is that cloth as soft as silk?  
2. Those peppers burn like fire!  
3. These are as valuable as gold.  
4. Listen to this girl sing.  
5. That is as black as coal.

**EXERCISE B**

6. These marigolds are a rich shade of gold.  
7. On the other hand, those are pale yellow.  
8. My windowsill garden contains these herbs: chives, parsley, and basil.  
9. Those pepper plants will provide us with plenty of jalapeños.  
10. This is the perfect place for the bed of pansies.  
11. That plant is poisonous, so don’t let the dog chew it.

**Common and Proper Adjectives, p. 32**

If you classify possessive pronouns as adjectives, then underscoring my in 4, your in 6, and my in 8 may be considered correct.

**EXERCISE A**

1. I like *melodious* and *eerie* Celtic music.  
2. Do you prefer *Spanish* architecture?  
3. I’m *fascinated* by the stories from *Greek* mythology. (*Fascinated* can also be considered as part of the verb phrase, not as an adjective. *Either answer is correct.*)  
4. Would you come to my *New Year’s Eve* party?  
5. Was T. S. Eliot *American* or *English*?  
6. I love your *Australian* accent!  
7. I am studying *Roman* architecture as well as *modern* styles of building.

8. I asked for a gray pony for my *thirteenth* birthday, but I didn’t get one.

9. Ashley Bryan is a master storyteller.

10. Bryan has also illustrated books such as *It’s Kwanzaa Time!*

**EXERCISE B**

*Answers will vary. Sample responses are given.*

11. Italian opera  
12. Buddhist temple  
13. Midwestern states  
14. Labor Day parade  
15. California highway

**Noun, Pronoun, or Adjective? p. 33**

**EXERCISE**

1. Many have heard about how the pony express carried the mail in 1860 and 1861.

2. However, the pony express lasted only *eighteen* months.

3. Among its *young* riders was William Cody, later known as Buffalo Bill.
4. The arrival of transcontinental telegraph lines put an end to the pony express.
5. Even the fastest riders could not compete with the telegraph.
7. A scarf made of wool may be warmer than a silk scarf.
8. These plants have poisonous leaves.
9. I can’t believe you said that!
10. This is just a summer shower, so it won’t last long.
11. Louis Braille invented a special alphabet that allows people with visual impairments to read.
12. The alphabet uses raised dots that the visually impaired can feel.
13. The dots are arranged in patterns, with different patterns standing for individual letters or sounds.
14. A person reads Braille by rubbing one or two fingertips over the elevated dots.
15. Using a pointed stylus and a metal slate, a person can write Braille by hand.
16. People also use Braille typewriters and computers.
17. These are the short stories that my friends and I wrote.
18. This story is especially funny, and I wrote it.
19. All of us are going to enter the annual short story contest.
20. One of us is sure to win the prize, which is a scholarship to a summer writing workshop.

Review A: Nouns, p. 34

EXERCISE A
1. William Sydney Porter had talent.
2. The man was a writer.
3. His pen name was O. Henry.
4. Porter spent three years in jail.
5. His first story was published by St. Paul Pioneer Press while he was a prisoner.
6. Owney was a stray dog found behind a post office in New York.
7. The clerks in the post office gave food to the friendly animal.
8. Owney traveled all over the United States, hitching rides on trains.
9. Soon, his collar jingled with metal tags from cities all over the country.
10. Owney traveled to Europe by boat and then was given a jacket to hold all the tags.

EXERCISE B
11. COM, ABS
12. COM, CON
13. PROP, CON
14. COM, CON
15. COM, ABS
16. COM, CON
17. COM, ABS
18. PROP, CON
19. COM, CON
20. COM, CON

Review B: Pronouns and Antecedents, p. 35

EXERCISE A
1. The instructor herself first demonstrated the dive.
2. Aaron cooked the entire meal himself.
3. The proud athlete will display her trophy in the school’s trophy case.
4. A frightened hedgehog curls itself into a ball.
5. The artist wanted you to come to the gallery opening.
6. Tyra baked two loaves and then sliced them.
7. The swim team outdid itself in the freestyle relay.
8. Consuela smiled and said, “I know the words to the song.”
9. The senator herself signed the letter.
10. Is the sponge you bought natural or artificial?

**EXERCISE B**

11. Who is the boy who wore the red wig in the first act?
12. Hairstyle is one of the personal details that Janet always notices.
13. Everyone who enters the lab must wear a coverall.
14. Whom will the class choose as a representative?
15. Lily was the only person who voted against the measure.
16. These are the best photographs that Pat has ever seen!
17. Jamal called the house, but no one answered.
18. Please put away the boxes that are on the floor, and then help Marvin move this.
19. What should Susan bring to the party?
20. Of all the fruits, these have the most vitamin C.

**Review C: Adjectives and Articles, p. 36**

**EXERCISE A**

1. Have you ever seen the huge rosebush in Tombstone, Arizona?

2. Every spring, the bush is covered with white flowers.
3. The bush was brought over from Great Britain.
4. It is a specimen of the Lady Banksia rose.
5. It has a thick trunk and many branches.
6. The plant is very old now.
7. Many people travel to Tombstone to see this bush.
8. It grows beside the old Rose Tree Inn.
9. The rosebush covers a large area.
10. One source calls it the largest rosebush in the world.

**EXERCISE B**

11. A cameo is a carving on a striated gemstone, semiprecious gem, or shell.
12. A striated gem or shell has veins of different colors.
13. The artist cuts the carving on the lighter color.
14. The darker color forms a complementary background.
15. Nowadays most cameos feature the profile of a head.
16. The history of cameos traces back to ancient Egypt, Greece, and Etruria.
17. The ancient Egyptians placed carved stone seals in their tombs.
18. The carved pattern on these seals was the scarab beetle.
19. The scarab was a mystic symbol.
20. Ancient Egyptians sometimes wore a carving of a scarab as a charm.
Chapter 3: Parts of Speech Overview, pp. 37–55

The Verb, p. 37

**EXERCISE**

1. The giraffe’s neck *forms* about half of its height.
2. The giraffe *has* a short tufted mane on its long neck.
3. A mature giraffe *is* approximately eighteen feet tall.
4. All giraffes *develop* two to four horns.
5. Reddish brown splotches *highlight* their pale brown coats.
6. The glass snake *is* actually a legless lizard.
7. Some people *call* them glass lizards.
8. These lizards *live* in North America, Eurasia, and Africa.
9. Their smooth skins *are* usually brown or green.
10. A groove *runs* along each side of the glass snake’s body.

**Action Verbs, p. 38**

**EXERCISE A**

1. Jon *collected* gold, red, and yellow leaves.
2. He *carefully placed* them in his backpack.
3. I wondered *why*.
4. Later, he *told* me about his plan.
5. He *knew* of a market for these beautiful leaves.
6. A local craft shop *buys* the leaves for craft classes.
7. For example, the class on greeting cards *uses* colorful leaves regularly.
8. The art classes always *want* leaves, too.
9. Artists *incorporate* the foliage into collages.
10. People *enjoy* the “back to nature” tone of this artwork.

**EXERCISE B**

11. I *remember* my great-grandmother’s recipe for gumbo.
12. The shrimp, vegetables, and spices *simmer* together.
13. I always *drop* a little hot pepper sauce into the pot.
14. Meanwhile, white rice *steams* until tender.
15. I *prefer* this mild rice along with the spicy gumbo.

**Linking Verbs, p. 39**

**EXERCISE A**

1. The huge diamond mine *is* now a museum.
2. The computerized voice *sounds* human to me.
3. After the storm, the islanders grew nervous at the sight of all the dark clouds.

4. Some of the bristlecone pine trees are very old.

5. The farm animals looked quite content.

EXERCISE B

6. Burr became one of the most colorful characters in U.S. history.


8. At age twenty-one, he was a commanding officer of an entire regiment.

9. He resigned in 1779 because of ill health.

10. Later, Burr practiced law.

11. He almost always looked healthy and successful.

12. Burr and Alexander Hamilton were long-time enemies.


14. Hamilton died from his wound.

15. Burr’s political career was soon over.

Helping Verbs and Main Verbs, p. 40

EXERCISE A

1. Perhaps we should learn more about birthday celebrations in various countries.

2. Mexicans will sometimes buy a piñata for a birthday party.

3. The piñata is filled with small treats and gifts.

4. In Mexico, families will usually celebrate a girl’s fifteenth birthday with a special party.

5. This traditional celebration is called a quinceañera.

6. In the United States, a girl’s sixteenth birthday is often treated as a special birthday.

7. Some people do not like birthday celebrations.

8. They might not tell you their age.

9. Other people have celebrated in spectacular ways.

10. Maybe I will celebrate my birthday in a new way this year.

EXERCISE B

The paragraph contains ten verb phrases.

Scientists can explain the causes of thunder. The sound of thunder is caused by the heat of lightning. A bolt of lightning can heat nearby air molecules. The air molecules will then expand, and they will also move. Their movement can create sounds and echoes. Because light can travel faster than sound, you will first see the lightning. The flash will occur almost immediately; only afterward will you hear the thunder.

Transitive and Intransitive Verbs, p. 41

EXERCISE A

1. At this airport, no planes land after dark.

2. My sister and I planted tomatoes and onions.

3. Rick’s parrot screams all day long.

4. Everyone ran quickly toward the exit.

5. Of all the contestants, Ming Chin caught the largest fish.

EXERCISE B

Answers will vary. Sample responses are given.

6. Erin will not forget her spelling notebook.

7. Ernesto will recite “The Kraken” next.

8. Today we will draw silhouettes with charcoal.

9. While one partner works the puzzle, the other watches the clock.

10. Michael, can you cook linguine with tomatoes and basil?
Identifying Kinds of Verbs, p. 42

**EXERCISE A**

1. We are late, Tony.
2. That would be wonderful!
3. Terrence sings in the school choir.
4. I have traveled to Scotland twice.
5. I dreamed vividly last night.
6. Throw the football!
7. How far is the park?
8. Guess again, Lori.
9. She has become quite famous.
10. Will you come to my party?

**EXERCISE B**

11. Several songbirds chirped sweetly outside my window.
12. This weekend we will build a bird feeder.
13. I will fill it with birdseed daily.
14. Dozens of birds will visit our backyard soon.
15. I can relax while listening to bird songs.

The Adverb, p. 43

**EXERCISE A**

1. Vivi Malloy rides her horse daily.
2. She has always wanted to make the U.S. Equestrian Team.
3. Vivi rides a very attractive chestnut horse named Penny Red.
4. Vivi usually cleans the horse’s stall after school.
5. Then she grooms her horse.
7. Penny Red trots briskly around the ring.
8. Penny Red and Vivi especially enjoy jumping.
9. They have competed successfully in several shows.
10. Vivi’s parents always attend her shows.

**EXERCISE B**

Answers will vary. Sample responses are given.

11. usually
12. cleverly
13. always
14. often
15. easily

Adverbs and the Words They Modify, p. 44

**EXERCISE**

Answers will vary. Sample responses are given.

1. Most of the kids we know are spending money frivolously. [Frivolously modifies are spending, a verb.]
2. They are also complaining constantly about not having enough money. [Constantly modifies are complaining, a verb.]
3. They get their allowance weekly. [Weekly modifies get, a verb.]
4. They quickly spend it all. [Quickly modifies spend, a verb.]
5. Armand and I really do not want to spend every cent we have. [Really modifies do want, a verb.]
6. Armand diligently mows lawns in his neighborhood. [Diligently modifies mows, a verb.]
7. Mowing lawns isn’t very practical for me because I live in an apartment building. [Very modifies practical, an adjective.]
8. Instead, I walk dogs and run errands daily for people in my building. [Daily modifies walk and run, verbs.]
9. I can simultaneously earn extra money and meet new neighbors. [Simultaneously modifies can earn and meet, verbs.]
10. I am wisely saving my earnings in a bank account. [Wisely modifies am saving, a verb.]

Adverb or Adjective? p. 45

**EXERCISE**

1. The kindly stranger helped the lost child.
2. At noon, the whistle blew shrilly.
3. I carefully tested the heat of the water.
4. My young niece’s frilly dress was hand-made by her mother.
5. I rose early and jogged three miles.
6. The early bird catches the worm.
7. Candace had rarely been late.
8. For some reason, I laughed uncontrollably.
10. My daily lunch is fruit, pretzels, and a sandwich.
11. This brightly lit room will be perfect for my art studio.
12. The air over the city is refreshing clear of smog.
13. The timely bell saved me from a dozen more sit-ups in gym class.
14. I was extremely tired by the end of the day.
15. The monthly meeting was held in the cafeteria.
16. The club meets monthly, doesn’t it?
17. With a queenly smile, she dismissed the knight.
18. John smiled shyly and then started to laugh.
19. Our yearly trip to Vermont was postponed.
20. He easily lifted the cabinet.

The Preposition, p. 46

Exercise A

1. The bottom of the ocean is very dark.
2. In most places, it is also cold.
3. However, in some places the ocean floor is warm.
4. One such place is near the Galapagos Islands.
5. Scientists discovered a crack in the ocean floor.
6. They found that heat poured from this crack.
7. The heat was rising from the earth.
8. Many plants and animals lived around this spot.
10. These life forms lived eight thousand feet below the water’s surface.

Exercise B

Answers may vary. Sample responses are given.

11. on
12. near
13. with
14. Beneath
15. after
16. around
17. in front of
18. of
19. Since
20. behind

Prepositional Phrases, p. 47

Exercise A

1. A copper-colored snake slithered along the rotting log.
2. During a crisis, David sometimes loses his temper.
3. The pigs found their food under the shallow water.
4. That ancient bridge was built 155 feet above the Gard River.
5. The newscaster slipped on the ice as he hurried along.

Exercise B

Answers will vary. Sample responses are given.

6. The frightened soldier hid under the overturned jeep.
7. Canditha wore a beautiful scarf over one shoulder.
8. Suddenly, the prisoners heard a faint scratching noise from the next cell.
9. The creature had hideous green tentacles on its head and back.
10. The noisy helicopter landed in the parking lot.

**Preposition or Adverb? p. 48**

**EXERCISE**

1. The poison ivy climbed around the trunk of the tree.
2. I looked up but didn’t see the source of the noise.
3. The ship slowly sailed away.
4. Do not put the bread bag near the hot burner on the stove.
5. When did you say you are coming over?
6. I could go to your house instead.
7. If I inherited a million dollars, I would spread my wealth around a little.
8. For example, I would give all my friends a shopping spree in their favorite stores.
9. My brother got a ticket for parking in front of a fire hydrant.
10. He was able to pay the fine through the mail.
11. Should I flip the pancake over yet?
12. I could barely squeeze through.
13. Once upon a time, there was a very hungry dragon.
14. Without you and Jessie, I couldn’t have done it.
15. I can sprint to that tree or beyond it.
16. I have never seen anything like this before!
17. Our star party will last from dusk till dawn.
18. Is there really a ghost in Wuthering Heights?
19. Yes, the ghost of Catherine tries to get inside Heathcliff’s house during a storm.
20. With the dog close behind, the cat scrambled up the fence and out of its reach.

**The Conjunction A, p. 49**

**EXERCISE A**

1. I pressed the button, but the elevator did not stop.
2. Either Eddie or Pang will deliver the furniture.
3. We wanted to go sledding, but the snow was starting to melt.
4. Jennifer repeated the caller’s number and wrote it on the pad.
5. Neither strawberries nor raspberries are in season right now.
6. Pandora was curious but frightened.
7. Don’t sail now, for the winds are too strong.
8. The children are not only tired but also cranky.
9. Leotie wondered whether she should go or stay home.
10. Do you want me to make the fruit punch or blow up the balloons?

**EXERCISE B**

Answers may vary. Sample responses are given.

11. or
12. but
13. nor
14. Either, or
15. and
16. Both, and
17. but
18. whether, or
19. Not only, but, also
20. so

**The Conjunction B, p. 50**

**EXERCISE**

Answers will vary. Sample responses are given.

1. Rudy plays not only the trumpet but also the trombone.
2. The horse bucked and reared.
3. Scott and Paco served the first course.
4. My sister neither speaks nor reads Russian.
5. The building trembled yet did not collapse.
6. Daniel played basketball and baseball.
7. The birds and the squirrels ate from the bird feeder.
8. A large bear waded into the water and caught a salmon.
9. The candle flickered and went out.
10. Shannon studied not only the trees but also the plants in the forest.

The Interjection, p. 51

Exercise
1. Ouch! I stubbed my toe.
2. Oh, maybe we should wait.
3. Help! My experiment blew up!
4. Well, it isn’t raining as hard now.
5. You won that much! Wow!
6. Eureka! I have found it!
7. Well, it sounds like fun, but I have to work.
8. Hooray! We won first place!
9. Oops! I spilled juice on the floor.
10. Shucks, that’s not so fast.
11. She swung the bat and, bam, the ball flew out of the park.
12. Pow! Every time he hits the bag it pops back.
13. Oh, that isn’t so impressive.
14. After it started raining, well, we went home.
15. Aha! So you’re the mysterious good Samaritan!
16. Okay, I’ll go to the park with you.
17. Uh-oh, here comes trouble.
18. Goodness! I hope everyone is unhurt.
19. You ran a marathon? Whew!
20. Wow, I didn’t even know that bird could whistle.

Determining Parts of Speech, p. 52

Exercise
1. Maps are very popular with collectors.
2. Some have sold for very high prices.
3. High prices have encouraged the publication of special books and magazines.
4. Valuable maps must be carefully protected from light and dust.
5. Many of the most valuable maps are kept inside closed drawers.
6. Oh, that really is a treasure map.
7. The Library of Congress houses the world’s largest collection of maps.
8. Within its vault are more than 4.5 million maps.
9. In the Geography and Map Division, you may use either an atlas or a globe.
10. In this collection are many unusual maps.
11. Some of the maps are on public display.
12. Carefully, the librarian opened the first volume of Ptolemy’s Guide to Geography.
13. Later, he showed us a globe from the eighteenth century.
14. The archaeologist looked inside the cave and thought she saw a map on the wall.
15. In ancient times, the Babylonians drew maps on clay tablets.
16. Wow! Look at this Inuit map painted on an animal skin!
17. This old map shows both the northern hemisphere and the southern hemisphere.
18. Say, do you know how to read this road atlas?
19. The bold print in the atlas can be read easily.

20. Yesterday, we used the road atlas to find a route to St. Louis.

Review A: Verbs, p. 53

**EXERCISE A**

1. The apartment **has** been too warm all week.

2. Before diving, always **look** below you for possible hazards.

3. In his old age, my dog **has become** quite gray around the muzzle.

4. As he climbed the tower, Willis **felt** totally confident.

5. Most of the test subjects **dreamed** about flying or sailing.

6. My father **is glad** about it.

7. Quartz crystals **vibrate** at a constant rate.

8. Alicia **wore** kneepads and a helmet while she was in-line skating.

9. The baby rabbit **remained** still until the dog passed by.

10. We may be lost, because this area **doesn’t** look familiar to me.

**EXERCISE B**

11. The end of the rope **fell** into the water.

12. All the antelopes **raised** their heads.

13. Sean **has received** an award for bravery.

14. During the scavenger hunt, we **raced** into every store on Main Street.

15. Mu Lan **finished** her picture just in time for the show.

16. A chameleon’s body **may grow** to be twenty-five inches long.

17. The reptile’s tongue **can be as long as its body**.

18. This long tongue **stays rolled up inside the mouth**.

19. The chameleon **can unroll** its tongue very quickly.

20. Chameleons **have caught** insects many inches away.

Review B: Adverbs, Prepositions, Conjunctions, Interjections, p. 54

**EXERCISE A** For number 7, you may want to allow students to identify only **throw** as the object.

1. Mildred Didrikson Zaharias came from Texas.

2. She was better known as Babe.

3. During her teens, she played basketball.

4. She also excelled in swimming and figure skating.

5. At eighteen, she was a major track star.

6. Before the year’s end, she won two Olympic medals.

7. Babe won one medal for the **javelin throw**.

8. She played baseball with equal skill.

9. Until her early death, she played golf.

10. She won seventeen straight golf tournaments in 1947.

**EXERCISE B**

11. Sometimes beachcombers find interesting things on beaches.

12. They are likely to find both bottles and driftwood.

13. A woman found a narwhal tusk there.

14. People once thought the tusks were unicorn horns.
15. But aren’t narwhals really imaginary creatures?
16. No, a narwhal is a small arctic whale.
17. The males often grow a single, long tusk.
18. Wow! Some tusks are almost nine feet long.
19. The narwhal may use the tusk for play-fighting or digging.
20. That tusk is not only uncommon but also quite interesting.

Review C: Verbs, Adverbs, Prepositions, Conjunctions, Interjections, p. 55

EXERCISE
1. **Zap!** The dragon’s breath burned the fence.
2. My sister **trains** police dogs.
3. A technician is fixing the computer **now**.
4. A fire burned in the fireplace, but no one was in the room.
5. Three different Pharoahs **built** those pyramids.
6. During the operation, the nurse looked **neither nervous nor pale**.
7. Margarita **grabbed** the horse by its mane.
8. Breathlessly everyone watched the stunt parachutist.
9. Dr. Levine handed the new eyeglasses to the woman.
10. The mechanic checked the wires, yet he found nothing wrong.
11. Everyone **wore** a different kind of costume.
12. **Yum,** your entire house smells spicy.
13. Latrice is helping me catalog the books.
14. With one swift stroke, the chef chopped the onion into two pieces.
15. The students at my new school **seem** friendly.
16. In science, we are studying vampire bats.
17. **These bats are found in Central America and South America.**
18. **Vampire bats rarely** bite humans.
19. Instead, a vampire bat **will make** a tiny cut on an animal’s skin.
20. Usually, a bat will lap **only** a small amount of blood.
Chapter 4: Complements, pp. 56–68

Complements, p. 56

EXERCISE A
Answers will vary. Sample responses are given.

1. This poem is my favorite.
2. I greatly admire determined athletes.
3. I recently composed a song about the earth.
4. I’ll give Josh and Lena the books they wanted.
5. My skills as an author are strong.
6. In the ghost story, the weather was always stormy.
7. The ancient ghost haunted the widow’s walk.
8. When I told you, did you believe me?
9. A mystery story should be suspenseful to the last page.
10. Tell all of us the rest of the story.

EXERCISE B
11. John built these shelves.
12. Russell grows basil in his garden.
13. Spooky is our new cat.
14. Is Spike your pet iguana?
15. These pecans are very crunchy.
17. Marcia has a new kitten.
18. Last summer we built a birdhouse.
19. Was Rafael happy about his new bicycle?
20. Suzi and Eric gave us a ride to the park.

Direct Objects, p. 57

EXERCISE A
1. In 1793, Eli Whitney invented a machine for cotton farmers.
2. None
3. The machine separates seeds and small sticks from the cotton fibers.
4. It combs the fibers with tiny, fine-toothed rakes.
5. None

EXERCISE B
6. Thick plates of solid material form the earth’s crust, and sometimes these plates move.
7. The movement causes cracks in the earth’s surface, such as the famous crack known as the San Andreas fault in California.
8. Sudden movements along this crack caused a terrible earthquake in 1906.
9. It ruined many homes and other buildings in San Francisco.
10. Thousands of people lost their lives.
11. Natural gas pipelines exploded, and fires devoured homes and other structures.
12. Courageous firefighters fought blazes throughout the city.
13. Unfortunately, they didn’t have enough water and equipment.
14. The earthquake destroyed lives and property.
15. Eventually, however, the city repaired the damage.

Indirect Objects, p. 58

EXERCISE A
1. The president gave the astronaut a medal.
2. The weather report promised us sunshine for the weekend.
3. After a long delay, the store sent Mr. Wong a refund.
4. Virgil and Mike sent Chim a birthday card.
5. María gave the carpenters and bricklayers clear directions.

EXERCISE B
6. The governor gave her staff a party.
7. Carlos showed Delia pictures from his vacation.
8. The witness **gave** the jury additional information about the crime scene.
9. Shizuo has **been** my friend for years.
10. Felice **threw** the ball to me.
11. The scary movie gave us the shivers.
12. Melissa **gave** the waitress her order.
13. Please tell me a story, Arthur.
14. My friend Heather is the secretary of the Hiking Club.
15. Give the speaker your complete attention.

**Direct Objects and Indirect Objects A, p. 59**

**EXERCISE A**

1. Pierre gave **me** a ticket to the opera *Madama Butterfly*.
2. We took a **bus** to the opera house.
3. An usher showed Pierre and **me** our seats.
4. The orchestra began the **overture**.
5. The opera tells a sad and touching **story**.
6. A woman marries a **man** who is in the navy.
7. Soon after their marriage, the man sails his **ship** to faraway places.
8. He leaves the woman and her little **child**.
9. Sadly she watches the **sea**, hoping for his return.
10. The performers tell us the entire story through their beautiful songs.

**EXERCISE B**

11. My neighbor across the hall has an interesting **pet**.
12. The Stoneham Zoo gave **her** a chinchilla whose name was Willy.
13. For years, the zoo **featured** the chinchilla in its Children’s Zoo.
14. When Willy **grew** old, the zoo needed a new **home** for him.
15. Ms. Jefferson, my neighbor, **volunteered** her **home** for Willy.

**Direct Objects and Indirect Objects B, p. 60**

**EXERCISE A**

1. The museum does not allow **cameras**.
2. According to our guide, that diamond caused its **owner** some trouble.
3. She finally gave the museum the **diamond** and some other gems.
4. Did you see the rubies and the **emeralds**?
5. Color, brilliance, and weight determine a gem’s **value**.
6. A lapidary, or gem cutter, gives a gem its final **shape**.
7. This museum also has an **exhibit** and books about famous gems.
8. Indian and Persian rulers possessed the famous **Koh-i-noor diamond** for centuries.
9. The British East India Company gave Queen Victoria the **Koh-i-noor** in 1850.
10. Show the teacher and the class your postcards from the exhibit.

**EXERCISE B**

*Answers will vary. Sample responses are given.*

11. **football** Throw me the football.
12. **project** Lani will show her supervisor her project tomorrow morning.
13. **story** Mr. Garcia told the group a story about his childhood.
14. **glass** Please bring your little sister a glass of water.
15. **card** Did she send each client a birthday card?
Subject Complements, p. 61

EXERCISE

1. Jerusalem is the capital of Israel.
2. That beautiful Islamic mosque appears ancient.
3. I visited Vatican City in Rome once.
4. The church bells sounded pleasantly harmonious in the night air.
5. Many magnificent structures become tourist attractions.
6. The Eiffel Tower was an attraction at the World Exposition in 1889.
7. In ancient Greece the Parthenon honored the goddess Athena.
8. The Forbidden City in China became open to the public.
10. The Great Wall of China seems almost endless!
11. It stretches nearly 1,500 miles.
12. The North Pole is not a land mass.
13. In fact, the Arctic Ocean covers the North Pole.
14. The South Pole remains frozen year round.
15. Unlike the North Pole, the South Pole lies on an icy land mass.
16. The winds of Antarctica feel bitter.
17. The biggest lake in the world is the Caspian Sea.
18. The Caspian Sea is not an arm of the ocean.
19. However, the water tastes salty.
20. Lake Baikal is much deeper.

Predicate Nominatives, p. 62

EXERCISE A

1. Jacques-Yves Cousteau was a French underwater explorer.
2. His main interests were ocean life and conservation.
3. The fish and plants of the sea were his topics of study.
4. Underwater exploration is sometimes a dangerous occupation.
5. Cousteau’s explorations have become the subjects of films and books.

EXERCISE B

7. That story describes him exactly.
8. Tomás Ortega is the best student in our class.
9. A leopard has spots on its coat for camouflage.
10. A rake is a useful tool in a garden.
11. Billie Holiday is Kevin’s favorite jazz singer.
12. The class elected Jennifer.
13. She was probably the best candidate.
14. Her friend Martin managed the campaign.
15. That is what she promised before the election.

Predicate Adjectives, p. 63

EXERCISE A

1. The ocean looks calm tonight.
2. The governor seemed happy with the meeting.
3. After roller-skating, the children were hungry and tired.
4. Traffic on my street becomes quite heavy during rush hour.
5. The committee’s plan is very complicated.

**Exercise B**
6. None
7. His books have become famous.
8. *Island of the Blue Dolphins* is excellent in my opinion.
9. None
10. Alone on a deserted island, she feels lonely and scared.
11. None
12. They seem very frightening to her.
13. She then becomes intent on leaving the island in a canoe.
14. Her journey becomes dangerous when the canoe springs a leak.
15. None

**Predicate Nominatives and Predicate Adjectives**

**Exercise A**
1. Fred Astaire was an actor and a dancer.
2. When he danced, he seemed very light on his feet.
3. Astaire’s first dancing partner was his sister Adele.
4. His solo dances were sophisticated and improvisational.
5. In many movies, Ginger Rogers was his dancing partner.
6. The movies they made together became very famous and popular.
7. My two favorites are *Top Hat* and *Swing Time*.
8. Astaire’s career was long and brilliant.
9. He became an actor in 1933 and continued to make films until 1981.
10. He was the winner of a special Academy Award, several Emmys, and two lifetime achievement awards.

**Exercise B**
11. The clouds on the horizon looked dark.
12. She is both a swimmer and a dancer.
13. Those pears are inexpensive and delicious.
14. My favorite sports are hockey and lacrosse.
15. Is the girl in the green parka your sister?

**Predicate Nominatives and Predicate Adjectives**

**Exercise A**
1. Lawrence Kasdan’s writing is skillful and clever.
2. His works are not books, poems, or articles.
3. Many of Kasdan’s works become exciting films.
4. One of the first movies that he wrote was *Raiders of the Lost Ark*.
5. To many people, that movie seemed exciting and funny.
6. Harrison Ford was wonderful as the leading man, Indiana Jones.
7. Kasdan’s script for *Return of the Jedi* led to a film that is full of adventure and colorful characters.
8. The western *Silverado* is another film by Kasdan.
9. The actor Kevin Kline is one of the stars of *Silverado*.
10. Kasdan was once a student at the University of Michigan.
EXERCISE B
Answers will vary. Sample responses are given.

11. These lemons and grapefruits taste especially tart.
12. My cousin Isaiah is shorter than I am.
13. My uncle Nathan is an avid butterfly collector.
14. Mario and Marco are twins.
15. The little girl felt curious but timid.

Review A: Identifying Complements, p. 66

EXERCISE
1. I’ll tell you and your friends an American tale or two.
2. According to legend, Pecos Bill was the inventor of the lasso.
3. Coyotes raised the young Pecos Bill.
4. His horse was Widow-Maker, and his wife was Slue-Foot Sue.
5. According to another tale, Sally Ann Thunder Ann Whirlwind rescued Davy Crockett.
6. Then she married him.
7. While growing up, she had given her brothers strong competition in wrestling, running, and fishing.
8. The physically powerful Paul Bunyan issued lumbermen their orders.
9. In one meal he devoured half of a wagon load of vegetables and several sides of beef.
10. Paul Bunyan’s pet ox Babe was huge and blue.
11. John Henry was incredibly strong as well.
12. In tall tales, he is a railroad worker in West Virginia and other areas.
13. In one tale, he challenges a machine to a contest of strength and speed.
14. Tall tales may seem impossibly far-fetched.
15. Some legends and tales, however, feature characters from real life.
16. Two real-life heroes were Johnny Appleseed and Davy Crockett.
17. Johnny Appleseed offered animals his friendship.
18. He also planted apple trees throughout Pennsylvania.
19. The dates of Appleseed’s birth and death are 1774 and 1845.
20. Davy Crockett’s life spanned the years from 1786 to 1836.

Review B: Identifying Complements, p. 67

EXERCISE A
1. Fred Gipson wrote a wonderful book called Old Yeller.
2. I know the book will give you hours of pleasant reading.
3. The main character and narrator is Travis, a teenage boy.
4. The setting is Texas, just after the Civil War.
5. Travis is responsible for the farm during his father’s absence.
6. One day, a stray dog steals some meat.
7. To Travis, the dog seems ugly and useless.
8. However, the dog soon becomes a companion and a hero.
9. The dog gains the family’s affection and gratitude.
10. I will lend you my copy of Old Yeller if you want to read a terrific book.
EXERCISE B
11. Rumpelstiltskin spun straw into gold for the miller’s daughter.
12. Earth is not the only planet in the solar system with a moon.
13. That house has a lovely porch.
14. My older brother is now a sophomore at Princeton University.
15. Please send Sarah a postcard while you are traveling.
16. This apple tastes slightly sour.
17. Mark Twain’s home in Hartford, Connecticut, has become a museum.
18. We read the class a ballad about John Henry.
19. Many of the magician’s tricks were unbelievable.
20. Was the pep rally before the game fun?

EXERCISE B
11. Henry David Thoreau wrote Walden.
12. It is a book about his experiences near Walden Pond in Massachusetts.
13. Thoreau was a teacher in Concord, Massachusetts.
14. In 1845, he left his home and went to the woods near Walden Pond.
15. His cabin in the woods was small.
16. He was seeking a life of simplicity.
17. His life at Walden Pond was an experiment in quiet solitude.
18. For Thoreau, nature seemed peaceful and instructive.
19. His daily journal about his life and thoughts became Walden.
20. I will read you one of the inspiring quotations about his search for personal freedom.

EXERCISE A
1. One of New England’s early pirates was Dixie Bull.
2. He attacked ships and trading posts in Maine until 1633.
3. Before he turned to piracy, Bull had been a trader and a fisherman.
4. But French pirates stole all of his supplies and boats.
5. Angered at this, he became a pirate as well.
6. Key West, Florida, is famous for the pirates who once sailed in and out.
7. The ocean off Key West is often violent and dangerous.
8. The harsh waves and huge rocks gave ships a terrible beating.
9. Pirates would watch the ships as they passed through the rough waters.
10. They would give the officers and crew aid, but they would also take the cargoes.
Chapter 5: The Phrase, pp. 69–87
Phrases, p. 69
EXERCISE A
3. P 10. NP 17. NP
7. P 14. NP

EXERCISE B
21. The troll opened his eyes.
22. Thinking carefully, Sinead arrived at the right answer.
23. Has anyone looked outside since the rain stopped?
24. The antibiotics should have stopped the infections.
25. Carla knows how to order dinner in Korean.

The Prepositional Phrase, p. 70
EXERCISE A

EXERCISE B
Sentences will vary. Sample answers are given.
6. We are listening to music on the radio.
7. We’re going home after the concert.
8. In the garage was a pile of newspapers.
9. Last week’s game with Rulo ended in a tie.
10. The oil painting above the mantel is priceless.

The Adjective Phrase, p. 71
EXERCISE A
1. A Christmas Carol is the story of a rich man’s repentance.
2. Ebenezer Scrooge was a man of wealth and property.
3. His clerk, Bob Cratchit, led a difficult life in poverty.
4. Spirits from the past, present, and future warned Scrooge.
5. One of the spirits showed Scrooge the poor, yet happy, Cratchit family.
6. Dickens also began writing a story about a mysterious disappearance.
8. Unfortunately, the death of Charles Dickens cut short the story.
9. The mystery of Edwin Drood’s disappearance remains unsolved.
10. The possible fate of the young man has fascinated countless readers.

EXERCISE B
11. Louis Pasteur was dean of a university’s science faculty.
12. The process of sterilization of milk is called pasteurization.
13. Bacteria as the cause of disease was a new idea then.
14. Pasteur’s studies of infectious diseases in animals helped him formulate his germ theory.
15. Pasteur developed a vaccine against rabies in humans.

The Adverb Phrase, p. 72

**EXERCISE** Students’ identification of words modified may vary for some items.

1. Cars have not always been made in factories.
2. At one time, cars were manufactured by hand.
3. People were ready for a change.
4. Through mass production, Henry Ford changed the world.
5. By 1908, the company was producing one hundred cars in a day.
6. In 1913, the Ford Motor Company was manufacturing cars on an assembly line.
7. A moving-belt conveyor was used in the assembly process.
8. This new method added speed to the manufacturing process.
9. Henry Ford put workers on assembly lines.
10. The employees worked repeatedly at the same tasks.
11. Early in the 1900s, low-priced cars were selling rapidly.
12. The Model T was popular for its affordability.
13. For almost twenty years, the Model T outsold all other cars.
14. Under Ford’s leadership, the Ford Motor Company grew into a highly successful business.
15. In 1945, Henry Ford II became the head of the company.
16. He directed the company for the next thirty-four years.

17. During the 1950s, the automobile became increasingly important.
18. Performance and styling became more important to consumers.
19. Ford cars and trucks are still driven in America today.
20. Throughout the world, Henry Ford is known as a great innovator.

Adjective and Adverb Phrases A, p. 73

**EXERCISE A**

1. Sonja was the daughter of a Norwegian fur dealer.
2. Trained as an ice skater, she competed in the 1924 Olympics at age eleven.
3. Her costume, a knee-length, flared skirt, made an impression on observers.
4. This skirt might have been considered improper on an adult.
5. However, opinions at the Olympics four years later had changed.
6. Sonja left the 1928 Olympics with her first gold medal.
7. Sonja introduced the elements of dance and showmanship to skating.
8. Furthermore, Sonja did jumps that had been performed only by men.
9. Sonja preferred to be treated like someone of great celebrity.
10. She was considered temperamental by many.
EXERCISE B
11. Last winter we went to the ice-skating rink many times.
12. Once, my cousins Sarah and Cameron came with us.
13. The ice-skating rink in their hometown closed a few years ago.
14. My mother did figure eights in the center of the rink.
15. Sarah and Cameron especially enjoyed the music from the 1950s.

Adjective and Adverb Phrases B, p. 74

EXERCISE A  Students’ identification of words modified may vary for some items.
1. Nadia Comaneci competed in the 1976 Olympic Games in Montreal.
2. Her performance on the uneven bars occurred during the first game day.
3. This fourteen-year-old girl from Romania received a judges’ mark of 10.00.
4. In the gymnastic events, Nadia earned a total of three gold medals and seven perfect scores.
5. Nadia was very happy about the first perfect score in Olympic history.
6. Nadia’s achievements led many young girls to gymnastics classes.
7. In 1980, she won two gold medals and two silver medals.
8. She was also enjoying her fame in Romania.
10. There, she met a fellow gymnast, Bart Conner, whom she later married in Bucharest, Romania.

EXERCISE B
11. I recently saw an excellent movie about space travel.
12. In the movie, the travelers explored distant planets.
13. They visited one planet with rings that resembled Saturn’s.
14. Across its surface, the planet also had huge mountain ranges.
15. I really enjoyed the scenery in that movie.

The Participle, p. 75

EXERCISE A
1. The elected captain thanked her teammates.
2. The shouting fans encouraged the runners.
3. The painted goal posts were hard to miss.
4. The cheering crowd stomped their feet in the bleachers.
5. The lines on the track, newly painted, guided the runners.
6. Spiking the volleyball, she scored another point for her team.
7. The sports equipment mistreated all year, looked old.
8. Smiling cheerleaders stepped in front of the crowd.
9. The popcorn vendor called loudly, climbed the bleachers.

EXERCISE B
11. Playing in the sand, the children laughed happily.
12. Cheryl’s chosen career is engineering.
13. Is all this used furniture for sale?
14. Tad’s older sister, talking excitedly, explained the joke to us.
15. The fallen leaves still covered the ground in early spring.

The Participial Phrase, p. 76

**EXERCISE A**

1. Alfred Hitchcock, respected by his colleagues, earned an important place among film directors.
2. Known as the “master of suspense,” he created dark, suspenseful moods in his films.
3. Remaining faithful to this trademark tone, he directed movies throughout five decades.
4. Hitchcock’s films, criticized by some, maintained a dramatic flair.
5. Some of the movies directed by Hitchcock are *Dial M for Murder*, *Rear Window*, and *The Birds*.
6. Turning to the television format, Hitchcock also hosted a series for television.
7. The television show hosted by Hitchcock was *Alfred Hitchcock Presents*.
8. It was a mystery series featuring a different story and different actors each week.
9. Still airing as reruns, episodes feature actors such as Robert Redford.
10. Never honored with an Academy Award for best director, Hitchcock remains best director to many fans.

**EXERCISE B**

*Sentences will vary. Sample responses are given.*

11. The cupboards, painted a bright yellow, added a cheery note to the kitchen.
12. The kite, blowing wildly in the wind, almost got away from the little girl.
13. Frozen solid as a rock, the doughnut served as a temporary hockey puck.
14. It’s never pleasant to hear my brother singing in the shower.
15. I somehow manage to keep everything I need at school stuffed into my tiny locker.

**Participles and Participial Phrases A, p. 77**

**EXERCISE**

1. The *baking* bread smelled delicious.
2. *Shaped* like a flag, the sand sculpture won first prize.
3. Under a pile of magazines lay the *forgotten* letter.
4. *Frozen* blueberries are his favorite dessert.
5. *Devoted* soccer fans are looking forward to the season.
6. *Waking* slowly, the dog stretched its legs.
7. From behind the tree came a *screeching* sound.
8. The lion *basking* in the sun looked sleepy.
9. *Surrounded* by the smell of apples, I walked through the orchard.
10. I heard something *pounding* against the windowpane.
11. Leaping into the air, the dancer thrilled the audience.
12. The athlete, *sweating* heavily, grabbed a towel and a bottle of water.
13. I did not want to eat the *burned* potatoes that my sister cooked.
14. *Stapled* in the corner, the test booklet contained ten pages.
15. Closely *written*, the words filled every space on the diary pages.
16. Jake, slipping on a banana peel, let out a shriek.
17. Smiling, I opened my birthday present.
18. Examined by a doctor, his wrist will heal soon.
19. I shook the brightly wrapped gift before opening it.
20. The pet chosen by Trisha is a baby rabbit.

Participles and Participial Phrases B, p. 78

EXERCISE

1. The clown entertaining the children at the party was funny.
2. He had a surprised look on his face.
3. We were awakened last night by a barking dog.
4. Students participating in the event will meet after school.
5. The woman wandering down the street was wearing a red hat.
6. Surrounded by her closest friends, Jane enjoyed her birthday party.
7. As we entered the room, we noticed the broken vase on the floor.
8. Her dad comforted her with a reassuring smile.
9. The wooded site was a perfect place to camp for the night.
10. Startled by the noise, the cat scrambled under the chair.
11. Finally, they could see the train approaching in the distance.
12. Everyone involved in the discussion expressed his or her opinion.
13. We were happy with the services provided by that company.
14. The married couple set out on their honeymoon.
15. When we were young, my friends and I always hoped to find buried treasure.
16. Damaged by the storm, the car no longer ran.
17. The school threw a huge party for the teacher retiring this year.
18. We have to turn in our written work by the end of the week.
19. The man jogging up the hill is my grandfather.
20. Beatriz has always been a committed person.

The Infinitive, p. 79

EXERCISE

1. When you need help with math, Maddie is the one to ask.
2. When I play racquetball, I play to win.
3. Robin Hood stole from the rich and gave to the poor. none
4. To interrupt was not my intention.
5. If you start the project, you must be sure to finish.
6. In my opinion, the fashion accessory to have this season is a silver charm bracelet.
7. I go to the local thrift store to shop.
8. The clothing to donate is in a box.
9. Our plan for the day is to hike.
10. The place to shop is the new mall downtown.
11. We plan to go first thing in the morning.
12. To whom should I address this letter? none
13. Some people think it is refreshing to swim.
14. I don’t know which film to recommend.
15. Have you decided what you want to eat?
16. Going to the YMCA is fine with me. none
17. To exercise is one of my goals this semester.
18. Has Juanita begun to study?
19. Shelly recommended a great poem to read.
20. Roberto went home early to rest.

**The Infinitive Phrase, p. 80**

**EXERCISE A**
1. At the library I found a book about yoga to read over the weekend.
2. The goal of yoga is to relieve stress and tension.
3. Around test time, I definitely need to reduce stress!
4. Yoga also helps to increase flexibility and muscle tone.
5. To most people, beginning a yoga routine is easy. none
6. The yoga positions to practice first can be learned from a book or video.
7. To do the more difficult movements and stretches requires more experience.
8. At that point, it is probably better to work with a yoga instructor.
9. For now, I’ve chosen to learn a routine that increases flexibility.
10. After I master the basics, I’ll train to become a yoga instructor.

**EXERCISE B**
*Sentences will vary. Sample responses are given.*
11. I asked my sister to wake me up in the morning.
12. Our flight is due to arrive at La Guardia Airport in New York at 3:00 P.M.
13. The aim of all these elaborate plans is to surprise my best friend on her birthday.
14. We’re meeting on Thursday to plan the party for Saturday night.
15. I know it will take a lot of hard work and determination to succeed in my goals.

**Infinitives and Infinitive Phrases A, p. 81**

**EXERCISE**
1. Pepita decided to join the track team.
2. Lamont wants to learn Spanish before fall.
3. Courtney is planning to sell more tickets to our school play.
4. Robert Fulton, who built the first successful steamboat, tried to invent a practical submarine.
5. To learn about agriculture was George Washington Carver’s goal.
6. Krista was happy to finish the art project.
7. Elena offered to wash the car.
8. Justin was reluctant to try raw fish.
9. To fly was Wilbur Wright’s dream.
10. Some astronauts have had the opportunity to journey into space.
11. The time to begin a paper is long before the paper is due.
12. The option to choose is the one that causes the least trouble.
13. To do research in the library can be very productive.
14. That car was the first one to be sold this year.
15. The effort to rescue the kitten ended in success.
16. Elian was laughing too hard to speak.
17. Press the button to ring the doorbell.
18. To see the ocean for the first time is a thrilling experience.
19. We are ready to start the race.
20. He was the first person to run a four-minute mile.

**Infinitives and Infinitive Phrases B, p. 82**

**EXERCISE A**

1. Roberta sliced the bread to serve it to her dinner guests.
2. My mother’s favorite dish to cook is lasagna.
3. To remove stains from clothes, I recommend washing them in hot, soapy water.
4. Justin likes to conduct research on the Internet on the weekends.
5. To travel to Argentina was Elena’s wish for the new year.
6. We called Peter and Laura to ask them about our homework assignment.
7. The number to call for that information has been changed.
8. Rafael and Alex were happy to meet their new neighbors.
9. We peeked at the baby in the crib to see her.
10. David told his little sister a vivid story to entertain her after dinner.

**EXERCISE B**

*Sentences will vary. Sample responses are given.*

11. Some people never like to try new things.
12. I’m trying to create a crossword puzzle.
13. We will meet in the library to plan a trip for the end of the year.
14. It’s easy to enjoy the weather on a day like this.
15. I plan to work hard all afternoon so that I can go out tonight.

**Verbal Phrases A, p. 83**

**EXERCISE A**

1. inf
2. part
3. part
4. inf
5. inf

**EXERCISE B**

6. One requirement of airline pilots is to speak and understand English.
7. People speaking Chinese outnumber those who speak English.
8. To learn a second language is certainly worthwhile.
9. Signs posted in international airports are often in several languages.
10. To visit a foreign country is the desire of many young people.
11. They want to experience different customs, foods, and environments.
12. Knowing Spanish, a person can travel in Mexico and South America without a language barrier.
13. I would also like to go to São Paulo, Brazil.
14. If you like to travel by boat, perhaps you should visit Venice.
15. Tourists looking for beautiful views might visit Denmark.
Verbal Phrases B, p. 84

**EXERCISE A**
1. inf                      4. inf
2. inf                      5. part
3. part

**EXERCISE B**

part 6. I caught my younger sister eavesdropping behind my bedroom door.

part 7. The anvil, dropped from a great height, hit the sidewalk hard.

part 8. Splashing in the shallow water, the children enjoyed their day at the beach.

inf 9. The city passed a law to protect endangered animals.

inf 10. Juanita was happy to find the letter.

part 11. We raked all the leaves fallen from the trees during autumn.

part 12. Ending the speech, the candidate received loud applause.

inf 13. “If you want to know the end of the story,” Gloria said, “read the book.”

part 14. The dog, covered in mud from the backyard, left tracks as he ran through the house.

inf 15. To end the game well was Kevin’s only wish.

**Review A: Identifying Phrases, p. 85**

**EXERCISE A**
1. Scientists have studied patterns of human sleep.
2. Our nightly rest consists of light sleep and deep sleep.
3. Some people sleep on their backs.
4. Other people rest on their sides quite comfortably.
5. The origin of dreams has interested some people.
6. One theory is that we write our own script for each dream.
7. Some dreams appear in color.
8. The amount of sleep a person gets affects how often he or she dreams.
9. Some nightmares may be caused by tension, worries, and nervousness.
10. Most adults dream at regular intervals.

**EXERCISE B**

inf 11. To forecast the weather is not a simple process.

part 12. Gathered from weather stations and satellites, data change continually.

part 13. Barometers, designed for measuring air pressure, detect weather changes.

part 14. The clouds forming in the sky also indicate weather conditions.

inf 15. To measure precipitation, gauges are used.

part 16. Instruments indicating wind speed and direction are important tools.

part 17. Monitoring temperature changes, local news stations report current information throughout the day.

inf 18. To study weather changes is the job of a meteorologist.
19. Using maps and technical equipment, meteorologists forecast weather conditions and changes.

20. Hurricanes and floods, feared for their destructiveness, attract national attention.

**Review B: Identifying Phrases, p. 86**

**Exercise A**

1. Submarines can travel on the surface of the water.

2. They also move quite well beneath the surface.

3. Submarines deploy in times of war.

4. Many modern submarines run on nuclear power.

5. During operations, nuclear-powered submarines remain deep under the water’s surface.

6. Satellites bounce back information from distances high above the earth.

7. In the future, more and more information will be sent by satellite.

8. The news on television comes to us by satellite.

9. Cables under the ocean carry messages to our homes.

10. During the 1920s, few people would have dreamed of such marvels in our own homes.

**Exercise B**

11. Planning a family trip to Tennessee, my grandfather gathered information.

12. He wrote the tourist information center a letter asking for information.

**Review C: Identifying Phrases, p. 87**

**Exercise A**

1. The Kingdom of Thailand is one of ten nations in Southeast Asia.

2. Bangkok, located near the Gulf of Thailand, is Thailand’s capital.

3. Producing vehicles and agricultural crops, Thailand is a rapidly developing nation.

4. Thailand is the world’s largest producer of natural rubber.

5. Named Siam until 1938, Thailand is a constitutional monarchy.

6. Thailand is bordered by Myanmar, Laos, Cambodia, and Malaysia.

7. Colored red, white, and blue, the Thai flag has five horizontal stripes.
8. The monsoon season in Thailand lasts from May to October.

9. Founded in the sixth century B.C., Buddhism is Thailand’s principal religion.

10. Covering approximately 198,000 square miles, Thailand is smaller than the state of Texas.

**Exercise B**

11. Hopping slowly across the dirt road, the frog finally reached the pond.

12. The concerto composed by the cellist was performed at the recital.

13. The best room to use for the spring dance is the large ballroom.

14. Yesterday, we saw a squirrel **collecting food** for the winter.

15. Scattered on the ground, the fall leaves added color to the landscape.

16. Will all of these names and dates be too difficult to remember for the test?

17. I wanted to watch television, but I wrote my science report instead.

18. My raincoat, **soaked in the downpour**, dripped onto the floor.

19. I finally found Kris **jogging through the park**.

20. Arching its back, the cat hissed angrily at the snake.
Chapter 6: The Clause, pp. 88–103

Clauses, p. 88

EXERCISE A

1. An antique map of the world is on the cover of my journal.
2. To me, this map represents the undiscovered areas of my mind.
3. When I read entries from months ago, I usually learn something about myself.
4. I often write about experiences because I need an outlet for my emotions.
5. I vent my frustrations in writing, and I feel better afterwards.

EXERCISE B

6. If I let a few days go by, I usually do not feel the same anger.
7. I then wonder what would have happened if I had actually said those things aloud!
8. During the past two years, I have filled four blank books with journal entries.
9. I know that many fascinating novelists and poets kept journals.
10. Sometimes the writer will use his or her own experiences to inspire a story.
11. Although I do not enjoy feeling sadness or fear, I am able to write about them convincingly.
12. I can write convincingly because I have experienced these emotions myself.
13. Several of my friends have told me that my stories should be published.
14. Not even my best friend, whom I have known for three years, has ever read my journal.
15. I believe that everyone deserves a certain amount of privacy.

The Independent Clause, p. 89

EXERCISE A

1. After he prepared the dough, Sheldon washed mushrooms, green peppers, and an onion.
2. He peeled the onion, and he chopped the vegetables into bite-size chunks.
3. The next step was sautéing the vegetables until they were tender.
4. I wanted to make myself useful, so I grated the mozzarella and Parmesan cheese.
5. Now we had two bowls of ingredients, which were the vegetables and the cheese.
6. I also opened a jar of pizza sauce, and I spread the sauce on the dough.
7. Then came the fun part!
8. Sheldon spread the vegetables evenly across the sauce, and I added the cheese on top.
9. After baking at 450° for twenty-five minutes, the pizza was ready.
10. What a delicious pizza it was!

EXERCISE B

11. I never watched baseball games on television before meeting you.
12. We then watched games for several weekends in a row.
13. Now I understand the game much better.
14. When the game makes sense, it is suspenseful and enjoyable.
15. Since I have never played baseball, you can teach me!

The Subordinate Clause, p. 90

EXERCISE A

1. Although acupuncture is an ancient medical technique, it is still in use today.
2. The treatment is based on the idea that it helps bring into balance the yin and the yang.

3. Many areas of the world, including China, use this technique.

4. If you have a fear of needles, do not try acupuncture.

5. Acupuncture involves the insertion of tiny needles, which are made of metal, into the skin.

6. Since this technique uses no medication, some people may prefer it to prescription medicines.

7. For example, someone suffering mental depression might choose acupuncture over medication.

8. Other disorders that acupuncture treats are swollen joints, nosebleeds, and heart pains.

9. In China, patients who have surgery may choose acupuncture as anesthesia.

10. Until I’m braver, I won’t try acupuncture.

**Exercise B**

11. According to ancient belief, the yin and the yang are two forces that make up all aspects of life.

12. The symbol of the yin and yang, which is a circle with intertwining black and white teardrop shapes, is familiar to many people.

13. Since yin, the female half, represents earth and darkness, it is the black half.

14. Because the yang, the male half, represents brightness and the heavens, it is the white half.

15. In yin-yang philosophy, which values harmony and balance, the black and the white are equally important.

**Independent and Subordinate Clauses A, p. 91**

**Exercise**

1. When Jeremy called last night, I was not at home.

2. I know the woman who owns that store.

3. John is the boy who is on the swim team.

4. It is hot today; please water the garden.

5. If he finishes his report on time, he can go to the beach Saturday.

6. This is the poem that I memorized last year.

7. The student whom I recommend for class president is Lindsey.

8. I can’t concentrate when you practice the trumpet with your door open.

9. Although these colors are beautiful, I don’t like the painting.

10. The man whom you met is the president of the group.

11. The girls who painted that mural live in my neighborhood.

12. When you reach the end of the hallway, turn right.

13. Please fold these clothes before they become wrinkled.

14. After we wrapped the presents, we hurried to the post office.

15. We didn’t go to her party because we went camping that weekend.

16. The trees that my great-grandfather planted still shade the farmhouse.
17. Whenever you dust the shelves, I sneeze.

18. My aunt stays at our house when she comes to the city for business meetings.

19. The CD that you borrowed last week is due at the library today.

20. Preheat the oven to 350°, and take the chicken out of the refrigerator.

Independent and Subordinate Clauses B, p. 92

EXERCISE

Answers will vary. Sample responses are given.

1. I hope my grandparents will come to town when I graduate from high school.

2. The child whose sweater was lost needs to borrow a jacket.

3. Great Expectations, which is a good book, has been adapted for television.

4. Until Mark moved to Chicago, he had no idea why it is called the Windy City.

5. We all went out for pizza after the game was over.

6. The broken pavement that caused the accident has been repaired.

7. Since I met you in art class, we’ve become good friends.

8. Don’t make any decisions until I call you on Friday.

9. Mr. Perez, whom I assist as a student aide during my free period, is an inspired teacher.

10. Because I didn’t think before I spoke, I blurted out the wrong answer.

The Adjective Clause A, p. 93

EXERCISE A

1. This thick sweater should keep me warm in the snow.

2. The CD that Thomas scratched will no longer play.

3. The puppy with white paws was chewing on your shoe.

4. The people whom I invited to my study session are bringing snacks.

5. Go find your waterproof boots.

6. The subway station that is near my apartment is closed for repairs.

7. The patient in the wheelchair has a broken leg.

8. That team member who raises the most funds will receive an award.

9. The injured bird was taken to the veterinarian.

10. This shade of paint, which is not very pretty, was on sale at the hardware store.

EXERCISE B

11. Softball is a popular game that is played throughout the United States.

12. The game, which comes from an 1880s indoor baseball game, resembles baseball.

13. People who play softball are aware of slight differences in the two games.

14. The field that is used for softball is smaller than a baseball field.

15. The game, which lasts only seven innings, is shorter than a baseball game.

16. A softball is larger and softer than the ball that is used for baseball.

17. Those who play softball are familiar with a variation called slow pitch.

18. Softball pitching, which is done underhand, is different from baseball pitching.

19. Players whom I especially envy can hit the ball out of the park!

20. The pitcher, whose pitches determine the course of the game, is my favorite player.
The Adjective Clause B, p. 94

**EXERCISE**

1. Nico wanted to find a chess set with magnetic pieces.
2. This cat has long, silky fur.
3. The soccer field in the park needs to be mowed.
4. I should have warned you about the chair with the broken leg.
5. The story that she told us was certainly fascinating.
6. The boys found the old map in a box underneath the bed.
7. The ship sank in a violent storm.
8. My mother introduced us to her uncle, whom we had never met.
9. The telephones in that office ring constantly.
10. How much is the jacket with the red stripes on the sleeves?
11. The bread, which was still warm from the oven, tasted wonderful.
12. The weather announcer warned everyone about the hurricane that was near the coast.
13. We will need to paint this old table which my father bought at a garage sale.
14. Don’t forget about the clothes in the dryer!
15. The new shoes, which he had left out in the rain, were ruined.
16. Tricia and her sister made the decorations that you see on the walls.
17. Did you remember to turn off the lights in the classroom?
18. The student who sits next to me was born in China.
19. The cathedral had magnificent stained-glass windows.
20. The novel, which will be made into a movie, was hard to put down.

Relative Pronouns, p. 95

**EXERCISE A**

Answers may vary slightly. Typical responses are given.

1. the player who has the bat
2. the softball field that is at our school
3. the team that is best
4. the runner who is fastest
5. the player whose batting average is best

**EXERCISE B**

Answers will vary, but the relative pronoun must be circled. Sample responses are given.

6. In the crowd I looked for the player whose picture I saw in the program.
7. I envied the ticket holders who were sitting behind the dugout.
8. The banners which lined the stadium distracted me from the game.
9. Arriving late, the father and son sat in the seats that were left.
10. They ordered the hot dogs that had been grilled to perfection.
11. The home team’s pitcher, who had just recovered from an injury, was playing well.
12. The first batter, whose jersey sported the number eleven, struck out.
13. Did you see the home run that tied the game?
14. Will the outfielder catch the balls that seem to fall out of the sky?
15. The shortstop is the one whose autograph I’d like to get.
The Adverb Clause A, p. 96

EXERCISE A

1. The employee at the hardware store mixed
   the paint carefully.

2. He matched the paint sample I brought
   with me.

3. As much as I enjoy painting, I have other
   things to do.

4. Do not paint the fence until you scrape off
   the old paint chips.

5. You should also sand the wood so that the
   new paint adheres evenly.

6. Before you start, spread an old towel or
   sheet under the work area.

7. The dropcloth will catch paint if it drips
   from your brush.

8. Because I did such a great job on our fence,
   the neighbor asked me to paint his fence.

9. I can paint his fence sometime during sum-
   mer vacation.

10. As soon as I finish cleaning these brushes,
    I’m taking the rest of the day off.

EXERCISE B

11. I ate a bowl of popcorn while I did my
    homework.

12. We will have to hurry if we want to catch
    the 5:30 bus.

13. From the top of the hill, you can see trees
    wherever you look.

14. I need to borrow a pencil because I left
    mine at home.

15. The puppies act as if they are hungry.

16. A giraffe is taller than an elephant is.

17. Before we left for our vacation, we
    unplugged the computer.

18. Since I love mystery stories, I enjoy books
    by Agatha Christie.

19. They watch more television programs
    than I do.

20. Set the potted plants where they will get
    plenty of light.

The Adverb Clause B, p. 97

EXERCISE  Students’ identification of words modified
may vary for some items.

1. The stonecutters worked slowly and
   carefully.

2. Sweep the floor after you finish the project.

3. We sleep with the windows open whenever
   the weather is pleasant.

4. Before Sam went skating with his friends,
   he finished his homework.

5. In August, it is really hot at four o’clock.

6. The guide’s canoe glided silently across the
   lake.

7. I usually write in my journal after everyone
   else has gone to bed.

8. The lioness crouched warily in the tall
   grass.

9. After a hard day’s work, I always sleep
    soundly.

10. Yesterday I left my jacket in my locker.

11. I raised my hand because I knew the
    answer.

12. My father always waters his flower garden
    before he goes to work.

13. On Tuesdays and Thursdays, we practice
    after school.

14. The audience cheered and clapped
    enthusiastically.

15. The fly buzzed around the room.
16. As soon as you finish that book, please lend it to me.
17. Tom and Julie met us at the restaurant.
18. Never ride your bicycle without wearing a helmet.
19. Call me after you have finished your chores.
20. The lights went out during the thunderstorm.

Subordinating Conjunctions, p. 98

EXERCISE A
1. I have been trying to finish shelling these beans since yesterday.
2. Until you have read the instructions, do not prune that tree.
3. As the moon rose, coyotes slipped out of the trees.
4. I expected more flowers in the garden after I planted so many seeds.
5. After this long, hot afternoon of garden work, I need a nap.

EXERCISE B
6. As soon as the ground softens in the spring, plant your garden.
7. Some seeds take more time to sprout than others do.
8. If you want to grow morning glories, start the seeds under lights.
9. When the seeds sprout, you can transplant them into the garden.
10. Plant them near a fence or wall so that the plants can climb.
11. After the young plants grow strong, they will produce flowers.
12. The flowers will look as if they are big blue trumpets.
13. They’re called morning glories because they open each morning.
14. When they are warmed by the sun, they open.
15. If the day is dark or stormy, they stay tightly shut, like umbrellas.

Adjective and Adverb Clauses A, p. 99

EXERCISE A
1. The rhyme that I like the most is about Jack and the candlestick.
2. Although I can’t remember all the words, I love the poem about Mary and her garden.
3. The woman whom I baby-sit for decorated her nursery with a Mother Goose theme.
4. You’ll probably overlook the tiny, thoughtful details unless you look closely.
5. The night light, for example, turns on automatically whenever the overhead light goes out.
6. The night light, which is made of plastic, bears the image of a cow jumping over the moon.
7. Stars are painted on the ceiling with special paint that glows in the dark.
8. Where the wall meets the ceiling, the letters of the alphabet are painted as a border.
9. A chalkboard has been attached to the wall so that the child can write on the “wall.”
10. The child whose room this is must enjoy spending time in his room.

EXERCISE B
11. Some words that are in the English language come from people’s names.
12. Because Adolphe Sax invented the saxophone, it was named for him.
13. Most American trains had steam engines until Rudolf Diesel invented the diesel engine.

14. From Caesar, which was the title of Roman leaders, comes czar.

15. Theodore Roosevelt, who was President of the United States, inspired the term teddy bear.

16. We have the word sideburns because Ambrose Burnside had bushy whiskers.

17. Many words that we use every day are borrowed from other languages.

18. American Indians who lived in the Northeast gave us the word chipmunk.

19. Although the French word bureau means “desk,” we use it to mean “chest of drawers.”

20. From Spanish comes the word patio, which means “an open courtyard.”

Adjective and Adverb Clauses B, p. 100

**Exercise**

1. Are these the videotapes that you wanted to borrow?
2. Please give that coat, which is too small for you, to your cousin.
3. Whenever I hear that song, I remember my last birthday party.
4. If we knew the telephone number, we could call the store for directions.
5. Laura, whom we saw at the movies last night, lives next door to our teacher.
6. My little brother, who is only three years old, knows the words to a lot of songs.
7. Before we got out of bed, my father had already cleared the snow off the sidewalk.
8. When I am older, I would like to travel in South America.
9. Although she didn’t mean to be unkind, her words hurt Camilla’s feelings.
10. Those documents which had been missing for more than twenty years, were discovered in a kitchen drawer.
11. Until we learned how to use the compass, we wandered around in the woods for hours.
12. That story is about a giant whose favorite food is Limburger cheese.
13. My young cousins laugh whenever I read the story to them.
14. People who like to fish must have a lot of patience.
15. Please address the envelopes before you leave this afternoon.
16. We brought this puppy to you because we know how much you like animals.
17. The mail carrier who delivers the mail to our house is always in a good mood.
18. The boys crouched behind the fence until they heard the car drive away.
19. My garden includes some flowers that bloom all year long.
20. The rug, which was woven by hand, once belonged to my grandmother.

**Review A: Clauses, p. 101**

**Exercise A**

1. The student who owns the wallet may claim it at the school office.
2. This weekend we will wash the car, which badly needs a good scrub.
3. The plant has small orange flowers that open every morning.

4. As soon as I finish my report, let’s go to the movies.

5. Although she had never taken piano lessons, she could play very well.

6. Do you know the name of the boy whom we saw on the train?

7. We stopped for a picnic, which was very pleasant.

8. Please accept this gift that I made for you.

9. We practiced our roles in the play until we were sure of our lines.

10. I wonder where we should put the new plants we just bought.

EXERCISE B

11. The concert that we’ll hear tonight includes music by George Gershwin.

12. George Gershwin, who was a great American composer, wrote Porgy and Bess.

13. This opera, which is set in South Carolina, features jazz rhythms.

14. “Summertime,” which is a beautiful song, is a highlight of the show.

15. Gershwin did not write the lyrics that went with his songs.

16. The lyricist whom Gershwin most preferred was his brother, Ira.

17. George wrote the music, but it was Ira who wrote the words.


19. Gene Kelly stars in the movie that is based on this composition.

20. Kelly, who sings and dances to Gershwin’s music in the film, is superb.

Review B: Clauses, p. 102

EXERCISE A

1. Because I am in the high school band, I will march in the parade.

2. The parade will begin after all the bands and floats are in position.

3. Our band is larger than the band from Zavala Junior High School is.

4. Since we are larger, we will play “The Star-Spangled Banner.”

5. The parade will officially begin as soon as we finish the anthem.

6. After the parade, meet me where the band’s buses are parked.

7. If it is raining, meet me in the lobby of city hall.

8. The sky filled up with storm clouds as if it might rain.

9. Wherever I go, the weather seems to work against me!

10. As soon as I start to play my horn, the weather becomes a music critic.

EXERCISE B

11. Will Smith, who has acted in films and television, has also made musical albums.

12. One of Smith’s songs, a rap solo performance that he made in 1998, won a Grammy.

13. Before he won this Grammy, he had costarred in a movie.

14. An actor with whom Smith has costarred is Tommy Lee Jones.
15. Before he started performing solo, Smith had been part of the duo called DJ Jazzy Jeff and the Fresh Prince.

16. After he and his partner won the first Grammy award for a rap performance, Smith starred in a popular television show.

17. If you have never seen a Will Smith performance, you have missed some fun.

18. Some of the movies that Smith has made are action-adventure films.

19. One film starring Smith was number one the year that it opened.

20. Smith’s nickname was Prince Charming until he changed it to Fresh Prince.

Review C: Clauses, p. 103

EXERCISE A

1. The research report that was assigned last month is due tomorrow.

2. Since the bicycle was on sale, I bought it.

3. I voted for the candidate who lost the election.

4. I’ll let you know as soon as your package arrives.

5. Did you read the book before you saw the movie?

6. The flag should be brought indoors when the weather is bad.

7. After the final performance of the play, the cast had a party.

8. William Shakespeare is the best-known playwright in the world today.

9. You may borrow my book overnight if you’d like.

10. Please help me when it is time to decorate the gym for the dance.

EXERCISE B

11. What costume did you wear to the party that Juanita had?

12. My costume, a chicken suit, won a prize because it was very well-made.

13. My cousin, whom I took to the party, went as a huge mosquito.

14. Since the guests were in costume, I couldn’t recognize many of the people there.

15. Did you recognize Hilary you saw her in the gorilla costume?

16. The person I didn’t recognize was Mingan.

17. His costume, which was quite original, was a large cardboard box.

18. The box, which was painted white and covered with clear plastic, was very shiny.

19. Mingan, who was hidden inside the box, kept saying, “I’m melting!”

20. As soon as I saw him, I got it—he was supposed to be an ice cube!
Chapter 7: Kinds of Sentence Structure, pp. 104–113

Simple Sentences, p. 104

EXERCISE

1. Carmen skated at the pond after school.
2. Iris and Phil took a train to Chicago.
3. The pattern of every snowflake is unique.
4. During the Renaissance, Italian women shaved the front part of their heads and kept the rest of their hair long.
5. Federico and Garth rowed over to the island last summer.
6. Emily Dickinson published very few poems in her lifetime.
7. After the harvest, the workers and their families have a dance and play music in the barn.
8. Cats takes place in a junkyard.
9. The well-known musical is based on T. S. Eliot’s poems.
10. Jupiter, Saturn, Uranus, and Neptune have rings.
11. Christina played the guitar and sang songs from Chile.
12. Leaves and branches lay beneath the trees in our front yard and blocked the driveway.
13. Jill and Erica campaigned energetically and raised the needed funds.
14. My favorite snack is graham crackers and milk.
15. Jordan should wash the dishes and put them away.
16. Lupe raked the leaves in the backyard.
17. We congratulated Rosa on her achievement.
18. Read the draft of the paper and did a thorough revision.
19. This month’s school newspaper includes a list of new books in the library.
20. Where will Tim and Eric ride their bicycles this weekend?

Compound Sentences, p. 105

EXERCISE A

1. The ice-covered sidewalk was slippery, and several people fell down.
2. Some students ate in the cafeteria, but others went outside in the sunshine.
3. The talk show host was silly, but his show had a large audience.
4. The waves were enormous, yet the surfer rescued his new surfboard.
5. Mr. Kumamoto has uncovered some great fossils, for he is an experienced fossil hunter.

EXERCISE B

6. We can go to a movie, or we can watch a videotape at home.
7. Angel wrote a poem about his girlfriend, but he did not show it to her.
8. Dark clouds gathered above the baseball field, and rain fell steadily.
9. The bears stole all our food, so we left the campground early.
10. Outside, a storm howled, yet we were warm inside the igloo.
11. Aretha has never taken a drawing class, but she can sketch almost anything.
12. They wanted to surprise her, so they gave her a gift the day before her birthday.
13. Joe can wait for us at the entrance, or he can go in and find us a seat.

14. Suddenly, Sparky ran to the window, and we wondered what he saw.

15. Last night the house felt chilly, so I drank hot tea and curled up with a book.

**Simple or Compound? p. 106**

**EXERCISE A**

1. Geronimo was born in No-doyohn Canyon, Mexico.

2. Geronimo defended his homeland against colonization by Mexicans and North Americans.

3. Mexican bounty hunters killed his mother, his wife, and his children in 1858.

4. Geronimo wanted revenge, so he gathered a band of men.

5. He led the band of Apaches in raids against Mexican settlements.

6. The Mexicans called him Geronimo; that name in English is Jerome.

7. The Apaches used his name as their battle cry.

8. In 1874, U.S. authorities forcibly moved about four thousand Apaches to a reservation.

9. Geronimo led these Apaches in attacks on U.S. settlements and soldiers.

10. The United States sent five thousand soldiers after Geronimo, but the small group of Apaches did not surrender for more than four months.

**EXERCISE B**

11. He was imprisoned in Florida and later in Oklahoma; he never returned to Arizona and to his Apache life.

12. He told his story to S. M. Barrett in 1905–1906, and Barrett wrote a book about it.

13. Geronimo would not permit a stenographer at the interviews, so Barrett took notes.

14. The name of this book is *Geronimo: His Own Story.*

15. Geronimo died in 1909; he was a courageous man to the end.

**Complex Sentences, p. 107**

**EXERCISE A**

1. Since I was five years old, I have read in bed at night.

2. For my twelfth birthday I received *A Light in the Attic,* which is a book of poems.

3. Before I go to sleep, I sometimes read my favorite poems to my little brother.

4. As he listens to me, he closes his eyes and falls asleep.

5. When he wakes up in the morning, he usually asks about the ending of a poem.

6. I may be a writer or an editor when I grow up.

7. My Aunt Sabrina, who lives in Dallas, is a copyeditor for a newspaper.

8. If I study hard, I can become an editor, too.

9. A job as an editor makes sense for me because I love words.

10. The books that I love most sit on a special shelf in my room.

**EXERCISE B**

11. As I read, I learned about Arachne, a character in a famous Greek myth.

12. In the stories, she weaves tapestries that are very beautiful.

13. When people see her work, they are really impressed.

14. Because Arachne is such a good weaver, she begins to boast about her skill.

15. Athena, who is the goddess of arts and crafts, hears about Arachne’s boastfulness and decides to pay Arachne a visit.

16. After Athena arrives, she warns Arachne not to be so
boastful. Because Arachne refuses to listen, the goddess Athena challenges her to a weaving contest. The contest that Athena proposes ends in a draw. Because Athena feels sorry for Arachne, she turns Arachne into a spider. According to the myth, spiders, who are also excellent weavers, are descended from Arachne.

**Compound or Complex? p. 108**

**EXERCISE**

**CD** 1. When Abe Lincoln gave a stump speech, he stood on a real stump.

**CD** 2. Many trees lose their leaves in the fall, and they look cold and forlorn.

**CD** 3. When we lived in southern Maryland, we visited Annapolis often.

**CD** 4. Brian is mild tempered, and he makes friends easily.

**CD** 5. If you move your knight to that square, I will capture him.

**CD** 6. My new wool sweater shrank when I washed it in hot water.

**CD** 7. Don't give me any excuses; I don't want to hear them!

**CD** 8. If I wash the dishes, will you cook the meal?

**CD** 9. Cameron, who is my cousin, is the new captain of the soccer team.

**CD** 10. I dropped my sandwich on the floor, so I threw it in the garbage.

**CD** 11. The movie was really scary, yet I could not stop watching.

**CD** 12. Janet Jackson, whose music I enjoy, will be in town next week.

**CD** 13. I washed the rug with detergent, but the red stain would not come out.

**CD** 14. Since you asked me nicely, I will lend you some paper for the test.

**CD** 15. Give your dog a bath, or do not let him inside the house.

**CD** 16. Call me tonight, and we'll make plans for the weekend.

**CD** 17. I'll ask my mother after she gets home from work.

**CD** 18. The book that he is reading is about ancient Egypt.

**CD** 19. My grandfather, whom I respect very much, will be ninety this summer.

**CD** 20. Jane is eager to begin her new music class, but she'll have to wait another week.

**Compound-Complex Sentences, p. 109**

**EXERCISE**

1. When we planned our holiday party, we planned a small one, and we invited only a few friends.

2. We were expecting about eight people, but we were very surprised when ten extra guests showed up.

3. Luckily, we found out about the extra people in time; we raced to the grocery store just before it closed.

4. We got carried away and bought plenty of extra food; we were certain that most of our guests would be hungry.

5. Although I don't like raw vegetables, we included them in the menu; healthy snacks please some people.
6. My friend Dennis is outgoing and creative, so I asked him to plan some group games that we would all enjoy.

7. The Wilson twins, who are not identical, arrived together, but they left with different friends after the party.

8. Before the party began, I borrowed a collection of CDs from friends, and I set up a CD player.

9. The music that I chose was a hit, and everyone enjoyed dancing to it.

10. Since they enjoyed the evening so much, Wayan and J.C. stayed afterward; they stacked dishes and bagged trash with me.

Complex or Compound-Complex? p. 110

EXERCISE

1. CD-CX

2. CX

3. CD-CX

4. CD-CX

5. CX

6. CX

7. CD-CX

8. CD-CX

9. CX

10. CD-CX

Review A: Kinds of Sentence Structure, p. 111

EXERCISE A

1. S

2. CD

3. S

4. S

5. CD

EXERCISE B

6. CX

7. CD-CX

8. CX

9. CX

10. CD-CX

CD-CX

11. CX

12. CX

13. CX

14. CD-CX

15. CD

Under an old law, the president pro tempore of the Senate became the president of the United States if no one else held the office.

Today if the president and vice-president cannot do their jobs, the Speaker of the House takes over.

Here’s another interesting fact.

Technically, George Washington was not the first president of the U.S. government.

That honor belonged to a man who had been Maryland’s representative to the Continental Congress.

The first and only president of the Congress of the Confederation, which managed the first U.S. government, was John Hanson, and he was elected by the Congress in 1781.

Hanson’s title was “President of the United States in Congress Assembled,” and he served for one year.

During the summer I will visit Australia, which people call the Land Down Under.

While I am there, I’ll also visit New Zealand.
8. New Zealand is a small country that lies southeast of Australia.

9. I am not afraid of flying, and I am not afraid of long ocean voyages.

10. In fact, I may become a flight attendant.

11. Flight attendants get discounts on airfare; their families are also eligible for lower fares.

12. Have you ever been to England?

13. Since globes make me wonder about life in different countries, I like to study them; I enjoy maps as well.

14. Ireland is located off the western coast of England, but Scotland is north of England on the same landmass.

15. If you see the waters of the Caribbean Sea, you will fall in love with their gemlike color and clarity.

Review C: Kinds of Sentence Structure, p. 113

EXERCISE

1. After we found out about the shelter, Mona and I began helping the people there.

2. We gathered our outgrown clothes and toys, and we put them neatly in boxes.

3. My mother drove us to the shelter and helped us carry the boxes inside.

4. When the shelter director saw our gifts, she seemed very happy, and she thanked us.

5. In the evenings we usually watch the news because we are interested in world events.
Chapter 8: Agreement, pp. 114–134

Number, p. 114

EXERCISE A

1. she 11. shelves
2. beach 12. people
3. we 13. many
4. men 14. guesses
5. mouse 15. geese
6. cities 16. chickens
7. I 17. loaf
8. mouth 18. us
9. plateau 19. prophecies
10. parentheses 20. citizen

EXERCISE B

21. roof
22. box
23. e-mails
24. French fry
25. calves
26. him
27. man
28. sheep
29. puppies
30. stereo

Subject-Verb Agreement A, p. 115

EXERCISE

1. is 11. have
2. celebrate 12. have
3. watch 13. are
4. see 14. are
5. include 15. do
6. wear 16. have
7. play 17. do
8. line 18. have
9. seem 19. are
10. view 20. Does

Subject-Verb Agreement B, p. 116

EXERCISE

1. Two of the sparrows is eating at the bird feeder.
2. Each morning I look out my window at the sunrise.
3. No, he do not sing and dance.
4. After three months, the experiment have been judged a success.
5. The children smile for the camera.
6. The singers is applauding for the winners.
7. They wave to the audience.
8. That tree have still not lost all its leaves.
9. After every performance, she bow.
10. Outside on the playground, children laugh.
11. This evening, Frank are not needed at rehearsal.
12. The geese leave our town during the winter.
13. Mario wants the last orange.
14. We have been waiting for more than two hours.
15. Her sister have that CD.
16. They run together every morning.
17. Sophie need a new winter coat.
18. He always eat breakfast.
19. Jeremy does not expect any problems with the new equipment.
20. That bread smell delicious.

Subject-Verb Agreement C, p. 117

EXERCISE A

1. People throughout history (has, have) been fascinated by the moon.
2. The distance to the moon (is, are) 384,403 kilometers (238,857 miles).
3. The features of the moon (is, are) seen through powerful telescopes.

4. The sun, like the earth (influences, influence) the moon’s motion.

5. The moon’s orbit around the earth (takes, take) about 27 days, 8 hours.

6. The earth, at the same time (moves, move) around the sun.

7. A full moon, on the average (occurs, occur) every 29 1/2 days.

8. Tides on the earth (rises, rise) according to the moon’s gravitational pull.

9. Photography from lunar-orbiting vehicles (shows, show) features on the moon’s surface.

10. Exploration of the moon (continues, continue).

EXERCISE B

11. The names of some American Jewish authors (is, are) well known.

12. A famous author of short stories and novels (is, are) Bernard Malamud.

13. Jewish writers of fiction (includes, include) Saul Bellow.

14. A Nobel Prize in literature (was, were) awarded to Saul Bellow.

15. Another writer of Jewish descent (is, are) Philip Roth.

EXERCISE A

1. One of my brothers (plants, plant) tomatoes every year.

2. No one on my block (believes, believe) his plants will grow.

3. Everyone in the neighborhood (says, say) the soil is not good enough.

4. Most of the plants (does, do) not do very well.

5. A few of them (reaches, reach) full size.

6. Usually everyone in the family (eats, eat) these tomatoes in a salad.

7. Most of the salad (is, are) greens.

8. Several of us (prefers, prefer) blue cheese dressing on the salad.

9. None of us (likes, like) that kind of salad dressing.

10. All of the tomatoes (is, are) eaten before they spoil.

EXERCISE B

11. Some of my cousins (is, are) in musical bands.

12. All of my classmates (listens, listen) to them.

13. Any of the bands (plays, play) for private parties.

14. None of our neighbors ever (complains, complain) when they practice.

15. Most of their music (is, are) enjoyable.

Subject-Verb Agreement E, p. 119

EXERCISE A

1. One

2. Nobody

3. Everyone

4. Many

5. Both

6. None

7. Few

8. All

9. Each

10. Both

EXERCISE B

11. Everybody (is, are) welcome at the skating party.

12. I hope nobody (forgets, forget) to bring skates.
13. Many of my friends (is, are) good skaters.
14. All of us (enjoys, enjoy) the music at the skating rink.
15. Most of the music (is, are) popular dance music.

**Subject-Verb Agreement F, p. 120**

**Exercise A**

1. Acids and bases (is, are) one of our topics in science class.
2. Red litmus paper and blue litmus paper (is, are) used to show the presence of acids or bases.
3. Some food and common household items (contains, contain) acids.
4. (Does, Do) macaroni and cheese contain acids?
5. Citrus fruit and vinegar (makes, make) good test items.
6. Either a lemon or a lime (is, are) easy to test.
7. Lemon juice and other acids (turns, turn) blue litmus paper red.
8. Vinegar and lemon juice (contains, contain) acids.
9. Neither lemons nor limes (is, are) bases.
10. Acids and bases (combines, combine) to make salts.

**Exercise B**

11. Either baking soda or soap are a salt.
12. Fats or oils is added to bases to make soap.
13. Are plaster and cement made with bases?
14. The acidity or alkalinity of a solution (is, are) expressed as a pH value.
15. A pH value as low as 0 or one as high as 7 indicates acidity.

**Subject-Verb Agreement G, p. 121**

**Exercise A**

1. flock 6. group  
2. team 7. house  
3. boards 8. batch  
4. faculty 9. squadron  
5. book 10. clothes

**Exercise B**

Some answers may vary. Students should be able to explain their choices.

11. The pack of wild dogs (has, have) scattered in all directions upon hearing the noise.
12. Each morning the herd (go, goes) all together to the watering hole.
   [or Each morning the herd (goes) to the watering hole.]
13. The audience (was, were) taking notes, sitting quietly, or sleeping.
14. The fleet (sail, sails) home tomorrow.
15. The group of students (sit, sits) one by one on the bench outside the school.
16. (Are, Is) the visiting chorus staying at several guest houses?
17. During the semester the faculty (is, are) helping the students with fund-raisers.
   [or During the semester the faculty (are) helping the students with fund-raisers.]
18. The faculty (is, are) meeting with their team captains in their classrooms.
19. The flock (fly, flies) over this area each autumn.
20. The set (is, are) all in perfect condition except for the one you cracked.
Subject-Verb Agreement H, p. 122

EXERCISE A
1. Here (is, are) the worksheets for today’s class.
2. (There’s, There are) an answer key in the locked desk drawer.
3. On the chalkboard (is, are) written the instructions.
4. Where (is, are) the other assignments for the class?
5. Oh, there (is, are) the dictionary.
6. (Who’s, Who are) the student assistant today?
7. (Is, Are) both of you assistants?
8. Over here (is, are) the papers for the students.
9. (Was, Were) there enough copies for everyone?
10. (Here’s, Here are) one more copy.

EXERCISE B
11. There are several places in need of volunteers in our community.
12. What is the types of volunteer activities available?
13. Here’s a list of community centers and hospitals.
14. On one of these pages are a parental consent form.
15. There’s several locations in immediate need of your help.

Subject-Verb Agreement J, p. 124

EXERCISE
1. is 11. was
2. is 12. was
3. was 13. sponsors
4. Does 14. is
5. has 15. is
6. takes 16. accepts
7. is 17. shares
8. was 18. was
9. Is 19. shows
10. is 20. is

Subject-Verb Agreement K, p. 125

EXERCISE A
1. Snow (don’t, doesn’t) fall in the tropics, except at high elevations.
2. Hurricanes (don’t, doesn’t) travel very far inland.
3. (Don’t, Doesn’t) tornadoes look like funnel-shaped clouds?
4. You (don’t, doesn’t) want to get near a tornado.
5. A rainbow usually (don’t, doesn’t) appear on a bright, sunny day.
6. (Don’t, Doesn’t) rainbows form from the reflection of light in rain or fog?
7. It (don’t, doesn’t) rain much in the Atacama Desert in Chile.
8. Without lightning, thunder (don’t, doesn’t) occur.
9. (Don’t, Doesn’t) sleet form from frozen rain?
10. I (don’t, doesn’t) enjoy shoveling the walks after a snowstorm.
EXERCISE B
11. lockers
12. dog
13. you
14. he
15. plants

Pronoun-Antecedent Agreement A, p. 126
EXERCISE A
1. his
2. her
3. their
4. themselves
5. their
6. their
7. their
8. their
9. itself
10. its

EXERCISE B
11. their
12. its [or his or her]
13. their
14. her
15. himself [or us or them or her or him or you]

Pronoun-Antecedent Agreement B, p. 127
EXERCISE
1. their
2. his or her
3. their
4. its
5. their
6. its
7. their
8. their
9. his or her
10. its
11. their
12. their
13. his or her
14. their
15. his or her
16. his or her
17. their
18. their
19. our
20. their

Pronoun-Antecedent Agreement C, p. 128
EXERCISE A
1. their
2. her
3. their
4. his
5. his or her
6. they
7. its
8. their
9. her
10. his or her

EXERCISE B
11. their
12. his or her

Pronoun-Antecedent Agreement D, p. 129
EXERCISE A
1. their [or its]
2. their
3. its
4. themselves
5. their
6. its
7. themselves
8. their
9. their
10. themselves

EXERCISE B
Answers may vary slightly.
11. its
12. their
13. their [or its]
14. their
15. themselves

Pronoun-Antecedent Agreement E, p. 130
EXERCISE A
1. it
2. it
3. it
4. they
5. It
6. it
7. It
8. its
9. them
10. it

EXERCISE B
11. it
12. it
13. it
14. its
15. it

Review A: Subject-Verb Agreement, p. 131
EXERCISE A
1. Where is the Mason-Dixon line?
2. The highest peak in the United States is the South Peak of Mount McKinley.
3. The Senate is in its first session of the year.
4. Several of the legends are about Hercules.
5. None of the symphony players listens to rock-and-roll.
6. Fifteen ounces is the total weight of the package.
7. Are Adrienne or Suki going to the party?
8. There are the tickets to tonight’s game.
9. In the mailbox were both letters from Vicente.
10. The Pickwick Papers is a novel by Dickens.
EXERCISE B

11. Twenty gallons is a good size for an aquarium.

12. *Tropical Fishes* is a handy guidebook to own.

13. Neither Doyle nor Ana has an aquarium.

14. Plants in an aquarium isn’t always real.

15. The local fish club is holding a meeting next Wednesday.

16. Four or five dollars is the price of a Siamese fightingfish.

17. Either neon tetras or guppies is a good choice for a home aquarium.


19. A school of small fish live in this large aquarium.

20. Twelve inches is the length of tubing required for this pump.

Review B: Pronoun-Antecedent Agreement, p. 132

EXERCISE A

1. One of my sisters thinks **she** will be a firefighter.

2. Each of my sisters has had plenty of time to decide on their future.

3. A person can change their career several times over a lifetime.

4. If anybody asked me, I would tell them **him** or her I hope to be a doctor one day.

5. Hector or Mateo will write his report on careers of the future.

6. On Saturday I helped my grandparents in their movie rental store.

7. Someone from the career testing service left their jacket in our classroom.

8. The student body enjoyed their career fair this year.

9. White Rapids, the neighboring town, holds its harvest festival in October.

10. One of my friends sells her produce at the festival.

EXERCISE B

11. Either of the two sisters will bring **her** notebook.

12. Either a hamster or a rabbit shows affection for their owner.

13. I hope everyone remembers their lunch.

14. Each of the children will need his own permission slip.

15. Some of the girls have opened their gifts already.

16. Neither Earl nor Fred has opened their mail yet.

17. A few of the teachers want their students to make presentations.

18. One of the coaches is going to put those boys on his team.

19. Many of the students lost their flashcards.

20. Each of the contestants will do their best.

Review C: Agreement, p. 133

EXERCISE A

1. Civics (is, are) his favorite subject.

2. The class (is, are) working on their science projects.

3. You (doesn’t, don’t) have enough money for that new book.

4. The family (is, are) discussing their vacation plans.

5. *(Has, Have)* the jury reached a verdict?

6. Here (is, are) the canned goods for the food drive.
7. A machine *(doesn’t, don’t)* work properly unless it is oiled.

8. Ten pounds *(is, are)* a lot of weight to lose.

9. *Kelly’s Heroes (is, are)* a 1970 movie starring Clint Eastwood.

10. *(Doesn’t, Don’t)* Thelma look great in that color?

**EXERCISE B**

Everyone has *(his or her)* opinion about what makes a good band. That’s what I learned from my experience with a musical group. My friends and I met recently to combine *(their)* musical talents by forming a band. Tamara brought *(his)* own guitar. Tomás brought *(his)* trumpet. Rupesh and Mary brought *(their)* and *(her)* Australian didgeridoos. Unfortunately, we couldn’t decide what to play. Someone suggested *(their)* favorite song, but no one else knew it. My father suggested we play *(her)* favorite song, “She’ll Be Coming Round the Mountain.” Each of the girls put down *(their)* instrument and laughed heartily. Everybody had *(their)* own idea of what to play. It was chaos!

**Review D: Agreement, p. 134**

**EXERCISE**

In the twentieth century, one of the best-selling vocal artists *(were, was)* Ella Fitzgerald. Newport News *(were, was)* her birthplace, and Beverly Hills *(is, are)* where she passed away at the age of 79. *(He, She)* became famous throughout the world for *(their, her)* clear, sweet voice. The city of New York *(were, was)* where she grew up. The Apollo Theatre in Harlem featured her in one of *(their, its)* amateur nights, and *(were, was)* “discovered” at age sixteen. She performed in a band, and then began working with Chick Webb in *(its, his)* Chick Webb Orchestra.

The 1950s *(were, was)* good years for Fitzgerald. *(Their, Her)* manager, Norman Granz, carefully chose her singing material, and *(he, they)* provided excellent jazz instrumental support for *(it, her)*. In fact, Granz’s Jazz at the Philharmonic featured Fitzgerald as *(their, its)* star attraction. Fitzgerald’s singing style *(were, was)* so popular that many singers imitated *(their)* style in *(his or her, their)* own performances. Fitzgerald also became famous for *(her, their)* “scat” singing. Singers of this style *(imitate, imitates)* a trumpet or saxophone with *(his or her, their)* voices. *Mack the Knife: Ella in Berlin (is, are)* one of her famed scat recordings.
Chapter 9: Using Verbs Correctly, pp. 135–152
Principal Parts of Verbs, p. 135

EXERCISE A

EXERCISE B
21. Water-resistant feathers help ducks stay dry.
22. Those ducks are swimming with their strong legs and feet.
23. These ducks have grown waterproof feathers.
24. Some ducks fed from the surface of the water.
25. Near the pond the ducks are eating seeds and insects.

Regular Verbs, p. 136

EXERCISE A

EXERCISE B

Irregular Verbs A, p. 137

EXERCISE A

EXERCISE B
11. made 13. done 15. known 12. hurt 14. built

Irregular Verbs B, p. 138

EXERCISE A
1. found 5. bitten 8. swam 2. burst 6. flew 9. cut 3. caught 7. grown 10. ate 4. come

EXERCISE B
11. began 13. felt 15. left 12. brought 14. lent

Irregular Verbs C, p. 139

EXERCISE A

EXERCISE B
11. frozen 13. threw 15. broke 12. went 14. rode

Irregular Verbs D, p. 140

EXERCISE A
1. read 5. hid 8. let 2. led 6. had 9. lost 3. hit 7. held 10. broke 4. heard

EXERCISE B
11. shrank 14. spent 12. sang 15. stolen 13. spoken

Original content Copyright © by Holt, Rinehart and Winston. Additions and changes to the original content are the responsibility of the instructor.
Irregular Verbs E, p. 141

EXERCISE A
1. chose
2. bought
3. cost
4. ate
5. forgave
6. gave
7. put
8. said
9. sought
10. sold

EXERCISE B
11. swung
12. taught
13. told
14. thought
15. written

Verb Tense, p. 142

EXERCISE A
1. Alex smells the aroma of barbecued chicken. (past)
2. Dana will bring her famous orange marmalade cake. (present)
3. Trays of salads and fruit filled the picnic tables. (present)
4. Some corn on the cob has already disappeared from the platter. (past perfect)
5. Everyone at the picnic had awaited the signal for lunch. (future)
6. Peepers, my dog, begs for a bit of my food. (past)
7. Everyone will go back for second helpings. (present perfect)
8. The cook, my uncle Rosco, will mix more of his special sauce. (future perfect)
9. Carla brought her famous pasta salad. (past perfect)
10. I am organizing games of softball and horseshoes. (future)

EXERCISE B
11. Sherri and I have registered for our own booth at the craft fair.

Verb Tense Consistency, p. 143

EXERCISE A
Answers may vary. Sample responses are given.

1. Pioneers traveled west in Conestoga wagons and have endured many hardships.
2. After the president of the United States threw out the first ball, the baseball game begins.
3. The hungry child will eat some crackers and drank a cup of milk.
4. Eduardo worked in the garden while we trim the hedges.
5. By dinner I will have finished my homework, and Laurie will have finished her chores.
6. After I swallowed the huge gulp of water, I will cough.
7. As the trees sway in the breeze, the birds will sing merrily.
8. Hannah had mixed her paints before she noticed a crack in her palette.
9. My parents owned a diner until last year when they sold it.
10. Tim had washed the dishes but forgot to put them away.

EXERCISE B

11. (has) heated
12. ran
13. visited
14. will wash
15. finished
Active and Passive Voice, p. 144

EXERCISE A
1. The Nobel Prize fund was established by Alfred Bernhard Nobel.
2. Various institutions function as prize awarders.
3. Winners are named in six categories: physics, chemistry, medicine, literature, peace, and economics.
4. The Royal Swedish Academy of Sciences awards the prizes in physics and chemistry.
5. Each award consists of a gold medal, a diploma, and money.
6. The first Nobel prizes were awarded on December 10, 1901.
7. Each year, the new winners give lectures as part of their awards ceremonies.
8. Prizes have been declined by various nominees, usually for political reasons.
9. During World Wars I and II, the prize committees couldn’t gather information on nominees.
10. No Nobel prizes could be awarded during this time.

EXERCISE B
11. The name January comes from the Roman month Januarius.
12. Janus was honored by Romans as the god of doors, gates, and new beginnings.
13. June is derived from the Roman month Junius.
14. Junius was named after Juno, the goddess of marriage.
15. People associate the month of May with the growth of springtime.
16. In Roman mythology, Maia reigned as the goddess of growth.
17. In Latin, decem means “ten.”
18. The tenth month of the Roman calendar was called December.
19. August refers to Emperor Augustus, ruler of Rome from 27 B.C. to A.D. 14.
20. On the 15th of Februarius, a festival of purification was celebrated by Romans.

Sit and Set, p. 145

EXERCISE A
1. set 5. Set 8. sat
2. sitting 6. sit 9. set
3. Sit 7. setting 10. sit
4. sits

EXERCISE B
11. When our relatives arrived, they began setting the food on the dining table.
12. I was sitting quietly in a corner when I noticed my nephew Gordy.
13. His mother had sat him in a highchair near the dining table.
14. From his highchair he could reach the food that was sitting nearby.
15. He was sticking his fingers into a sweet-potato pie that set within his reach.
16. He then flung globs of pie filling into the dish of corn I had sat on the table earlier.
17. I went over to Gordy and set the pie out of reach.
18. If someone were sitting beside him, maybe he would behave.
19. I sat in the nearest chair and then burst out laughing.
20. I had set on a chocolate cake that someone had carelessly left in the chair.
Rise and Raise, p. 146

EXERCISE A
1. rose  
2. raised  
3. rose  
4. rises  
5. rose  
6. raised  
7. raised  
8. raise  
9. rise  
10. raised

EXERCISE B
11. Grain prices rose again last month.  
12. Each morning when the sun raises, the farmer fills the water tank near the barn.  
13. The water in the pond has raised to the top of its banks.  
14. Our neighbors are raising crops of peanuts on their farm.  
15. In winter the cows rise each morning to a meal of peanut hay.  
16. In the barn, stacks of hay bales raise to the rafters.  
17. As I gaze out into the pasture, I must raise my hand to block the sun from my eyes.  
18. Rise the hood of the truck so that I can check the oil.  
19. Even going slowly, the truck was raising a cloud of dust on the dirt road.  
20. In the evening, sounds of the cows' moos raise in the distance.

Lie and Lay, p. 147

EXERCISE A
1. lay  
2. lying  
3. lie  
4. lying  
5. laid  
6. lying  
7. lays  
8. lies  
9. lies  
10. lays

EXERCISE B
11. You should probably lay down in the nurse's office.  
12. That beautiful afghan is lying across the sofa.

Six Troublesome Verbs, p. 148

EXERCISE A
1. rising  
2. sit  
3. approved  
4. attacked  
5. promised  
6. placing  
7. soared  
8. Raise  
9. set  
10. decided

EXERCISE B
The audience rose to stand at attention while the flag was raised. Then everyone joined in the singing of the national anthem. When the crowd sat down once again, the game began. The ball was set at the forty-yard line for the kickoff. Soon, football players were laying in a tangled heap in the middle of the field. What an exciting game this was going to be!

Review A: Principal Parts of Verbs, p. 149

EXERCISE A
1. hoping  
2. soared  
3. approved  
4. attacked  
5. promised  
6. placing  
7. wanted  
8. used  
9. decided  
10. helping
EXERCISE B
11. wrote 15. frozen 18. saw
12. knew 16. made 19. began
13. sang 17. broken 20. lent
14. gone

Review B: Principal Parts of Verbs, p. 150

EXERCISE A
1. combed 6. decided
2. died 7. used
3. looking 8. arrived
4. supposed 9. figuring
5. elected 10. cooked

EXERCISE B
11. lost 16. shown
12. shrank [or shrunk] [or showed]
13. knew 17. drunk
14. done 18. seen
15. caught 19. swum
20. ridden

Review C: Tense, p. 151

EXERCISE A
1. The chorus will sing a medley of Stevie Wonder’s hits.
2. Many singers participated in last year’s concert.
3. Ms. Das leads the chorus as well as the orchestra.
4. Mika will play a trumpet solo in tonight’s concert.
5. She practiced for the performance all weekend.
6. Lionel accidentally dropped the cymbals.
7. There will be photographs of the performance available for sale.
8. The soloist sang with a strong, clear voice.
9. The principal knows the names of all the students in the choir.
10. We sold a ticket for every seat available.

EXERCISE B
11. will have given 14. had seen
12. chose 15. has spoken
13. is beginning

Review D: Active and Passive Voice; Six Troublesome Verbs, p. 152

EXERCISE A
1. The farmer’s market holds a cooking contest each June.
2. Numerous cookies and casseroles are sampled by the judges.
3. Fruit punch, lemonade, and fruit smoothies are made by contestants.
4. Votes are cast for the tastiest items.
5. People buy ingredients to make the dishes they like the most.
6. I have frozen bags of corn and berries in my freezer at home.
7. One day I was given a slice of homemade berry tart by one of the vendors.
8. The next day I asked him for his recipe.
9. That weekend I secretly made a delicious dessert for my family.
10. “A prize should be awarded to whoever baked this!” exclaimed my father.

EXERCISE B
11. lying 15. set 18. Lay
12. risen 16. rose 19. setting
13. sitting 17. sat 20. lay
14. raise
Chapter 10: Using Pronouns Correctly, pp. 153–166

Case, p. 153

EXERCISE A
1. nominative
2. nominative
3. nominative
4. possessive
5. objective

EXERCISE B
Answers will vary. Sample responses are given.
11. desk’s
12. us
13. her

The Case Forms of Personal Pronouns, p. 154

EXERCISE A
1. Katie hit it out of the park.
2. We have saved money and made lists.
3. Mom has asked for a day off from her job to go shopping.
4. The family will go to the mall in our minivan.
5. It will be full of purchases by the end of the day.

EXERCISE B
Answers will vary; the correct options are given.
6. you, him, her, it, or them
7. You, He, She, It, or They
8. mine, his, hers, its, ours, or theirs
9. it
10. my, your, his, her, our, or their
11. I, you, he, she, or they
12. it
13. my, your, his, her, our, or their
14. you, we, or they
15. you, him, her, it, or them

The Nominative Case A, p. 155

EXERCISE A
1. she
2. I
3. we
4. he
5. they
6. I
7. she and I
8. they
9. We and they
10. she

EXERCISE B

11. Yes, the pine and the cedar are the trees to prune.
12. The man with the bulldog puppy is he.
13. Kyron and Sherry learned to speak Spanish as children.
14. The class’s most colorful dressers are they.
15. Despite her promises, Terra did not arrive on time.

The Nominative Case B, p. 156

EXERCISE A

1. Crystal and the other sky divers checked the time.
2. The best people for the job are Kelly and Rico.
3. The dog and the cats are an important part of our family.
4. The players to watch this season are Bobbie and Cathy.
5. In the dark Joseph knocked the alarm clock off the table.
6. The Andersons and the Morgans will get to the campsite first.
7. These stray cats are not healthy, nor are these stray cats friendly.
8. Tiffany said, “Kat and Tiffany will be at her house.”
9. Are you and Nilda and Rogelio taking your grandparents to dinner?
10. Cleon and Loretta and I will be the only solo singers.

**EXERCISE B**

11. Kelly and **him** started sharing a locker.
12. Dustin shouted, “Montel and **I** are going to win this game!”
13. I finally realized my secret pen pal was **her**.
14. What did you and Todd bring to the international food fair?
15. The drama instructor and **me** performed a one-act play for the class.

**The Objective Case A, p. 157**

**EXERCISE A**

1. The magician gave **her** the blindfold.
2. Toshiro photographed **me** in front of the state capitol.
3. With a smile, Coach handed **us** the first-place trophies.
4. The dog ran right by **them**.
5. Behind Dr. Haddad and **her** stood the new patient.
6. There should never be secrets between **you** and me.
7. “**Show me** your school ID,” said the ticket taker at the football game.
8. I can’t believe I tripped over it!
9. Give **them** to me, please.
10. The cafeteria serves **us** a different main dish each day of the week.

**EXERCISE B**

11. The talented gymnast performed the routine flawlessly.
12. Ice-skating is important to **Deanna**.
13. May I have the grapes?
14. Give **Robert** the shopping list.
15. At the graduation ceremony, Sue will sit between **Malik and Shaun**.

**The Objective Case B, p. 158**

**EXERCISE A**

1. Uncle Hugo explained the fable to **Doyle and me**.
2. The train thundered past **Justin and Clara**.
3. A nurse quickly handed **Emily** the scissors.
4. “**Just stack the books on the counter,” said the librarian.
5. Photograph **Aunt Shirley and me** with your new camera.

**EXERCISE B**

*Answers will vary. Sample responses are given.*

6. Nat and Téa will meet them at the water park later today.
7. Jayce, can you see them from the balcony?
8. Tell **her** the answer to the question before the exam begins.
9. If that’s lemonade, please pour it in my glass.
10. To protect their new garden from the dog, **Connie and Beau** built a fence around it.

**Nominative and Objective Case Pronouns A, p. 159**

**EXERCISE**

1. The special effects impressed **me**.
2. The spies could possibly be **they**.
3. Mother and **we** posed for a family portrait.
4. **Una** borrowed the tools from **the Lincolns and us**.
5. Did the manager offer **him** a part-time job?
6. The fake ghost gave **them** a fright.
7. Tameka and **I** baby-sit the Clark children.
8. Did Carol tell **you** the news about the new soccer coach?
9. The class valedictorian is he.
10. She and Joey went to the library.
11. Trey doesn’t believe it.
12. Give at least one clue to her.
13. The dog brought us a bone.
15. Lisa and I sang the final duet.
16. The diving instructor told Sheila and him another way to work on breathing techniques.
17. They did not believe that light travels at 186,000 miles per second.
18. The bus driver turned on the radio for us.
19. Carla gave him a note after class.
20. The pouring rain drenched them to the bone.

**Nominative and Objective Case Pronouns B, p. 160**

**Exercise**

1. The mayor gave us an award.
2. The most exciting match featured Tipley and he.
3. In June, you and him should go to San Juan.
4. Now the person without a partner is me.
5. The postal worker delivered a package for Harry and she.
6. My grandfather and her operated a small inn in Vermont.
7. The coach praised Manuel and he.
8. No one gave Mu Lan or I the message.
9. I felt certain that the man in the superhero costume was he.
10. The crowd cheered when the principal gave Stacy and she the trophies.

11. We’ve been waiting for you and him for half an hour.
12. Eddie gave the strawberries to her and Michael.
13. You must tell your dad or me if you will be out late.
14. This problem involves her and I.
15. The children and they had a great time.
16. The coach gave them an inspiring speech before the game.
17. Felicia spoke to Freddie and he.
18. The one who took the early flight was we.
19. Him and she engaged in a spirited debate.
20. Anton and they arrived late.

**Who and Whom, p. 161**

**Exercise A**

1. Whom
2. whom
3. Who
4. whom
5. Who

**Exercise B**

11. Who knows what instrument Van Cliburn plays?
12. For who was this library named?
13. Now, whom recorded the song originally?
14. With whom will you sit at the game?
15. To whom shall I address this letter?

**Appositives and Reflexive Pronouns, p. 162**

**Exercise A**

1. We
2. us
3. us
4. himself
5. we
6. We
7. himself
8. us
9. themselves
10. us
**Exercise B**

11. The boys made dinner themselves.
12. Us computer types enjoy this game.
13. Us seventh graders raised the most money.
14. Did you see Reed put himself in front of the goal?
15. Danielle read the letter to we girls.

**Special Pronoun Problems, p. 163**

**Exercise A**

1. themselves
2. we
3. who
4. whom
5. himself
6. themselves

**Exercise B**

11. I don’t know whom their coach is.
12. A coach should pride herself or himself on the good spirit of the players.
13. During the tie-breaking game us setters worked extra hard.
14. In every play I asked myself, “Whom should spike the ball?”
15. Who were the players that set themselves up for victory?

**Review A: Nominative Case, p. 164**

**Exercise A**

1. Harry and I both liked the movie.
2. After lunch, perhaps Klaus and she will help us paint the kitchen.
3. The two finalists were Fatima and I.
4. The only people to speak were they.
5. Without warning, he jumped up and pointed to the witness.
6. Then she showed me how the computer worked.
7. The only judges were Mrs. Okana and he.
8. Susana and we may be late.
9. The two finalists could be Elmore and I.
10. At the curtain call, they took another bow.

**Exercise B**

11. I 15. They 19. he
12. I 16. he 20. he
13. he 17. she
14. they 18. we

**Review B: Objective Case, p. 165**

**Exercise A**

1. The sky above him was full of clouds.
2. The gate banged against her when it closed.
3. Please pass me the atlas.
4. Melba told us something about her day at the Bluegrass Music Festival.
5. Did they give Eliot or him a surprise party?
6. A sudden storm took me by surprise.
7. The visitor saw a signal pass between the king and him.
8. The paramedic showed us a way to save someone from choking.
9. My uncle always gives my cousin and her newspaper clippings.
10. Unfortunately, the bus left without him.

**Exercise B**

11. Suzi gave thoughtful presents to Lanni and him.
12. Jenna slowly walked toward Howard and me.
13. The glowing embers of the fire warmed Rosa and she.
14. Josie’s mother gave her and him a ride home from the store.
15. The speaker complimented Gary and I on our attentiveness.
16. The students read captivating stories about
 him and his adventures.

17. Take good care of him.

18. Clara took Todd and he to see
 Shakespeare’s play *Othello*.

19. The one who made the generous donation
 was her.

20. In a flash, the skateboarder zoomed past
 him and she.

**Review C: Special Pronoun Problems, p. 166**

**EXERCISE A**

1. The gymnast first tried the new parallel
t he himself.

2. She showed us students how a diamond
 is cut.

3. Us left-handed people have trouble using
 most scissors.

4. The mayor congratulated us lifeguards for
 saving the child.

5. Finally, the detectives asked themselves the
 right question.

6. As he worked, Octavio talked to himself.

7. The Mustangs lost to the Tornadoes.

8. Now us hikers have our own club.

9. The bears helped themselves to the
 campers’ food.

10. Us dancers practice two hours every day.

**EXERCISE B**

11. To who should we give the money?

12. Who wants vanilla yogurt?

13. With whom can Red share a room?

14. Who has Alicia asked to help her?

15. Of all the speakers, who did you like the
 most?

16. Whom understands how this computer
 program works?

17. Who did you vote for in the last election?

18. Before Andrew Johnson, who was the
 President of the United States?

19. Who is this package meant for, Sabrina?

20. Whom can show us where Mexico City
 is on the map?
Chapter 11: Using Modifiers Correctly, pp. 167–191

Modifiers, p. 167

**EXERCISE A**

1. The months that make up winter are December, January, and February.
2. During the winter, it sometimes snows.
3. Snow rarely falls in southern Texas.
4. Following winter, spring arrives in March.
5. Spring is the time to plant seeds.
6. The weather usually is rainy in springtime.
7. The warmest season of the year is summer.
8. Students whose school year ends in May enjoy these summer months.
9. The crisp days of autumn follow summer.
10. After the temperatures cool, leaves fall from the trees.

**EXERCISE B**

Answers will vary. Sample responses are given.

11. hilarious
12. In geometry class
13. across the chair
14. who lost a history textbook
15. bright

**One-Word Modifiers, p. 168**

*If you classify possessive pronouns as adjectives, then her in 5 may be considered a modifier.*

**EXERCISE A**

1. Judy Blume has written nearly twenty books for young people.
2. Close friendship is the subject of *Just As Long As We’re Together.*
3. Stephanie and Rachel have been best friends forever, but then Alison appears.
4. If you enjoyed that book, you will eagerly read its sequel, *Here’s to You, Rachel Robinson.*
5. When Rachel’s older brother moves back home, her orderly life is turned upside down.
7. *Are You There God? It’s Me, Margaret* is funny.
8. Young Margaret Simon talks with God about growing up.
9. The popular novel puts a funny spin on the trials of preteen girls.
10. Through her many talks with God, Margaret anxiously awaits getting older.

**EXERCISE B**

Answers will vary. Sample responses are given.

11. important
12. happily
13. always
14. cheerful
15. extremely
16. younger
17. secretive
18. concerned
19. private
20. loudly

**Phrases Used as Modifiers, p. 169**

**EXERCISE A**

1. This is the frog we will dissect in class today. (Today is not part of the prepositional phrase in class.)
2. The frogs in the other trays are for the next class.
3. Please assemble your equipment on the counter.
4. These plastic gloves are the ones to wear for the best protection.
5. During the dissection I performed most of the work.
6. Standing near our frog, my lab partner looked ill.
7. The perfect job for my lab partner was taking notes.
8. The lab windows, opened wide, allowed the odors to escape.
9. The frogs are preserved in a formaldehyde solution.
10. Working for a week, we finally finished the frog dissection.

**EXERCISE B**  Answers will vary.
11. Removing his shoes
12. to choose
13. under the window
14. Working quickly
15. painted a glossy black
16. to ask
17. in the tunnel
18. of celery
19. Standing beside the griddle
20. to give Anya

**Clauses Used as Modifiers, p. 170**

**EXERCISE A**
1. Jesse is one of those people who enjoy searching for treasure.
2. A metal detector is the search tool that he uses most.
3. A metal detector can locate metal when the metal lies beneath the ground’s surface.
4. Coins and jewelry are some of the objects that a metal detector locates.
5. After they find valuable objects, many treasure seekers sell them.
6. Other hunters build special chests that hold their treasure.
7. Treasure hunters who use a metal detector must invest money in this tool.
8. High-quality metal detectors, which can cost around five hundred dollars, run on batteries.
9. The Internet is a place where you can read about other people’s experiences.
10. Some treasure seekers create Web sites that show pictures of their latest finds.

**EXERCISE B**  Students’ identification of words modified may vary for some items.
11. Before I went to sleep, I chose my clothes for the next day.
12. Where is the coat that I loaned you?
13. Will someone who knows the answer please speak up?
14. Leticia completed her test with confidence because she had studied hard.
15. Spring is the season that I enjoy most.
16. When I removed the CD from its case, the disc cracked.
17. Did you read the e-mail that I sent you?
18. The puppy chewed on my shoes after he ate my homework.
19. Terrence is a friend whom you can trust with a secret.
20. This novel, which I read in two hours, is short and suspenseful.

**Phrases and Clauses Used as Modifiers, p. 171**

**EXERCISE A**
1. Who are the people whom you invited along?
2. They were roommates when they went to college.
3. A state park is the place to camp over the weekend.
4. I know a woman who is a park ranger.
5. Talking with her, I received some advice.
6. Campers should take plastic bags that will hold their food scraps.
7. Keep food scraps **inside these bags.**

8. Wild animals **that wander nearby** will not smell the food.

9. They will not **search** your campsite **for the food.**

10. I will pack resealable bags **along with my socks and jeans.**

**EXERCISE B**

Do not separately identify phrases that are embedded within the modifying clauses.

11. The grass **that you planted** is not growing well.

12. Please leave my bicycle **in the garage.**

13. The basketball court **to use in the morning** is the new one.

14. Before he said anything, Darnell took a deep breath.

15. Pattering against our windows, the sleet woke me.

16. The river, **filled to its banks,** flowed swiftly.

17. Is peach the flavor **that you would like?**

18. Do you know anyone **who can tutor me?**

19. Rae pulled her new in-line skates from their box.

20. After you leave school today, come home.

**Irregular Comparisons, p. 173**

**EXERCISE A**

Some forms may vary.

1. Carlos likes science fiction stories **better** than mysteries.

2. I think Friday is the **best** day of the whole week.

3. More people came to the meeting than we had expected.

4. Of all the members of the team, Inez bats **best.**

5. My cousin was able to save **more** money than I.

6. Chet has delivered **many** newspapers.

7. After supper, I felt **worse** than I had felt in the afternoon.

8. We hiked **farther** today than we hiked yesterday.

9. Dad doesn’t play **much** tennis.

10. This is the **worst** cold I have ever had.

**EXERCISE B**

11. In my opinion, that was a (positive of good) movie.

12. Lita is the (superlative of good) speller of the three contestants.

13. Which of the four theaters is (superlative of far) from your house?

14. Georgia plays all sports (positive of well).

15. My tennis serve is (comparative of good) than it was last year.

16. I’m sorry I wasn’t (comparative of much) help to you.
17. If you practice diligently, your math skills will get (comparative of good).

18. Which is (comparative of easy) for you: memorizing dates or memorizing formulas?

19. This is the (superlative of bad) food I have ever eaten!

20. “How many (comparative of many) laps do we have to run?” I asked the coach.

```
Regular and Irregular Comparisons A, p. 174
```

**EXERCISE A**

1. Paulo’s articles in the school paper are read more than any other article.

2. Paulo’s reviews of local food shops usually have a fun theme.

3. Each theme is more interesting than the last one.

4. For example, last week’s funny theme was “Sneeze-Inducing Meals.”

5. He had eaten at a pizza parlor that used the most pepper he had ever tasted in pizza.

6. Unexpectedly, he began sneezing with loud sneezes that sounded like whistles.

7. The more eagerly Paulo ate, the more he sneezed like a train whistle.

8. The other patrons laughed quietly at first and then less quietly.

9. Between whistling sneezes, Paulo joined in the laughter more enthusiastically than anyone else.

10. Of the three pizza parlors he reviewed, this one received the fewest positive comments.

```
Regular and Irregular Comparisons B, p. 175
```

**EXERCISE A**

11. This recipe is simpler than the other one because there are fewer steps.

12. Although I was sorry about breaking the window, I was more sorry about breaking the vase.

13. This television show is more boring than any others I have watched this weekend.

14. “All I ask,” said Coach Powell, “is that you give the best effort possible.”

15. George groaned, “This is the worst haircut I have ever had!”

**EXERCISE B**

11. This recipe is simpler than the other one because there are fewer steps.

12. Although I was sorry about breaking the window, I was more sorry about breaking the vase.

13. This television show is more boring than any others I have watched this weekend.

14. “All I ask,” said Coach Powell, “is that you give the best effort possible.”

15. George groaned, “This is the worst haircut I have ever had!”
12. As computer equipment becomes more common, it often becomes (decreasing comparative of costly).

13. Of all the science projects, Johnny’s is (increasing superlative of fascinating).

14. I hope the weather gets (increasing comparative of good) before the football game tomorrow.

15. Of all my friends’ handwriting, Jenny’s is the (decreasing superlative of legible).

**Degrees of Comparison A, p. 176**

**Exercise A**

1. most forcefully
2. more gently
3. longer
4. harder
5. largest

**Exercise B**

6. Which is heavier—a pound of feathers or a pound of nails?
7. Of the lion, tiger, and cheetah, the cheetah can run fastest.
8. Maura is the most qualified candidate who ever ran for president.
9. Michael dances more gracefully than I do.
10. This chemistry problem seems extremely difficult.
11. Of all my friends, Albert works most carefully.
12. Does Leigh live farther from the library than LaShawna?
13. Julia sings in the choir very often.
14. Which story in the collection do you like best?
15. Miriam is less familiar with using a globe than I.

**Degrees of Comparison B, p. 177**

**Exercise A**

1. Which tastes (good, better) with frozen yogurt—fresh fruit or oatmeal crumble?
2. The jicama is a large (white, whiter) root that can be eaten raw or cooked.
3. Of these fruits—mango, papaya, and pineapple—I think pineapple is (sweeter, sweetest).
4. The guava is a (smallest, smaller) fruit than the melon.
5. Of the four kinds of berries in the market, the blueberries are (riper, ripest).

**Exercise B**

6. The bite of the tarantula can be deadly to mice.
7. The blue whale is the largest animal ever to have lived on earth.
8. To me, a snake is scarier than a spider.
9. The bison population in North America was once more numerous than the bison population today.
10. The garter snake is harmless.
11. Warm regions are better habitats for scorpions than colder regions.
12. Over short distances, the cheetah is the fastest land animal of all.
13. Is a dog more loyal than a cat?
14. Of my three parrots, Mr. Chatty is the most talkative.
15. Which is more likely to be a good pet for children, a golden retriever or a Great Dane?
Degrees of Comparison C, p. 178

EXERCISE
1. Which of your three friends has the (earlier, earliest) curfew?

2. Of all the members in my writing group, I am (less interested, least interested) in poetry.

3. The toddler walked (aimlessly, more aimlessly) around the playground.

4. This new computer game is (less fun, least fun) than the game I already had.

5. What is the (more interesting, most interesting) book of all those on the list?

6. Grandpa's computer store is open (later, latest) than his competitor's.

7. Would the subway be (fastest, faster) than the bus?

8. When I cook chicken, I use (less, least) oil than Dad uses.

9. The kite flew merrily in a (brisk, brisker) summer breeze.

10. Selena is (more comfortable, most comfortable) speaking in public than her brother.

11. Don’t buy that potted plant—it looks the (least healthy, less healthy) of them all.

12. Listen to this joke—it’s the (funnier, funniest) one I’ve heard all week!

13. This abandoned house is (spooky, spookier).

14. We’ll watch this movie tonight since it is (shortest, shorter) than the other one.

15. Vic is the (most loyal, more loyal) friend I have known.

16. Every grocery store promises that its fish counter has the (freshest, fresher) fish in town.

17. My front yard has the (taller, tallest) trees on the block.

18. Which is (farther, farthest) away, the library or the park?

19. Jeanette is (more punctual, most punctual) than her sister Julia.

20. Wearing a hat is the (better, best) way to stay warm.

Good and Well, p. 179

EXERCISE A
1. good 6. well
2. well 7. well
3. well 8. good
4. well 9. good
5. well 10. well

EXERCISE B
11. You did a good job on this essay for history class.

12. If this plan doesn’t work well, we will try the backup plan.


14. I didn’t know you could dance so good!

15. Doesn’t the poem sound well?

Choosing Adjectives or Adverbs, p. 180

EXERCISE A
1. quick 4. bad
2. weak 5. happy
3. confusing

EXERCISE B
6. Lanelle feels badly about the misunderstanding.

7. That song sounds greatly.

8. Yesterday you seemed cheerful when I saw you.


10. All afternoon, Mario looked distracted.
12. Mailou grimaced because the soup tasted so salty.
13. The baby grew quickly.
14. During the movie, the kids looked curious at the old theater.
15. Please feel free to look around the store.
16. The lecture at the auditorium was lengthy.
17. Is it me, or do you feel coldly also?
18. Rufina’s new hairstyle is curly.
19. The note Katy received from a secret admirer was unexpectedly.

Double Comparisons, p. 181

**EXERCISE A**

1. busier 6. shortest
2. scariest 7. bluer
3. less spicy 8. latest
4. smarter 9. funnier
5. easier 10. cutest

**EXERCISE B**

11. I have two brothers who are more younger than I.
12. Mick is the friendliest little boy you will ever meet.
13. Mark, on the other hand, is more shyer than Mick.
14. Of all of us, Mark is the quietest.
15. When Mick and Mark are together, however, they are both more louder than you would expect.
16. We recently moved into a house with a more larger yard than our previous house had.

17. Of all the houses we saw, this one was best because of the large yard.
18. During the more warmer days this autumn, we will play ball in the backyard.
19. I am teaching Mick and Mark the most best way to catch a softball.
20. They are more curiouser, however, about the treehouse I am building than about softball tips.

Double Negatives, p. 182

**EXERCISE A**

1. were 6. was
2. was 7. can
3. anything 8. anything
4. can 9. anyone
5. anywhere 10. either

**EXERCISE B**

Answers may vary.

Nobody never taught me how to play the piano, so I wasn’t hardly prepared for the surprise. At first, I played a few notes very softly. I didn’t want anyone to hear me playing. When I didn’t feel shy anymore, I played less softly. I still wasn’t taking no lessons. I didn’t go nowhere without thinking about the next time I could practice. I didn’t scarcely go out on the weekends when I could stay inside and practice. Then my grandmother asked me, “Wouldn’t you like to take no lessons?” I didn’t barely wait a second to shout “Yes!” I could scarcely believe it. I hadn’t never been so excited before.

Misplaced Prepositional Phrases, p. 183

**EXERCISE A**

1. The woman in the red car is Ms. Prasad, my principal.
2. I found your bracelet under the sofa.
3. With a map, we found our way home.
4. We used glue to repair the chair with the broken leg.

5. On Monday afternoon she told us that she had scored the game’s winning goal.

EXERCISE B
Answers may vary.

6. The parrot ^spoke three words to my mother in the brass cage.

7. We sat at the table and talked about our fishing trip in the kitchen.

8. In the game I scored two points at the high point.

9. I read about the lost puppy that was found in today’s newspaper.

10. The runner twisted her ankle with the blue T-shirt.

11. The rancher lassoed the steer in a cowboy hat.

12. I promised before the test on Friday I would help you with math.

13. The student with polka dots is painting his pottery.

14. In a ballerina costume Todd photographed the dancer.

15. I said during the break she should visit the nurse.

Misplaced and Dangling Participial Phrases, p. 184

EXERCISE A

1. I spoke softly to the horse sitting in the saddle.

2. Munching on popcorn, the movie was enjoyable.

3. Frosted with a fruit glaze, I couldn’t wait to eat the muffin.

4. Painted red, I noticed the new fire lanes.

5. Miguel saw a rabbit jogging in his new sneakers.

EXERCISE B
Answers may vary.

6. Taking a shower, Modene did not hear the ringing telephone.

7. Cleaning my closet, I found the missing baseball card.

8. While I was making the bed, my cat burrowed under the pillows.

9. I saw a bluebird sitting in its nest.

10. Running to catch the bus, I heard a dog bark at me.

Misplaced Adjective Clauses, p. 185

EXERCISE A

1. The president whom I respect the most is Abraham Lincoln.

2. I would like to hike up a mountain that has a snow-covered peak.

3. The player who scores the most goals will be elected Most Valuable Player.

4. We drove to Springfield, which is about an hour away.

5. My best friend is Elbert, whose father was in the army with my father.

EXERCISE B

6. I served the food to the athletes that had been made for lunch.

7. Mom chose the puppy as a gift for my little brother that has brown fur.

8. The actor gave me his autograph who starred in the film.

9. I put the camera in the closet that my uncle gave me.

10. My cousin gave me a parakeet who goes to college in Alabama.
11. The candles came from the corner store that I bought.

12. The people have arrived at the skating rink whom I invited to my skating party.

13. The strange thumping remained a mystery that I heard in the night.

14. The software crashed my computer system that I installed.

15. This poem is for your personal scrapbook, which I wrote myself.

Misplaced and Dangling Phrases and Clauses A, p. 186

Exercise
Answers may vary.

1. As I flipped through the yearbook, Jordan’s picture leaped out at me.

2. Understanding the problem, Bob suddenly thought the solution was clear.

3. The room with the blue walls belongs to my brother.

4. I examined the sandy starfish caught in the net.

5. Ben, who borrowed my CD, carelessly left it lying on the bus.

6. Painted with dyes made from berries, the pots fascinated the archaeologist.

7. Jan hid her dirty dishes behind the bookcase when Alfredo unexpectedly visited.

8. Here are the instructions that I jotted down for the baby sitter.

9. I promised the girl who wore a red dress I would help her find her bird.

10. The cat trotting by with feathers in his mouth surprised Uncle Fred.

Misplaced and Dangling Phrases and Clauses B, p. 187

Exercise
Answers may vary.

1. The skater who won the competition thanked the judges.

2. Cliff suggested we shoot some hoops after lunch.

3. Alberto stirred the rice boiling in hot water.

4. The dust under the rug won’t be visible to our guests.

5. C

6. I handed the basket filled with fruit, nuts, and a cheese log to the lucky recipient.

7. The stale bread that I tossed into the yard was eaten by birds.

8. I can’t reach the spices on the top shelf that I need for the recipe.

9. C

10. I gave the stuffed animal that I won at the carnival to the cute toddler.

Review A: Comparative and Superlative Forms, p. 188

Exercise A

1. faster

2. more exciting

3. smartest

4. best

5. worse

6. larger

7. most beautiful

8. more interesting

9. bad

10. best

Exercise B

11. nearer

12. more

13. more terrific

14. safer

15. more silently

16. worse

17. much

18. suddenly

19. more intelligent

20. far

Review B: Special Problems in Using Modifiers, p. 189

Exercise A

Answers may vary.

1. Nobody doesn’t like to be late for school.
2. That’s the most silly story I’ve ever heard.
3. Joanna works well with others.
4. I couldn’t hardly recognize Jorge in his costume.
5. The people who live in that house aren’t never home.
6. Of all the roads leading into the canyon, this one is the most steepest.
7. Toshi seems more bravely than Sid.
8. We didn’t have nothing to do.
9. I’ve never felt more sadly.
10. I couldn’t hardly move the heavy carton.

EXERCISE B

11. beautiful
13. younger
15. not
12. well
14. well

Review C: Misplaced and Dangling Modifiers, p. 190

EXERCISE A  Answers may vary.

1. Overgrown and full of weeds, I found the garden.
2. I was interrupted by a visitor eating my lunch.
3. Henry was reading a book about the grizzly bear relaxing in his armchair.
4. Interrupting the movie, the audience began to glare at the noisy children.
5. Recorded on the surveillance tape, the inspector searched for a suspect.
6. Stuck in a scrapbook, my uncle has several old photographs.
7. We saw the Grand Canyon flying home.
8. Chopped into small pieces, Ahmad put onions in the stew.
9. Give the sandwich to your friend that I toasted.
10. The artist painted a picture of lions in his studio.
EXERCISE B

Answers may vary.

11. I didn’t see that wall in the rearview mirror.
12. Tommy scored the hardest goal of the entire game.
13. The telephone seemed more loud than a siren.
14. I turned around quickly, but didn’t see a fire engine.
15. Mi Kyung saw a huge boulder shaped like a camel’s head.
Chapter 12: A Glossary of Usage, pp. 192–199

Glossary of Usage A, p. 192

EXERCISE
1. all right
2. all ready
3. can scarcely
4. bring
5. badly
6. a
7. fewer
8. aren’t
9. everywhere
10. a lot
11. between
12. less
13. good
14. accepted
15. were
16. take
17. among
18. burst
19. could have
20. shouldn’t

Glossary of Usage B, p. 193

EXERCISE A
1. its
2. themselves
3. Why do
4. This type
5. himself

EXERCISE B
6. Those types of hats and coats were popular during the late 1900s.
7. Abraham Lincoln dedicated himself to a career in law and politics.
8. The members of the Iroquois Confederacy they were North American Indians who lived in an area of New York state.
9. How come those bears hibernate?
10. In 1959 Alaska took its place as the forty-ninth state of the United States.
11. The English Puritans who immigrated to North America in 1620 sought to gain more religious freedom for themselves.
12. The Smithsonian Institution engages in these sorts of activities: research, publication, and preservation.
13. Samuel Morse he is given credit for creating the electric telegraph and its code.
14. I enjoy reading this magazine because it’s both informative and fascinating.
15. Betsy Ross she is credited with making the first American stars and stripes flag.

Glossary of Usage C, p. 194

EXERCISE A
1. rather
2. teach
3. as
4. rather
5. Let
6. as
7. somewhat
8. teach
9. as though
10. Leave

EXERCISE B
Answers may vary slightly.
11. Jaime is kind of scared of dogs, so we keep Buster in his kennel when Jaime comes over.
12. My sister will teach me how to do a back flip at the pool this afternoon.
13. C
14. Written by Betsy Byars, The Burning Questions of Bingo Brown looks like it will be fun to read.
15. Carol is sort of shy around people she doesn’t know.
16. C
17. Those trumpet players look like they have been practicing all day.
18. Leave her stay home if she doesn’t want to go shopping.
19. C
20. Frank told me that he would learn me how to eat with chopsticks.

Glossary of Usage D, p. 195

**EXERCISE A**
1. try to
2. they’re
3. somewhat
4. really
5. then
6. there
7. those
8. This
9. inside
10. way

**EXERCISE B**
Answers may vary slightly.
11. The article said that the secretary bird is real unusual.
12. Protruding behind the secretary bird’s head are feathers that look like quill pens.
13. Those ink pens are made of feather quills.
14. Secretary birds run in a zigzag fashion after their prey.
15. Their predators of snakes.
16. The bird in that picture used its foot to attack the snake.
17. C
18. Those birds are found in Africa.
19. Their habitat is in the part of the continent that is south of the Sahara.
20. This here bird is really tall; it grows to four feet in height!

Glossary of Usage E, p. 196

**EXERCISE A**
1. which
2. unless
3. used to
4. way
5. a dance
6. your
7. Whose
8. a comparison that
9. who
10. than

**EXERCISE B**
Answers may vary slightly.
11. The produce market is only a short way from my house.
12. A pair of stone lions used to stand outside this library.
13. I can’t stay overnight at your house unless I get my mother’s permission.
14. Watercolor painting is when you use water-based paint on paper or fabric.
15. Clarissa can run a long way without getting tired.
16. These are the hyenas who need to be re-located.
17. C
18. I saw on the bulletin board where we will get a half-day holiday on Friday.
20. Ms. Roth is the person which schedules the yearbook photos.

Review A: Common Usage Problems, p. 197

**EXERCISE A**
1. accept
2. those
3. fewer
4. already
5. unless
6. a lot
7. as
8. your
9. somewhat
10. its

**EXERCISE B**
11. When you go home today, please bring that book with you.
12. Although the gumbo is cold, it tastes all right.
13. The violin is one instrument that sounds really badly until you know how to play it.
14. There are fewer patches of snow on the mountain this year than there were last year.
15. C
16. Gazing through the binoculars, Ted asked where the island was at.
17. Helen taught me how to write a anagram.
18. Hana’s project didn’t turn out exactly like she thought it would.
19. Although we were nervous, we should of knocked on the door of the senator’s office.
20. You hadn’t ought to try to walk until your sprained ankle is better.

Review B: Common Usage Problems, p. 198

EXERCISE A
1. accept
2. bad
3. less
4. why
5. there
6. reading
7. way
8. rather
9. used to
10. that

EXERCISE B
Answers may vary slightly.

11. The sheep pressed themselves together against the cold.
12. The talented actress cried like her heart would break—on cue.
13. I looked everywhere for the key but couldn’t find it.
14. Can you believe that there cat is two years old? [or Can you believe that there cat is two years old?]
15. Susan didn’t feel good this morning.
16. A snake— the kind of pet that I want.
17. C
18. In the ballet that our teacher planned, some of the dancers move like fish move in water.
19. I can hardly find a ripe peach among all these green ones.
20. Janet wants to try and play the song in a minor key.

Review C: Common Usage Problems, p. 199

EXERCISE
1. its
2. very
3. as
4. somewhat
5. off
6. broke
7. accept
8. bad
9. their
10. well
11. somewhere
12. its
13. let
14. whose
15. used to
16. than
17. way
18. unless
19. who
20. a right to
**Chapter 13: Capital Letters, pp. 200–217**

**First Words and I, p. 200**

**Exercise A**

1. The letter began, “Dear friends of our fair city.”

2. Helen asked, “May I borrow that book when you’re finished?”


4. Luis wrote, “Dear Jim Arnosky, I was fascinated by your recently published book.”

5. My teacher asked me to write a poem beginning with the line “Roses are red; violets are blue.”

6. Wondering who the guests will be, I asked, “Whom did you invite to our dinner party?”

7. When I saw the latest bestseller, I eagerly grabbed it.

8. Tom began reciting his poem: “Falling, spinning, whirling—the dream had just begun.”

9. During lunch, Robin jotted a letter to Amy and signed it, “Your friend, Robin.”

10. Christine raised her hand and asked, “May I read my short story to the class?”

**Exercise B**

dear Louis Sachar,

We read your novel *Holes* in class, and I am writing to say I loved this book! When Mr. Jiménez said, “In this story, Stanley Yelnats is mistakenly sent to a juvenile detention camp,” I thought, “Maybe I’ll skip this one.” When we started reading, however, I couldn’t wait to finish. The mysterious holes the boys had to dig kept me in suspense. Keep up the fantastic work!

sincerely,
Leo Bellman

**Proper Nouns A, p. 201**

**Exercise A**

1. I just got the new CD by Carrie Underwood.

2. My favorite rabbit is Peter Cottontail.

3. Justine took her cat Smokey to the vet.

4. Did you hear Michael Feldman on the radio this weekend?

5. My dentist, Dr. Larry Lane, always gives me free dental floss.

6. Tracy enjoys taking her dog Bandit to the park.

7. Our neighbors, the Garzas, are hosting the block party this year.

8. Did you read this biography of Catherine the Great?

9. One of my favorite authors is J. R. R. Tolkien.

10. Why did you name your parrot Khan?

**Exercise B**

Answers will vary.

11. Will Smith

12. William J. Clinton

13. Ms. Moore

14. Anton G. Mitelli

15. Snowball

16. Albert Einstein

17. Mia Hamm

18. Alex Davis

19. Lightning

20. Alma Maria Sanchez
**Proper Nouns B, p. 202**

**EXERCISE A**

Answers will vary.

1. Asia
2. Kenya
3. Seattle
4. Utah
5. Jamaica
6. Lake Erie
7. South Creek Street
8. Old Mill Park
9. Mount Everest
10. the Northeast

**EXERCISE B**

11. There is a rocky island in the Atlantic called St. Helena.
13. Thomas is drawing a map of Africa and has marked the location of the equator.
14. Ships use the Panama Canal to pass between the Caribbean Sea and the Pacific Ocean.
15. Although you may think Lake Charles is just a lake, it is also a city in Louisiana.
16. I spoke with a woman from Laos, which is a country between Vietnam and Thailand.
17. Sanya’s class toured the museum located at 249 Dixon Parkway.
18. The island of Puerto Rico, which is in the West Indies, covers nearly 3,500 square miles.
19. Located in two states, Death Valley contains the lowest point in the western hemisphere.
20. Kay enjoys spending time in her home on Fifty-third St. in Minneapolis.

**Proper Nouns C, p. 203**

**EXERCISE A**

1. Brandon is helping to coach the Broncos, which is a little league team.
2. In 1947, the Central Intelligence Agency was founded to coordinate the intelligence activities of government groups.
3. Margaret Thatcher was elected to the British Parliament in 1959.
4. Has Julian done his research for the oral report on United Way?
5. The Buffalo Bills were runners-up in the Super Bowl four years in a row, from 1991 to 1994.
6. The United States Congress was established in 1789.
7. When Paula turns fourteen, she plans to volunteer at Marshall Memorial Hospital.
8. Normally we use the school library, but today we’re going to the Sherman Public Library.
9. The United States Senate is composed of two senators from each state.
10. Did you hear the results of the vote in Durant City Council today?

**EXERCISE B**

[12] Eleven years later, NASA had landed the first people on the moon.
[13] Neil Armstrong, who studied aeronautical engineering at Purdue University, was the astronaut who first stepped onto the moon.
[14] In Cape Canaveral, Florida, space flights for NASA are launched from the John F. Kennedy Space Center.
[15] Space flights with crews are controlled from the Lyndon B. Johnson Space Center in Houston, Texas.
Proper Nouns D, p. 204

Exercise

1. The Bedouins are nomadic Arabs in Arabia, Syria, and North Africa.
2. The class’s Thanksgiving party is this Friday at noon.
3. It has been over half a century since World War II ended.
4. Last Saturday I met a Jamaican who was here to tour a nearby college.
5. Marcos and his horse will lead the Tyler Fourth of July Parade.
6. Why don’t we get together to watch the Super Bowl?
7. My friend Mark Nguyen is a third-generation Asian American.
8. Horace and Tamara both have birthdays in February, but mine is in August.
9. In the 1500s, a religious movement called the Reformation led to Protestantism.
10. Mr. Paik is teaching us some interesting facts about the Industrial Revolution.
11. What does the groundhog’s shadow mean on Groundhog Day?
12. Many descendants of the Maya live in Mexico and Guatemala.
13. The lead role in the movie called for an African American of around twenty years of age.
14. The U.S. Civil War is also called the War Between the States.
15. The War of 1812, which lasted from 1812 to 1815, was between the Americans and the British.
16. Everyone is looking forward to the next outdoor jazz concert, called Blues on the Green.
17. The Spring Flight of Fancy is a dance held every spring at my school.
18. Courtney enjoyed meeting the Australian who spoke at her school.
19. “Are you going to watch the Olympics?” asked Lucas.
20. Was the Dark Ages in Europe a time of poverty, lack of knowledge, and cultural decline?

Proper Nouns E, p. 205

Exercise A

1. I have shopped for clothes from the Gap on the store’s Web site.
2. My homeroom teacher has a coffee cup from Dunkin’ Donuts on her desk.
3. Aaron and his friends met at Taco Hut before the basketball game.
4. The steamship *Great Britain*, which sailed in the 1840s, was driven by propellers.
5. Have you seen that television series about the spacecraft *Voyager*?
6. My sister has several Gund stuffed bears.
7. Should we get the Xerox copier or the Ricoh Aficio 200, which also works as a printer?
8. For Tina’s birthday party, her grandmother threw a surprise party at Baskin-Robbins.
9. Charles Lindbergh made the first solo non-stop flight from New York to Paris in the Spirit of St. Louis.
10. Casey was pleased about his job as a teller at Bank of North America.
**EXERCISE B**

[11] Each week my mailbox overflows with circulars advertising barbies and magnavox boomboxes at target, hewlett-packard fax machines at office depot, and cruises on ships such as the *royal princess*. [12] Once, I received a brochure for a railway tour on the *midwestern express*. [13] Another time I received a voucher to fly on the President’s private airplane *air force one*, but that was a joke concocted by my friend Charlie. [14] The Sunday paper is stuffed with ads for macintosh computers and minute maid orange juice. [15] If I bought all the stuff advertised by j. c. penney and the other stores, I would have to fly to outer space on *columbia* to find the space to store it all!

**Proper Nouns F, p. 206**

**EXERCISE**

1. The mayor’s office is located downtown in city hall.
2. The gateway arch in St. Louis, Missouri, rises 630 feet high.
3. We do our holiday shopping at the galleria mall.
4. A distinctive structure in San Francisco is the golden gate bridge.
5. The leaning tower of pisa, a bell tower in Italy, leans ten degrees off center.
6. The frederick douglass national historic site honors the famous African American leader.
7. The colossus of rhodes was one of the Seven Wonders of the World.
8. Jennifer and Matt’s wedding reception will be held at the plaza hotel.
9. On our way home, we passed shepton middle school.
11. We have tickets to a performance at the metropolitan opera house.
12. During our visit to London, we went to see big ben, a famous clock.
13. Clara studied the photograph of mount rushmore national memorial closely.
14. The volleyball game will take place in the harriet johnson gymnasium.
15. My uncle, who is a Vietnam veteran, visited the vietnam veterans memorial yesterday.
16. English monarchs are crowned in westminster abbey.
17. My father’s office is on the tenth floor of georgetown towers.
18. Someone with a sense of humor named the bridge near my house rickety bridge.
19. David will play in a piano recital to be held at the denver civic center.
20. In the seventh-grade talent show, Vivica won an award called the sensational sevens.

**Proper Nouns G, p. 207**

**EXERCISE A**

[1] Many religions, including christianity, mormonism, buddhism, and others, stress the importance of moral integrity in one’s conduct. [2] For example, christians follow the teachings of jesus christ, which are recorded in the holy bible. [3] Guided by the hebrew bible and the torah, jews strive to act with mercy and justice. [4] Students of the buddha (buddhists) as well as hindus are taught dharma, which is right conduct, or duty. [5] Followers of a particular religion join together to celebrate events such as easter, lent, advent, passover, or other holy days that remind them of their religious heritage.
EXERCISE B
6. The planet nearest the sun is mercury.
7. On a cloudless night, I studied pisces, a constellation in the north sky.
8. The brightest star in the constellation Centaurus is Alpha Centauri.
9. That planet with a thin, icy ring system around its equator is saturn.
10. “First, locate the constellation gemini,” said Professor Hermann.
11. “Then, look for the brightest star in Gemini, which is POLLUX,” he said.
12. The Milky way is a galaxy formed of stars and interstellar gas.
13. Looking up at the northern Cross, Kendra began planning an oil painting of the five stars.
14. The largest planet of the solar system carries the same name as the Roman god of thunder: JUPITER.
15. “Is that a bright star, or is that VENUS?” asked Michelle as she gazed upward.

Proper Adjectives and Course Names, p. 208
EXERCISE A
1. My mother bought an african lamp made of teakwood for my aunt.
2. My Japanese friend took Latin American history and enjoyed it.
3. Yesterday, a famous guest came to visit our music 102 class.
4. My British pen pal, Sarah, sent me an Irish friendship ring.
5. I told my mother that the best way for me to practice speaking Spanish is to talk with my Argentinean friend every night.
6. The Spanish explorers sailed up the Florida coast.
7. According to the Korean exchange student, English class is very different in this country.
8. Isak Dinesen was a Danish author who wrote a story about a European girl named Babette.
9. When I go to college, I plan to take biology 101 and swimming I, II, and III.
10. Everyone who is in my English class is also in my math 202 class.

EXERCISE B
11. As an interior decorator, Molly enjoys adding Peruvian rugs to a room’s decor.
12. When Roberto left Science class, he went to his locker to pick up a book for English class.
13. In History class, we saw pictures of Victorian children.
14. We brought back some beautiful Mexican pottery from our vacation in Mexico.
15. Next year I hope to enroll in advanced computer programming IV.

First Words, I, and Proper Nouns and Adjectives A, p. 209
EXERCISE A
1. The Marquis de Lafayette was a French soldier and diplomat.
2. He came to America in 1777 to join the staff of George Washington.
3. He helped the American colonists in their struggle for independence.
4. He persuaded King Louis XVI to send soldiers and ships to help, too.
5. Lafayette fought in many battles of the American Revolution.

EXERCISE B
7. It takes several days to drive from Utah to Pennsylvania.
8. After dinner, my friend Arlis and I swam in the Gulf of Mexico.
9. During my vacation last summer, I took a picture of a statue of Dr. Martin Luther King, Jr., in Montgomery, Alabama.
10. Pola said, “This is such a pretty city. Let’s stop for the night here.”
11. Our book club always meets on the second Wednesday of the month.
12. As I walked through the front door, Dad asked, “Would you rather have vegetable spaghetti or baked fish for dinner?”
13. Hilda said, “Let’s try that new restaurant that serves Mediterranean food.”
14. Ms. Williams said, “Your assignment is to write a poem using the line ‘Some people don’t understand.’”
15. When I attend Savannah College of Art and Design after high school graduation, I’m going to study Roman architecture.

First Words, I, and Proper Nouns and Adjectives B, p. 210

EXERCISE A
1. Wolfgang Amadeus Mozart was born in Salzburg, Austria.
2. By the age of four, Mozart had already shown great musical genius.
3. He toured the European courts, performing on the violin and organ.
4. This Austrian became one of the world’s greatest composers.
5. Mozart wrote many operas, including The Marriage of Figaro and The Magic Flute.

EXERCISE B Only first letters are circled here.
6. Sherry and I took a trip one weekend.
7. On Friday, we arrived in Atlanta, Georgia, where we stopped for lunch at a place called Priscilla’s Pantry.
8. Then, we went to Burlington, North Carolina.
9. Sherry wanted to see the monument to Charles Drew, the famous doctor.
10. I decided that I would learn more about Dr. Drew once we got back home.
11. That night, we stayed in a hotel on the Roanoke River.
12. Then, on Saturday, we drove to Gettysburg, Pennsylvania.
13. I learned that Gettysburg was founded by James Gettys.
14. The Battle of Gettysburg, an important battle in American History, was fought here.
15. After the Battle, Abraham Lincoln delivered the Gettysburg Address.
16. A version of this speech appears on a plaque in the Lincoln Memorial, which is located in Washington, D.C.
17. Because I had memorized this speech in History class, I was able to recite it.
18. As we traveled home on Sunday, we admired the Pennsylvania countryside.
19. When we reached the Ohio River, we knew our trip was almost finished.
20. After we got home, Sherry said, “We should take long trips together more often.”

Personal Titles and Titles Showing Family Relationships, p. 211

EXERCISE A
1. For her birthday, my uncle Derwood gave Aunt Bonnie a pair of earrings.
2. C
3. On Thursday, mayor Wilkins will be visiting our school.
4. Each morning, principal McVicar reads announcements.
5. Vickie listened with interest to a speech made by commissioner Jackson.
6. “Please ask Carlton if he’d like to spend the night here,” said Dad.
7. My mom wrote a note to excuse me from class for my appointment with Dr. Lanier.
8. When you see Mrs. Davenport, please ask her if she has seen my mom.
9. Is that a drawing of President Washington on the one-dollar bill?
10. As Douglas approached the table, he said, “Good afternoon, uncle.”

**Exercise B**
11. Our committee should speak with the principal about the dates for the party.
12. Before his birthday, I asked my brother to give me a list of items he wanted.
13. I asked my neighbor, Mr. Elton, if he would hire me to mow his lawn.
14. Jenny has always enjoyed spending time with Aunt Pattie.
15. The fire marshal and mayor Kniffin worked together on the parade committee.

**Titles and Subtitles, p. 212**

**Exercise A**
1. Because I enjoy reading short articles, I subscribe to Reader’s Digest.
2. Justin used the lyrics of the song “Vincent” for his poetry analysis.
3. In the Tampa Tribune, I read about a statement made by Senator Lee.
4. Morton decided to subscribe to Sports Illustrated.
5. Do you know the words to “The Battle Hymn of the Republic”?
7. Dale bought himself a tape of the musical Cats.
8. C
9. Once I started reading The Giver by Lois Lowry, I couldn’t put it down.


**Titles A, p. 213**

**EXERCISE**

1. Marge admired the painting *Four Seasons*—autumn.

2. C

3. Betsy said, “Andy, will you tell dad that I’m still at Aunt Marge’s house?”

4. Tom Hanks and Tim Allen provided voices for the animated film *Toy Story*.

5. I enjoyed reading Washington Irving’s story “The Legend of Sleepy Hollow.”

6. My favorite song on your list is “Porgy and Bess: Summertime.”

7. After Detective Sergeant Desai spoke to our class, I decided to become a detective.

8. C

9. *The Cherry Orchard* is a play by Anton Chekhov.

10. C


12. C

13. Drew says he learns a lot from reading the magazine *Popular Mechanics*.

14. My favorite part of the *Houston Chronicle* is the comics.

15. Which doctor examined your eyes for contacts, Doctor Mae or Doctor Phillips?

16. When I was learning to play the piano, I practiced “Ode to Joy” every day.

17. This sculpture, *Couple Dancing*, was created by a student in my art class.

18. C

19. I’ll go next door and ask señora Ruiz if she can spare some eggs.

20. On the wall of my room, I hung a copy of the painting *The Starry Night*.

**Titles B, p. 214**

**EXERCISE** *Only first letters circled here.*

1. My brother has read Jack London’s *White Fang* several times.

2. “Tell General Foster that his plane is ready,” said the major.

3. Alfred spent his weekend reading *The Horse and His Boy*, which is a book by C. S. Lewis.

4. Becky said, “When are you taking your lunch break, doctor?”

5. Since I want to design rides for amusement parks, I was pleased to find *Roller Coaster Tycoon* at the software store.

6. Does anybody know the words to our school song, “Oh, Westwood?”

7. My cousin is working on Mayor O’Shey’s reelection campaign.

8. Many famous actors provided voices for the animated movie *A Bug’s Life*.

9. I always read the comics page to follow the adventures of the Gumbo family in *Rose Is Rose*.

10. When Janet entered the store, a clerk asked, “May I help you, Ms. Monsanto?”

11. Are we eating Easter dinner at Grandpa Olson’s house or at Grandpa Hulen’s house?

12. The next chapter in the book is titled “The Track of a Storm.”

13. Lying in the sun, Lisa read the latest issue of *Vogue*.
14. Uncle Enrique gave me a CD by Branford Marsalis, a member of the "new" jazz scene.
15. Does ERA stand for equal rights amendment? 
16. The Fellowship of the Ring is the first book in Tolkien’s trilogy.
17. Looking through his collection of video games, Raul selected a game featuring a chess master.
18. The author of this book, professor Simkins, is a friend of my stepfather.
19. The church that Rosa attends is named after Saint Mark.
20. The most exciting chapter of the book is "Trouble at Sea."


EXERCISE A
1. Sophomores at Lincoln High School take World History II.
2. Mount Whitney is one of the highest mountains in the North American continent.
3. The author of the book A Tale of Two Cities is Charles Dickens.
4. I saw an exhibit of paintings by the Mexican artist José Orozco.
5. Then, Aunt Clara began to sing the song "Silver Threads Among the Gold."
6. The Cineplax Theater is two blocks North of our high school.
7. My grandmother lives on the banks of the Ohio River.
8. There will be a full Moon on my birthday, September 14.
9. Harrison Ford stars in the movie Of The Lost Ark.
10. Your aunt Modene will take you to your appointment with Dr. Block.

EXERCISE B
11. the United States Senate
12. a Puerto Rican engineer for Design, Inc.
13. 145 Spring Avenue, Munster, Indiana
14. Tuesday, the fourteenth of November
15. the book A Day No Pigs Would Die
16. a beautiful river in North Dakota
17. a South American jungle
18. a pizza from the restaurant known as Mama Leone’s
19. C
20. my cousin Hannah

Review B: Using Capital Letters, p. 216

EXERCISE A
1. water from the Salton Sea
2. General Ulysses S. Grant
3. a Hispanic doctor, Alex Rodriguez
4. a quarterback for the Chicago Bears football team
5. 897 Cricket Avenue, Fort Worth, Texas
6. a picnic at the beach on Long Island
7. the book The Collected Poems of W. B. Yeats
8. The Tale of Two Cities
9. a legend about a monster in Lake Superior
10. my grandmother, Minnie Robinson

EXERCISE B
11. My cousin Sheila asked, "What time does the play begin?"
12. I glanced at my watch and told her the time.
13. She and I were planning to go to the Lillian Beaumont Theater.
14. I had seen the play King Lear there last November.
15. This time, Sheila had tickets to see the musical play Evita.
16. It’s the story of Eva Peron, a legendary figure in the history of Argentina.
17. I had become interested in Eva Peron after studying her in History class.

18. Sheila and I had both read a biography of Peron, Evita: An Intimate Portrait Of Eva Peron.

19. After seeing Evita, I realized that she had led a fascinating Life.

20. I decided to ask Mr. Mitchell if we could practice singing songs from the show in music class.

Review C: Using Capital Letters, p. 217

EXERCISE
1. Juniors at Elkton High School must take world history.

2. The Larkspur Hotel is just north of an exit on the turnpike.

3. The poet T. S. Eliot wrote the poem “The Love Song of J. Alfred Prufrock.”

4. The planets Saturn and Jupiter are much larger than Earth.

5. My uncle Patrick works as a dentist in Missouri.

6. On Tuesday, Brazilians will vote for a new president.

7. Drive west on Third Avenue until you come to the Burger Barn.

8. We saw a program about the planet Mercury last Sunday night.

9. Celine Dion sang “O Canada.”

10. Robin Williams played a modern Peter Pan in the movie Hook.

11. The birthday of Queen Elizabeth II is celebrated with a Parade in the United Kingdom.

12. The window of Blum’s bakery was full of Italian bread and French pastries.

13. Tennessee Williams, a playwright from the South, wrote The Night Of The Iguana.


15. Babe Ruth was a great baseball player for the New York Yankees.

16. Native American Indians joined the Pilgrims at the first Thanksgiving feast.

17. At certain points in its orbit, Pluto is the farthest planet from the Sun.

18. The British composer Andrew Lloyd-Webber wrote the musical play The Phantom Of The Opera.

19. Did you read Ellen Goodman’s column in the Sunday Boston Globe?

20. The Butler Insurance Company has its Headquarters in Akron.
Chapter 14: Punctuation, pp. 218–237

End Marks, p. 218

EXERCISE A
1. The library opens at 10:00 A.M. tomorrow.
2. Did Randall finish the Stephen King mystery?
3. Many movies are based on King’s books.
4. What scary movies they are!
5. I missed seeing the latest one when it was in theaters.
6. Garth and Towanna saw it three times.
7. How I wish I could have seen it!
8. Have you read any mysteries by Sara Paretsky?
9. Chicago is the setting for many of her stories.
10. You should read one of these exciting mysteries.

EXERCISE B
You have probably seen or heard about Oprah Winfrey’s television show and book club. Do you know how she earned this recognition and success? As a child, Oprah struggled with problems of poverty, obesity, and abuse. What a tragic childhood this was! At age thirteen, however, she began living with her father, a devoted parent. Have you heard of Tennessee State University? This is the college that Oprah attended while working as a news anchor. What an interesting after-school job that must have been! She began hosting a talk show in 1984. The rest, as they say, is history.

Abbreviations, p. 219

EXERCISE A
1. Al Unser, Jr., won the Indianapolis 500 in 1994.
2. Ms. Dexter is here to see you.
3. Winnie-the-Pooh was written by A. A. Milne.
4. Alvin said, “Come watch this television special on the CIA!”
5. The letterhead says “Alma Rd.” not “Elma Dr.”
6. “Shoes, Inc.” is the name of the new store.
7. Please address the letter to 338 Norton Ln., in Boston.
8. I think the schedule says “Tues.,” not “Thurs.,” Alan.
9. The shopping list says “one lb of apples.”
10. I want to work at Johnson Computer Corp., which offers weekend jobs to teenagers.

EXERCISE B
ANNOUNCEMENT: The PTA of Green Valley Junior High will meet in the Dr. Fitzhugh Auditorium at 7:00 on Thursday night. The address of the auditorium is 379 Fourth Ave., Lexington, KY. Refreshments will be provided by Ms. Kingston, Mr. Purdell, and Mrs. Garza. Helen McKinney will be collecting donations for the seventh-grade play. Below is a list of items the seventh-graders still need.

- 8 yards of light blue taffeta
- 10 inches of silver metallic cord
- Red velvet around 3 ft by 2 ft in size
- Black paint

End Marks and Abbreviations, p. 220

EXERCISE A
1. Please set the clock on the VCR for me.
2. The listing says “6:30 on ch. 5,” but I’ll be at the gym then.
3. We will record the film and watch it later.
4. It is about Dr. Martin Luther King, Jr.
5. Send your request to the following address: 1010 Butler St., Orlando, FL 32887.
6. What fascinating classes hers must be!
7. Sara read one of her poems at Mr. Bannerjee’s retirement party.
8. Have you read I Know Why the Caged Bird Sings?
9. Oh no—watch out!
10. Pick up those clothes, Rita.
EXERCISE B
What a crazy day this has been! The Cedar Ave. bus left early. Wasn’t I lucky that Dr. and Mr. Moreno came by and drove me to school? We got to school by 8:00, but it was closed because of a heating problem. The principal, Martin Crowe, Sr., stood out front and sent everyone home. I hope this means that I can give my UNICEF presentation next Friday.

Commas A, p. 221
EXERCISE A
Optional commas are underscored.
1. Cars, trucks, and buses were stranded by the storm.
2. Mrs. Ortega won more votes than Mr. Harris, Miss Steinberg, or Dr. Gladstone.
3. Scallops, oysters, herring, and shrimp are displayed in the fish-market window.
4. One tall, weary man wearing a hat dropped a silver coin into the kettle hanging by the door.
5. The chairperson’s responsibilities included calling the meeting to order, asking for the minutes, and announcing new officers.
6. Howie’s dogs are friendly, obedient, and loyal to him and his family.
7. The zoo director had to feed the animals, guide visitors, and keep the grounds safe and clean.
8. A sleek, powerful submarine slipped into the sea.
9. Many white, purple, and yellow crocuses grew on the hill.
10. Todd’s uncle asked who Rory was, when she had arrived, and why she was asleep on the porch.

EXERCISE B
Optional commas are underscored.
Have you heard about the new shopping mall? It is a big, exciting place! It has department stores with clothing, furniture, and sporting goods. It even has specialty shops, such as those that sell only music boxes, rare comic books, organic health food, shoes, or baseball caps. It has a noisy, crowded food court that is filled with the smell of warm French bread. This weekend my father, sister, and I are going to find running shoes, a music box with a ballerina, and crunchy trail mix. Why don’t you come with us?

Commas B, p. 222
EXERCISE A
1. Our family planned a driving trip, so we needed maps.
2. Mom looked carefully but couldn’t find Elgin.
3. She put on glasses, for the print was tiny.
4. The scenery was great, yet my sister was restless.
5. Is that normal, or is something wrong with the car’s engine?
6. Carla noticed I forgot my pencil, so she lent me one of hers.
7. My cousin Cary writes music and plays in a band.
8. He invited us to listen, but we had no time.
9. Who woke us up, and why must we leave early?
10. Yoko is not a good traveler, nor am I.
EXERCISE B  Conjunctions may vary.
11. I brought a new camera, but it broke.
12. It rained on Sunday, and we were disappointed.
13. The mountains were snowy, yet the weather didn’t seem very cold.
14. I can borrow skis, or maybe I can rent some.
15. Mariana spotted a fire tower, and Dad saw a deer.

**Commas C, p. 223**

**Exercise A**
1. The Johnston City pool, built ten years ago, is a great place to swim.
2. City residents, who are allowed to swim free, use the pool all summer.
3. Our annual swim meet, which was postponed, will be next month.
4. Did you see Sheri, my neighbor, do a triple flip?
5. Mr. Epstein, who is a retired firefighter, teaches the beginning swimmers.

**Exercise B**
6. The park equipped with a pool is the one we choose.
7. The pool water, sparkling in the sunshine, invites me to jump in.
8. Only students who have paid their fees can attend.
9. How would you, an experienced instructor, educate swimmers about safety?
10. Should we ask Mrs. Sims, who walks every day, to join us?
11. The lifeguard wearing blue shorts is the strictest one.
12. He stresses good behavior, which is important for everyone’s safety.
13. A child who is frightened can usually be calmed.
14. The third diving board, which is the highest, is reserved for experienced divers.
15. Nina Parks, the Sentryville Middle School swimming champion, is swimming laps.

**Commas D, p. 224**

**Exercise A**
1. The time of our club meeting, by the way, has been changed.
2. Juan, the glove on the other hand of the mannequin does not match this one.
3. The landscape architect said, “These pansies, for example, would look wonderful there.”
4. I didn’t know, Lorena, that you could sing so beautifully!
5. I suppose that you, Rudolfo, will fill in for Perrin while she is on vacation.
6. On the other hand, that old barn looks quite picturesque.
7. Marina, may I borrow a pencil?
8. You must, of course, be home by curfew.
9. In fact, these are the cathedral’s original stained-glass windows.
10. I’m not sure, Kelly, whether I want to go to the game.

**Exercise B**
Habitat for Humanity first caught my attention, I suppose, with its Web site. Victor, do you know how to search for information on the Internet? To tell the truth, searching on the Internet is quite simple. I will, however, e-mail you the URL you need. On this Web site, Victor, you will find lots of information. Habitat for Humanity, for example, welcomes volunteers to help build houses. You see, the main purpose of the organization is to supply affordable housing to people who need it. The future homeowners, of course, help to build their houses. I thought that you, Victor, would be especially interested in this organization. Your goal of becoming an architect, I think, would be compatible with working for Habitat for Humanity.

**Commas E, p. 225**

**Exercise A**
1. Under the picnic table beside the tent, Frisky slept peacefully.
2. Hiding behind the bush during a game of hide-and-seek, she scared me.
3. Well, look who’s here!
4. Beyond that mountain with a snowy peak, there’s a small cabin.
5. No, it burned down last summer.
6. Although the air was muggy, we turned off the air conditioner.
7. Oh, look at all those birds!
8. Since their leaves stay green all year, those trees are called evergreens.
9. After we ate, we explored the woods surrounding the campground.
10. Why, I wish all views were as beautiful as this!

**EXERCISE B**

In the final month of the twentieth century, *Time* magazine named Albert Einstein the Person of the Century. After I read the article by Frederic Golden, I agreed with the choice. Yes, Einstein won the distinction, but Franklin Roosevelt and Mohandas Gandhi were close runners-up. Although Einstein was a brilliant scientist, everyday people recognize his name and photo. As a matter of fact, you may even own a poster of Einstein. With his amazing intellect and his flyaway hair, Einstein is a beloved figure in American culture. Indeed, his ideas influenced more than just science. As Frederic Golden pointed out, Einstein’s ideas have influenced the arts as well. In fact, artists and poets have studied Einstein, and filmmakers have portrayed his life and ideas. Although he died in 1955, Einstein seems very much alive today.

**EXERCISE A**

Optional commas are underscored.

1. Tiger Woods’s parents, Earl and Kultida, had Tiger playing golf at age two.
2. When Tiger was fifteen, he won the U.S. Junior Amateur championship.
3. The dedicated, gifted Tiger went on to win the 1992 and 1993 championships as well.
4. In each of the following three years, he won the U.S. Amateur championship.
5. Tiger enrolled in Stanford University in 1994, but he did not give up golf.

7. He golfed in numerous events that year, if I’m not mistaken.

8. He won two titles, earned almost $800,000 in prize money, and was named outstanding rookie.

9. Tiger is well known for his golf swing, which is graceful and accurate.

10. Tiger, in 1997, won the Masters Tournament, a highly prestigious event.

**EXERCISE B**

*Optional commas are underscored.*

The grand, old mansion fascinated neighborhood teenagers. Situated at the top of a hill, it looked very stately. An iron fence, which was covered with vines, encircled the property. The teenagers discovered that they could part the vines, peek through the fence, and see a garden maze in the yard. One of the children, Leon, wanted to climb the fence. When he put his foot on the fence, the other children shook their heads. Looking disappointed, Leon said that he guessed the maze should remain a mystery.

**Commas H, p. 228**

**EXERCISE A**

1. The public library in New Falls, South Dakota, received an anonymous donation.

2. You’ll find the bakery at 719 Pixel Avenue, Louisville.

3. Mary signed the letter, “Yours truly, Mary Roberts.”

4. Spring Break will begin March 1, 2009.

5. Cory wrote, “Dear Mrs. Reszke, I am writing to volunteer for math tutoring.”

6. I have a pen pal who lives in North Platte, Nebraska.

7. What was your mom doing on December 31, 1999, when the clock struck midnight?

8. My mom’s address is P.O. Box 338, Bangor, Maine.

9. The movie theater at 462 Locust in Avery, Montana, is closing down.

10. Charlene’s uncle will graduate from law school on May 17, 2009.

**EXERCISE**

December 30, 2009

Dear Margo,

I’m catching up on my letters. No, I didn’t forget your camp form. The camp’s office moved from 1234 Howard Street, Springfield, Missouri. Now they’re at 16 Rogers Road, Deerfield, Missouri. Camp starts on June 15, 2010, but our forms need to be mailed by March 15, 2010. Good news—they need counselors! I hope we both get jobs. Oh—use my new address when you write me back: P.O. Box 977, Fayetteville, Arkansas.

Your pal,

Nichola

**Commas I, p. 229**

**EXERCISE**

*Optional commas are underscored.*

1. I often rent a movie, pop some popcorn, and invite a friend over.

2. When I rent a movie, I rent a copy on videotape.

3. If I had a DVD player, I could rent the movie on DVD.

4. The abbreviation DVD stands for either “digital video disc” or “digital versatile disc.”

5. The DVD, which is a newer technology than the videotape, was introduced in 1996.

6. Consumers were curious about DVDs, but they did not have access to them until 1997.
7. DVD players were widely available by December 1, 1999.

8. You may remember, Anthony, how many holiday season advertisements featured DVD players that year.

9. I wonder how many kids wrote letters saying, “Dear Grandma, Please give me a DVD player.”

10. The DVD, a flat, shiny disc, looks much like a music CD or a computer CD-ROM.

11. A CD-ROM stores 650 million bytes of data, but the DVD can store over 4 billion bytes.

12. Well, imagine the difference in quality between a movie on videotape and one on DVD.

13. The DVD, as you know, has a much higher capacity for data storage.

14. It has higher quality video, it has better sound, and it can contain multiple movies.

15. Yes, that’s right.

16. With the technology of the DVD, a filmmaker can provide several versions of a movie on one DVD.

17. Different endings, different languages, and other variations can be offered.

18. The DVD player, which is still rather costly for my budget, is now a familiar sight in stores.

19. For now, on movie night I will continue using my trusty VCR.

20. Maybe I’ll ask Grandma for a DVD player next year and sign the letter, “Your DVD-deficient grandson, Chad.”
16. Across a field and down a hill, the horse galloped at full speed.

17. The letter was signed mysteriously, “Yours forever, Your Secret Admirer.”

18. For information, write to the manufacturer at 2407 Smyth Ave, Bismarck, ND.

19. These floors, by the way, are made of Italian marble.

20. Sure, go ahead and have the last muffin.

Semicolons A, p. 231

EXERCISE A

1. Hector’s mother is a painter; she told him about Grandma Moses.

2. Anna Mary Robertson Moses began painting in the 1930s; she was in her late seventies.

3. You won’t see her full name on her paintings; instead, you’ll see the name Grandma Moses.

4. Some people like folk art; others like abstract art.

5. Simone, Rita, and Hector are taking Art I; Anita is taking Art II.

EXERCISE B

6. First, I delivered papers, then I practiced soccer.

7. Dan, I know you are tired, but the laundry is waiting.

8. Phillip, Homer, and Carla wrote poetry; Luis wrote a play.

9. The steady rain continued, yet nobody cared.

10. Helen, please sing the soprano part; Jean will sing the alto part.

11. Some of us marched others, like John, rode on a float.

12. Ethel saw the danger she shouted a loud, clear warning.

13. I like checkers, charades, and dominoes; and he likes chess.

14. Nicknames are fun some, however, can embarrass you.

15. Lila forgot her umbrella; Janet, of course, had hers.

Semicolons B, p. 232

EXERCISE A

1. I declined Larry’s offer of a ride home; I wanted to walk.

2. Please wash the car’s windshield; I will fill the tank with gasoline.


4. Save those newspapers; we will need them when we pack the dishes.

5. I saw Ms. Norris and Ms. Carson, the chaperones; but, as I said, I did not see the principal.

EXERCISE B

6. There are international airports in Miami, Florida; Chicago, Illinois; and Florida, Chicago, Illinois, and New York City.

7. Tina always does homework at the kitchen table; however, her mom is setting the table for dinner.

8. I cheered when I crossed the finish line; it was my first victory.

9. At the market Flora selected blackberries; of course, her favorite fruit, and blackberries, which Todd had requested.

10. Please walk the dog; he hasn’t been out in several hours.
11. The team leaders are Janet, Terrence, and Phil; Roy will fill in if one of them is absent.

12. Fallen leaves cover the front yard; I should rake them soon.

13. Georgia enjoys reading; her sister is more interested in writing.

14. We need lots of ice for the party; let’s go to the corner market to get some.

15. I sent Valentine cards to three people: Monica, my stepmom; Bertie, my pen pal; and Kat, a close friend.

**Review A: End Marks and Abbreviations, p. 234**

**EXERCISE A**

1. Are you familiar with Gary Larson’s work?
2. What a talented cartoonist he is!
3. Have you seen *The Far Side*?
4. The characters are sometimes animals who act like people.
5. How did he become a cartoonist?
6. When he was a child, Larson liked to draw dinosaurs and gorillas.
7. In college, he wanted to save the world from boring advertising.
8. How funny that is!
9. Be sure to read his cartoon collections.
10. You’ll like the dogs who wear glasses.

**EXERCISE B**

11. Please tell Mrs. Neziri that we accept her party invitation.
12. Oh no, stop that!
13. Isn’t this movie based on a book by E. M. Forster?
14. The school’s PTA will host a concert in June.
15. Dr. Nelson said that the Petrified Forest in Arizona covers over 93,000 acres.
16. We need help over here, Dr. Taylor! [or . . . Taylor,]
17. Does Facts by Fax, Inc. close at 5:00 on weekdays?
18. Ella’s older sister goes to a college in Morgantown.
19. What year did E. Annie Proulx win a Pulitzer Prize for *The Shipping News*?
20. Spot, let go of Ms. Sherling’s glove now!

**Review B: Commas, p. 235**

**EXERCISE A**

Optional commas are underscored.

1. Albert, what makes a sneaker comfortable?
2. I think support, comfort, and cushioning are three important things.
3. Our track team buys only one brand, but it’s not easy to get all sizes.

4. My brother always wants the latest, greatest style of shoe.

5. He plays basketball, he plays tennis, and he runs track.

6. In fact, he has several pairs of sneakers for these sports.

7. Since I jog almost every day, I am most concerned with the shoe’s comfort.

8. I do, however, shop for a style and color that I like.

9. Dark blue, my favorite color, is always my first choice.

10. This sale on athletic shoes ends August 31, 2009.

Exercise B

11. Covered with a layer of fluffy snow, the sidewalk was completely hidden.

12. I don’t really like asparagus, but I ate it to be polite.

13. Dad, relaxed beside the fireplace, was reading a Thomas Hardy novel.

14. Over the weekend we shopped, we talked, and we ate dinner.

15. Those dusty, grimy windows should be washed thoroughly.

16. The equation that I found most challenging was the fifth one.

17. Ms. Hoffmann, the art teacher, always dresses colorfully and with style.

18. The salad, on the other hand, would be more healthy than the fried shrimp.

19. Under the weeping willow beside the lake, we spread our blanket for the picnic.

20. Because he loves adventure, Ronny rode the tallest roller coaster at the park first.

Review C: Semicolons and Colons, p. 236

Exercise A

1. Here is London’s famous wax museum, Madame Tussaud’s; it dates back to 1835.

2. This is a weird but interesting place; I’m sure we’ll enjoy our tour.

3. The Grand Hall features the following: popes, politicians, and villains from history.

4. I want a picture of Ari, Ben, and myself; but I didn’t bring a camera.

5. This letter from the Friends of the Museum begins, “Dear Wax Enthusiasts: Welcome.”

6. I asked one of the guards a question; then I realized he was made of wax!

7. Some of us know that’s true; others can hardly believe it.

8. A queen donated a gown; a king gave his cape.

9. Wax models are made using these materials: fiberglass, real hair, acrylic, and other materials.

10. Sandy says that she’s been to wax museums in New York, New York; Las Vegas, Nevada; and Salem, Massachusetts.

Exercise B

March 1, 2009

Dear Professor Rumbaugh:

I will be in Finland on the following dates: March 10 through March 17. I know that Spring Break does not begin until March 12; that’s why I’m writing you this letter. I will miss your lecture, “Farming Communities: Life on the Land,” on March 11; but I am really interested in the topic. Could I stop by your office around 10:30 A.M. on Thursday to discuss the topic?

Clementine
You see, I’m going to work on a farm in Finland; I plan to write my term paper, “Small-Scale Farming: America’s Future,” about the things I learn there. Before I go, I’d like to ask you some questions; I think you’ll have some good advice. For instance, I think I’ll need to take the following items: work clothes, a wide-brimmed hat, and boots. I’m not sure about the other supplies.

Thank you very much.

Sincerely,

Karen Kent

Review D: End Marks, Commas, Semicolons, and Colons, p. 237

EXERCISE A
Optional commas are underscored.

1. Do you enjoy looking at the stars?
2. What a wonderful sight that will be!
3. Kurt, have you seen the Big Dipper?
4. The Big Dipper, a group of seven stars, is in Great Bear.
5. Isn’t that a constellation?
6. Did your parents see Halley’s comet in 1986?
7. It was named for Edmond Halley, an astronomer who died in 1742.
8. Does Halley rhyme with daily, valley, or crawly?
9. Halley’s comet won’t be back until 2062, I believe.
10. After I finish my research, I plan to write an essay about Halley’s comet.

EXERCISE B
Optional commas are underscored.

11. Are you ready for some summer fun?
12. What has the following things in common: water, music, friends, and food?
13. You guessed it!
15. Come to my house at 2:00; call if you need a ride.
17. Bring the following items: bathing suit, sandals, towel, and sunscreen lotion.
18. If possible, bring some CDs; then we can dance.
19. My older brother and sister, who are both college students, will chaperone the party.
20. Oh, you don’t have to bring anything; [or:] drinks and food will be provided.
**Chapter 15: Punctuation (Underlining [Italics], Quotation Marks, Apostrophes, Hyphens, Parentheses, Brackets, and Dashes), pp. 238–257**

**Underlining (Italics) A, p. 238**

**EXERCISE A**

2. Norman Rockwell created covers for *The Saturday Evening Post*.
3. Does your library have a copy of *Raiders of the Lost Ark*?
4. My brother subscribes to *Ebony*.
5. One of Puccini’s operas is *Madama Butterfly*.
6. *National Geographic* had an interesting article about butterflies.
7. The famous statue by Auguste Rodin is called *The Thinker*.
8. During dinner, we listened to a long work by George Gershwin called *Rhapsody in Blue*.
9. Did you think the film *Little Women* accurately represented the book?
10. Roberta admired the photograph of the famous statue *Venus de Milo*.

**EXERCISE B**


**Underlining (Italics) B, p. 239**

**EXERCISE A**

1. Shalom can mean “welcome” as well as “farewell.”
2. Have you seen photographs of *Sputnik 1*?
3. The speech therapist is helping Sheila learn to pronounce *s’s* without lisping.
4. Your passage has been booked on the *Ocean Princess*.
5. Stacey’s first word was *Mama*.
6. I’ve always found it difficult to write the capital letter *Q* in cursive.
7. Marty is writing a mystery that takes place on a train called *American Majesty*.
8. Boris draws a line through the stem of his *7’s*.
9. At age 77, John Glenn served as part of the crew of the space shuttle *Discovery*.
10. On weekends, I am helping to rebuild an old boat, the *Fly by Night*.

**EXERCISE B**

11. “How many *s’s* are in the word *Mississippi*?” Jean asked her sister. [12] Jean was writing a letter to her aunt to ask her about a ship named *Aurelia*. [13] In July, Jean and Aunt Rita will take a riverboat cruise on the *Spirit of Mississippi*. [14] They are also considering an ocean cruise on the *Atlantis*. [15] They decided to save a train tour on the *Sleek Mystique* for future vacations.

**Underlining (Italics) C, p. 240**

**EXERCISE**

1. I’m going to spend the afternoon reading *The Last of the Really Great Whangdoodles*.
2. Gilligan and the Skipper are the crew of the SS Minnow.

3. At the art supply store, Megan bought stencils for the letters a, e, g, m, and n.

4. I bought four tickets to the musical Grease.

5. Tanya glanced at the headlines of USA Today.


7. Does your apartment number end in one 6 or two 6’s?

8. Sonya and her mother always watch Providence together.

9. Liberation, an artwork by M. C. Escher, shows triangles transforming into flying birds.

10. Terrence read about a space mission of the Endeavour.

11. The seventh-grade class will tour the Blue Rose, a yacht in the nearby harbor.

12. Squinting at the faded sign, Karla could make out only an H and a P.

13. We’ll get there faster if we buy railway tickets on the Midwest Express.

14. Martha named her small plane Amelia in honor of Amelia Earhart.

15. Have you ever seen The Phantom of the Opera?

16. Is this the letter l or the number 1 in your e-mail address?

17. May I read your copy of The Importance of Being Earnest?

18. Gustavo enjoys reading about current films and books in Entertainment Weekly.

19. I usually comes before e except in words such as neighbor and weigh.

20. Taylor studied Georgia O’Keeffe’s painting called Ram’s Skull With Brown Leaves.

**Punctuating Direct and Broken Quotations, p. 241**

**EXERCISE**

1. The captain announced that dancing begins at midnight.

2. "How can we dance if the sea gets rough?" Mrs. Colby asked.

3. "My dear," her husband replied, "we’ll just move with the waves."

4. "What is that ahead?" asked Clive.

5. A steward said that it looked like an iceberg.

6. The captain asked, "What’s causing the commotion?"

7. A short while later, a telegraph operator said, "I heard a distress signal."

8. Someone asked where the signal originated.

9. "I’m trying to figure that out," he answered, "but I’m not sure."

10. "It might be coming from the Titanic," another operator said.

**Quotation Marks and Paragraph Breaks, p. 242**

**EXERCISE**

As he wrote on the chalkboard, Mr. Kaplan asked, “Does anyone know what causes the holes in Swiss cheese?” “I know the answer!” exclaimed Stanislav. “It’s the gas bubbles.”

“How did you know that?” asked Mr. Kaplan.

Alicia wanted to know. “When the cheese gets hard, the bubbles remain as the holes we see in Swiss cheese,” added Stanislav. “I never knew that,” said Jeanne. “I wish I hadn’t learned it,” whispered Alicia, “because that process doesn’t sound very appetizing to me.” “What do you mean? I think it’s interesting,” Jeanne told her, “and it doesn’t change the fact that Swiss cheese tastes good.” “I agree,” Stanislav said.

Nodding his head, Mr Kaplan looked at Stanislav and told him, “Thanks for sharing your story with the class.”

**Quotation Marks in Dialogue, p. 243**

**EXERCISE**

Looking slowly around the room, Whitney stopped and said, “Listen! Did you hear a noise?” “No, I didn’t hear anything. Do you think you might be imagining things?” Ramona answered quietly. “I’m worried,” Christopher whispered. “I heard a strange noise, too.” “Maybe someone is standing on the back porch!” exclaimed Whitney. “Let me check the back door,” said Christopher in an unsure tone. “I’ll go with you,” volunteered Whitney. Shaking her head, Ramona said, “Oh, you two. Nobody’s standing outside on the porch. Let’s just stay where we are.” Christopher teased, “Are you afraid to stay in here by yourself?” “No, silly!” she answered. “You’re the one who said ‘I’m worried.’” “You know,” Whitney replied, “our cat does walk around on the porch in the evenings. Now that I think about it, he sometimes makes sounds exactly like the one we just heard.”

**Quotation Marks with Titles, p. 244**

**EXERCISE**

1. The band plays “Hail to the Chief” for the president.

2. Jack London’s “To Build a Fire” is the first story in this book.

3. “Man on the Moon” is Nova’s program tonight.

4. “What’s New in Videos” is a daily column in our newspaper.

5. Nikki Giovanni’s poem “Train Rides” is about the power of love.


7. Uncle Rick likes to watch *Scientific American Frontiers*; his favorite episode is “Journey to Mars.”

8. In 1999, Santana’s song “Smooth” was the longest running number-one single.


10. I enjoyed Mark Twain’s short story called “The Notorious Jumping Frog of Calaveras County.”

11. The test had a section on “The Aftermath of the Civil War,” the chapter we studied last week.

12. My mom always reads “Dear Abby” aloud at the breakfast table.

13. The school newspaper is printing “Crystal Stream,” my haiku.

14. Did you see the episode of *Frontline* called “High Stakes in Cyberspace”?

15. This article, “Speed-Reading Made Easy,” is interesting.


17. “Love-Charm Song” is one of the songs in *Chippewa Music*.

18. I’m writing about Denise Chávez’s story “The Last of the Menu Girls.”

19. Rodney worked all afternoon writing a song he titled “Sunday Serenade.”

20. This article, “No Lockers: No Tardies,” recommends that schools remove student lockers.
Quotation Marks Review, p. 245

**EXERCISE A**

1. Carlton asked his aunt, “What’s your secret recipe for oatmeal bread?”
2. “Try reading your essay aloud, Dennis,” said the teacher.
3. I enjoy reading “Places To Go, Things To Do” in the Sunday newspaper.
4. “Ouch!” Thea exclaimed as she pulled a splinter from her finger. [or “Ouch,” Thea exclaimed . . . ]
5. Melanie said, “Last night my dad told me, ‘Laughter is the best medicine.’”
6. Today’s episode of *Nature* is called “Yellowstone Otters.”
7. “I’ve decided to re-landscape the front yard,” said Mom, “but I’ll need help.”
8. Did you hear Trina, who is on the trampoline, shouting, “Look at me”? [or “Look at me!”]?
9. Ron said, “What’s that? Did someone say we need to bring a side dish to the picnic? I’ll make fruit salad.”

**EXERCISE B**

11. “Do you know that tigers are an endangered species?” asked Ramon, sitting at the library computer. “Here’s an amazing Web site about photographing tigers.”
12. “Tigers are beautiful animals,” Amber replied.
13. “Show me the site!” “Michael Nichols photographed tigers up close so people will pay more attention to the problem,” Ramon told her. “His photos are on the *National Geographic* site.”
14. “Did you say Geographic World?” [or “Did you say ‘Geographic World’?”]

Apostrophes A, p. 246

**EXERCISE A**

1. three doctors’ opinions
2. Mrs. King’s business
3. Chris’s bicycle
4. the mice’s favorite hiding place
5. in ten years’ time
6. the women’s locker room
7. the team’s beloved mascot
8. New Orleans’s jazz scene
9. two sisters’ secret
10. the Wilsons’ house

**EXERCISE B**

11. The Mount Vernon Chorus sang Jason’s favorite songs.
12. One student’s brother had a minor accident in that big blue car.
13. The Garchia’s new neighbor is Sandra Johnson.
14. The banjo with broken strings is Jennifer’s.
15. Carlotta’s voice was hoarse from cheering for the volleyball team.
16. The raindrops’ patter could be heard on the tin roof.
17. We brought a day’s supply of granola bars, water, and sandwiches.
18. The photographer won an award for that picture of the wolves’ den.
19. Do you know Carlos’s e-mail address?
20. This weekend’s homework is written on the chalkboard.
Apostrophes B, p. 247

EXERCISE A

1. anyone guess
2. everybody friend
3. her money
4. your skates
5. neither basketball
6. someone science book
7. anybody opportunity
8. The car is theirs.
9. no one first choice
10. Those books are yours.

EXERCISE B

[11] Everybody unwanted items can bring in a few coins at a garage sale. [12] When my family organized our garage sale, everybody attention was devoted to the project. [13] One night, someone dreams even focused on our garage sale! [14] We spent several days writing down anyone ideas. [15] We finally decided to make a list of everyone items for sale.

[16] Soon, a friendly disagreement occurred when two different people thought the iron was theirs. [17] Dad claimed it was his, but Tanya was sure it was hers. [18] In the end, of course, no one possessions made him or her rich.

[19] We set out everybody items together during the garage sale and then equally divided the profit. [20] We were all quite happy with our success.

Apostrophes C, p. 248

EXERCISE

1. Jacob Grimm was Wilhelm older brother.
2. Only thirteen months time separated their births in 1785 and 1786.

3. The brothers enjoyed storytellers tales.
4. At that time, storytellers held audiences attention by telling stories aloud.
5. The brothers goal was to write down these stories.
6. They carefully recorded the folk tales content.
7. The Grimms notes for their work have been studied by other storytellers.
8. Each written story words were very close to the original, spoken version.
9. Have you read the story of Rapunzel long hair?
10. Do you know about Snow White friends, the seven dwarfs?
11. One of my sister[s] favorites is the story of Hansel and Gretel.
12. She particularly enjoys hearing about the old woman cottage.
13. The cottages walls were made of gingerbread.
14. Many people favorite story is the tale of Cinderella.
15. Other stories appeal lies in their funny and fantastic scenes.
16. For example, consider Rumpelstiltskin promise to turn straw into gold.
17. Tom Thumb tiny size makes him another interesting character.
18. Some readers favorite stories are those that resemble their own lives.
19. A reader favorite story may present life as he or she wishes it were.
20. These fairy tales are certainly a beloved part of children literature.
Apostrophes D, p. 249

EXERCISE A
1. where's 6. couldn't
2. we're 7. you'll
3. they'll 8. doesn't
4. hasn't 9. might've
5. she's 10. they're

EXERCISE B
11. There's a hobby you may find interesting.
12. It's called in-line skating.
13. Why haven't I heard about it?
14. Here is a magazine article from October '99.
15. You'll have to finish reading it this afternoon.
16. I promised to meet Jessie tomorrow morning at eight o'clock and lend it to her.
17. Let's all go in-line skating this weekend!
18. I know we don't have skates yet.
19. Ben and Phoebe said they're not using theirs and will lend them to us.
20. I think we'll find in-line skating difficult but fun.

Apostrophes E, p. 250

EXERCISE A
1. Count the yes's and the no's.
2. How many n's and e's are in the word Tennessee?
3. My telephone number has two 5's and two 7's.
4. Sakura's look like 9's or 5's, but 7's.
5. There are too many or's and but's in that paragraph.
6. Be sure to write clearly, so people can tell your m's and n's apart.
7. The j in the word parallel are parallel to each other.
8. Don't forget to use double s and v in the word Mississippi.
9. All the 4's, 5's, and 6's are blurred.
10. The why's and wherefore's will be covered later.

EXERCISE B
Dear Juan,

[11] I'm writing to tell you why 7's are lucky!
[12] One of the nearby theaters had a contest.
[13] How many bean's were in the jar? [14] It's hard to tell by looking, but I decided to try—no if's, and's, or but's about it. [15] My guess was 7,777, which is a lot of 7's. [16] Of all the guesses I submitted, mine won! [17] The prize was, as you might guess, seven movie ticket's. [18] Are you free to go to the movies with me? [19] Get ready for more 7's: The first movie is on July 7 at 7:00 P.M. [20] Maybe next time 9's will be lucky, and I'll win nine ticket's!

Your friend,
Emily

Apostrophes F, p. 251

EXERCISE A
1. One person doesn't choose a hurricane's name.
2. They're chosen by scientists from all over the world.
3. Who's idea was it to give hurricanes people's names?
4. Probably it's an international group's idea.
5. There's a list of names for each coast.
6. A's and B's begin the names of the first hurricanes of each season.
7. Hurricane Andrew was scientists' choice of name for a hurricane in 1992.
8. I don't think I'd want that hurricane to have the same name as I have.
9. Andrew's costly destruction caused many people to see 5's in their heads!
10. The damage caused by Andrew cost around fifteen billion dollars—there are a lot of o’s in that number!

**Exercise B**

11. The shells of these pecans are hard to crack.

12. They’ll be pleased that you accepted their invitation.

13. I don’t usually care for soup, but Theresa’s chicken soup is irresistible!

14. If you don’t use an apostrophe when referring to several a’s, the word looks like as.

15. In her class notes, Norma writes &’s instead of and’s.

**Hyphens, p. 252**

**Exercise A**

Some answers may vary, depending on the dictionary consulted for any given answer.

1. DND
2. rail—road
3. DND
4. sta—tion
5. DND
6. dis—count
7. jump—ing
8. DND
9. over—night
10. tick—et or DND

**Exercise B**

11. sugar-free gelatin
12. a three-fourths success rate
13. thirty-nine years
14. ex-favorite dessert
15. great-grandfather clock
16. fifty-two points
17. governor-elect of Montana
18. self-motivated student

19. all-female soccer team
20. one-third minority

**Parentheses, Brackets, and Dashes, p. 253**

**Exercise A**

Answers may vary slightly.

1. Read the article (the one on page 5) about keeping dogs as pets.
2. Our school’s mascot (that’s Anne’s Newfoundland dog) won an award for bravery.
3. The dog (otherwise known as Newfie) once saved a boy from drowning.
4. Anne said, “Newfie (Anne’s dog) has always loved people.”
5. We were paddling a canoe (it feels as if it happened yesterday) the day of our big outing.
6. Nigel fell overboard (everyone was scared) and shouted for help.
7. Of everyone (children, adults, and pets) who was there, only our mascot leapt in to save Nigel.
8. Afterward Nigel said, “He (Newfie) seemed to come out of nowhere!”
9. Newfie happily chewed on his award (a rawhide chew toy) while Nigel rested.
10. Both of them (Nigel and Newfie) are doing well.

**Exercise B**

11. We found the perfect gift (Mother will love it) to give her on her birthday.
12. I can’t believe (even though I’ve seen it) that we actually found it.
13. Aren’t you surprised (I know I am) I thought of it first?
14. Let’s not tell Dad (he won’t believe it anyway) until she opens the box.
15. Can you keep a secret (it’s hard to do, I know) until next Monday?
Review A: Underlining (Italics) and Quotation Marks, p. 254

EXERCISE

1. Many Walt Disney films, such as Bambi and The Jungle Book, are back again.
2. Sometimes I listen to Ravel’s famous Boléro when I study.
3. Aunt Fran sent our family a subscription to the magazine Birds and Blooms.
4. Dad suggested, “Read the article called ‘Best Buys in Bicycle Helmets.’”
5. Byron’s long poem titled Don Juan fills an entire book!
6. “Here’s my copy of Anne of Green Gables,” said Mother.
7. USA Today covers the news of all fifty states.
8. “Did Columbus sail on the Santa María or on another ship?” asked Larry.
9. Everybody Loves Raymond was Uncle Emil’s favorite television series.
10. Kelly exclaimed, “Look, that hockey game we saw is on the cover of Sports Illustrated!”
11. Listen to this recording of The Rite of Spring.
12. “When I was a child,” said Aunt Minnie, “the U.S. flag had forty-eight stars.”
13. The episode showing tonight is “Crisis in Central City.”
14. His article, “How to Excel in Soccer,” will be published soon.
15. Who said, “It’s one thing to build castles in the air; it’s another thing to live in them?”
16. One third of my cousin’s shelf is filled with Seventeen magazines.
17. “I need two more weeks,” she said, “to finish reading them all.”
18. Poems such as Edward Lear’s “The Owl and the Pussycat” are nonsense poems.
19. When I return The Yearling, I’ll owe the library about twenty-five cents.

Review B: Apostrophes, p. 255

EXERCISE A

1. the opponent’s strategy
2. the men’s fears
3. the deer’s tracks
4. the family’s trips
5. the candidates’ victories
6. the children’s giggles
7. the poem’s lines
8. the girls’ shouts
9. the parents’ worries
10. Alaska’s population

EXERCISE B

[11] “I’m sure we’ll make A’s on our report[s]!” said Chen. [12] “We’re sure to hear oh’s and ah’s from the class, too.” [13] “You’re right,” agreed Latitia. [14] I’ll bet our scores will be in the 90’s. [15] I’m going to tell about an article I read. [16] It’s about a twelve-year-old boy who climbed Mount McKinley.”
[17] Chen asked, “Isn’t Mount McKinley North America’s highest mountain?” [18] “That’s right. It’s over 20,000 feet high! There are a lot of 0’s in that number.” [19] “My paper’s about weight lifting,” Chen responded. [20] “Of our two papers’ topics, yours is much more interesting, Latitia—no maybe’s about it!”
Review C: Hyphens, Parentheses, Brackets, and Dashes, p. 256

**EXERCISE A**

Some answers may vary, depending on the dictionary consulted for any given answer.

1. pen-cil
2. note-book
3. DND
4. prin-cipal [or princ-i-pal]
5. DND
6. DND
7. flag-pole
8. wea-ry or DND
9. con-duct
10. DND

**EXERCISE B**

Answers may vary slightly.

11. Our entire family likes to watch who doesn’t? the Olympics.
12. Do we have a blank videotape I hope so to record our favorite events?
13. Maddie commented, “Even Rex and Zippy our dog and kitten seem to like the competition.”
14. Do you think they understand I’m not sure if I always do what’s going on?
15. Rex stares with great concentration it’s so cute at the ice-skating events.
16. My dad’s favorite event and mine, too is speed skating.
17. Mom said, “My favorite event alpine skiing is scheduled for tomorrow.”
18. Addie Sue wants to join us that is, if you agree to watch tomorrow night’s games.
19. Help me move this table I know it’s heavy so we can put the television on it.
20. I have always dreamed of winning believe it or not an Olympic medal.

Review D: Punctuation Marks, p. 257

**EXERCISE A**


**EXERCISE B**

Answers may vary slightly.

11. Troy’s outstanding skills at soccer are self-taught.
12. The gift—I hope you like it—is outside on the lawn.
13. I agree with Abrams when he writes, “They the waters of the Caribbean are a scuba diver’s dream.”
14. The all-amateur cast performed with unusual talent.
15. The juice—there is orange or cranberry—is in the refrigerator.
16. Jen said, “Take this a lantern and hang it from that high branch.”
17. Booker was elected class treasurer by a four-fifths majority.
18. I’ve collected twenty-five pounds of aluminum cans for the recycling bin at school.
19. I saw my favorite actress—yes, this is a true story—in Manhattan yesterday!
20. If you divide mistletoe at the end of a line, divide it like this: mistle-toe.
Chapter 16: Spelling, pp. 258–280
Good Spelling Habits, p. 258

EXERCISE A
1. Did you watch the documentary about bats?
2. There are many different kinds of bats.
3. One expert said that photos make bats look vicious.
4. If the bat was caged, it probably was scared.
5. A scientist’s laboratory isn’t a bat’s favorite roosting place!
6. Bats prefer dark, peaceful shelters such as caves.
7. They come out after sunset to search for insects.
8. People living in cities rarely, if ever, see bats.
9. You can, however, see bats at some state parks.
10. Another option is to watch programs on television.

EXERCISE B
Word breaks may vary by dictionary.
11. a | tro | cious
12. fright | ened
13. hab | il | tat
14. re | search
15. sci | en | tist
16. in | sects
17. night | time
18. wing | span
19. fly | ing
20. beau | ti | ful

Words with ie and ei, p. 259

EXERCISE A
1. Jason is one of my neighbors.
2. Jason’s chief interest is magic tricks.
3. It all began when he received a book for his birthday.
4. Would you believe that it was about famous magicians?
5. There’s a brief story about Harry Blackstone, Jr.
6. In one mischievous trick, he seemed to turn his wife into a tiger!
7. The audience was relieved when she came out for a bow.
8. Some tricks are sleights of hand.
9. Jason tried to hide eight scarves in his sleeve.
10. He either lost one or miscounted.

EXERCISE B
Here’s something to do in your leisure time. Maybe you and a friend can start a service. It is many people’s belief that assisting others is a rewarding experience. Offer to take an elderly neighbor shopping. In the store, you may be able to reach items at a greater height than an elderly person can. You can also help this person by carrying all items of heavy weight.

Words with –cede, –ceed, and –sede, p. 260

EXERCISE A
1. exceed
2. antecedes
3. supersede
4. proceed
5. intercede
6. succeed
7. secede
8. recede
9. proceeds
10. exceed
**EXERCISE B**

11. From 1860 to 1861, eleven states announced that they would **secede** from the Union.

12. President Lincoln would not **accede** to the secession.

13. Jefferson Davis decided to **intercede** on behalf of the South.

14. The eleven Southern states would **proceed** to elect Davis their president.

15. Over the next four years, the lines of battle would advance and **recede** numerous times.

16. The great destruction caused by the war would surely **exceed** the expectations of many.

17. As you know, these Southern states did not **succeed** in their withdrawal from the Union.

18. By the end of the war, the goals of the North would **supersede** the desires of the South.

19. In 1865, the South was finally forced to **concede** victory to the North.

20. The North’s victory was decreed on April 26, 1865; the Southern states would not **secede**.

**Prefixes, p. 261**

**EXERCISE A**

1. indirect
2. dislocate
3. reopen
4. illegal
5. unsafe
6. overtake
7. unnatural
8. misstate
9. impossible
10. disservice

**EXERCISE B**

11. rewind
12. overcooking
13. Disrespect
14. misspell
15. invisible
16. discontented
17. unnerved
18. overestimated
19. recycle
20. unwind

**Suffixes A, p. 262**

**EXERCISE A**

1. beautifully
2. routinely
3. business
4. mainly
5. neatness
6. tardiness
7. urgently
8. forgetfully
9. scariness
10. shyness

**EXERCISE B**

11. creepiness
12. certainly
13. truthfully
14. particularly
15. spookiness
16. ghostliness
17. gradually
18. actually
19. wildness
20. storminess

**Suffixes B, p. 263**

**EXERCISE A**

1. shaker
2. exterminator
3. sedately
4. admirable
5. arguing
6. sorely
7. broken
8. freezing
9. retirement
10. advantageous

**EXERCISE B**

[11] The **remoteness** of our camping site did not stop us. [12] We would not give in to a little discouragement. [13] The **unique** opportunity appealed to us, and we welcomed it. [14] We had packed all the camping gear that had been stored in our basements, including tents, shovels, an **inflatable** mattress, and a few crates of supplies such as ropes, matches, and canned food. [15] The trip was so **amazing**, we’re already planning the next camping trip.
Suffixes C, p. 264

**Exercise A**
1. scariness
2. marrying
3. coyness
4. inlaid
5. dirtiness
6. contrariness
7. scurrying
8. employable
9. spraying
10. deployable

**Exercise B**
11. Who is that stranger?
12. The children’s enjoyment of his story pleased Miguel.
13. Janesha said that she’d be here by noon.
14. Luther is repaying me by teaching me how to pitch a knuckle ball.
15. Have you ever read more poems than Shel Silverstein’s?
16. Alfred played the antique violin beautifully.
17. Kendra is trying to memorize her lines for the play.
18. “The winds are variable,” stated the weather announcer.
19. Is Tara envious of Tina’s awards?
20. We will be complying with the fire code by placing fire extinguishers in the building.

Suffixes D, p. 265

**Exercise A**
1. winner
2. fastest
3. drummer
4. matted
5. molding
6. repaired
7. mopping
8. runner
9. towed
10. fittest

**Exercise B**
11. centered
12. mapped
13. gilded
14. relaxing
15. treating
16. petted
17. mower
18. snapping
19. reddest
20. knitting

Suffixes Review, p. 266

**Exercise A**
1. fascinating
2. approximately
3. Spectators
4. excitement
5. curved
6. strapped
7. serving
8. Quickly
9. truly
10. enviable

**Exercise B**
11. The inventiveness of Jerry’s idea appealed to me.
12. Before dark, we worked on the placement of the tent.
13. Next, Jerry built a ring of rocks and some logs, and Jerry’s father built a fire for us.
14. We finished raking and cleaned up the site.
15. Then we sat beneath the beautiful moon and played our guitars.

Plurals of Nouns A, p. 267

**Exercise A**
1. branches
2. crayons
3. monkeys
4. mixes
5. countries
6. buzzes
7. desks
8. ladies
9. turkeys
10. crushes

**Exercise B**
11. Samantha likes to paint old churches.
12. She uses delicate brush strokes to create realistic details.
13. Some of her paintings have a dark, gothic tone.
14. For instance, she painted angels on the roof of one church.
15. She has also developed ways of creating a soft, peaceful tone.
16. Creating beautiful works, she said, helps relieve her worries and stress.
17. She uses different brushes to achieve different effects.

18. She also arranges the draperies in her studio so that the perfect amount of light enters.

19. Samantha's future involves no uncertainties or guesses.

20. She plans to take art courses in college and later open a gallery.

**Plurals of Nouns B, p. 268**

**Exercise A**

1. elves
2. rodeos
3. studios
4. leaves
5. roofs
6. potatoes
7. calves
8. igloos
9. wives
10. pianos

**Exercise B**

11. tomatoes
12. knives
13. themselves
14. shelves
15. Torpedoes
16. bluffs
17. videos
18. reefs
19. heroes
20. radios

**Plurals of Nouns C, p. 269**

**Exercise A**

1. children
2. mothers-in-law
3. bookcases
4. men
5. backpacks
6. oxen
7. seashells
8. racks of lamb
9. love seats
10. women

**Exercise B**

11. The children will eat earlier in the evening than the adults.
12. I really enjoy spending time with my two brothers-in-law.
13. The three mice headed in three different directions when the cat showed up.

**Plurals of Nouns D, p. 270**

**Exercise A**

1. 1950's
2. Z's
3. *'s
4. goodbye's
5. Vietnamese
6. #'
7. sheep
8. thank you's
9. Sioux
10. moose

**Exercise B**

11. I gasped when I saw how many 0's were on the price tag.
12. You have accidentally typed two in a row in this sentence.
13. When do the salmon swim upstream?
14. The play takes place sometime in the late 1600's.
15. Are @ used in e-mail addresses?
16. Several sheep are grazing in the farmyard.
17. Some people draw a line through their 2's.
18. They do this to distinguish them from 2's.
19. When giving a speech, try to eliminate all um's.
20. The Sioux make their home in the northern United States and southern Canada.

Plurals of Nouns Review, p. 271

EXERCISE A
1. tables
2. watches
3. cranberries
4. journeys
5. beliefs
6. sheaves
7. patios
8. vetoes
9. sopranos
10. women
11. editors in chief
12. spacecraft
13. salmon
14. ‘X’s
15. ‘@’s
16. ‘and’ s
17. four-wheelers
18. knives
19. waxes
20. mosses

EXERCISE B

[21] I don’t know any other fourteen–year–olds who can draw as well as Alvin. [22] He has several sketchbooks full of watercolors and pen–and–ink drawings. [23] His moose and oxen are especially realistic, but I prefer his landscapes and seascapes. [24] Alvin also makes drawings using nothing but #’s and &’s. [25] If I could draw as well as Alvin does, I’d spend my weekends sitting on park benches with a sketch pad in my hand.

Words Often Confused A, p. 272

EXERCISE
1. affect
2. already
3. advice
4. all ready
5. affects
6. alter
7. advise
8. all together
9. effects
10. all right
11. brake
12. accept
13. altogether
14. all ready
15. except
16. all right
17. altar
18. break
19. except
20. effect

Words Often Confused B, p. 273

EXERCISE A
1. course
2. course
3. council
4. capital
5. counselor
6. choose
7. desert
8. capitol
9. compliment
10. cloths

EXERCISE B

Answers may vary slightly.

11. clothes
12. coarse
13. counsel [or desert]
14. complements
15. councilors
16. chose
17. capital
18. desert
19. compliment
20. course

Words Often Confused C, p. 274

EXERCISE A
1. piece
2. hear
3. it’s
4. lose
5. led
6. formally
7. passed
8. loose
9. its
10. lead

EXERCISE B

Sentences will vary.

11. Have you found the missing (peace, piece) of that model train? I wish the entire world would be at peace.

12. This new restaurant was (formally, formerly) a dry cleaner’s store. The actors in that play spoke very formally.

13. (Lead, Led) is a chemical often used in batteries. I led Mary to the new store at the mall.

14. This tree shed (its, it’s) leaves later than the others did. It’s a shame you can’t come to the party Friday!

15. If you move your bed over (hear, here), you’ll have more floor space. Turn up the volume so I can hear what they’re saying.
Words Often Confused D, p. 275

**EXERCISE A**

1. quite  
2. shown  
3. stationery  
4. there  
5. plain  
6. then  
7. quiet  
8. principal  
9. plane  
10. shone

**EXERCISE B**

Some answers may vary.

11. shown  
12. quite  
13. plane  
14. quiet  
15. principle  
16. they’re  
17. than  
18. plain  
19. shone  
20. stationary

Words Often Confused E, p. 276

**EXERCISE A**

1. weak  
2. waist  
3. threw  
4. whether  
5. Whose  
6. two  
7. week  
8. through  
9. week  
10. too

**EXERCISE B**

Sentences will vary.

11. My mom always says, “(Waist, Waste) not, want not.” The instructor said, “Bend at the waist, and touch your toes.”

12. Will the recycling drive last all (weak, week)? Jim was so hungry that he felt weak.

13. Do you know the way (to, too) Jared’s house? Maria had a stomach ache from eating too much popcorn.

14. Which is (your, you’re) favorite subject in school? You’re the best player on the team!

15. Loretta (threw, through) out some bread crumbs for the birds. I watched through the window to see whether the birds ate the bread crumbs.

Review A: Spelling Rules, p. 277

**EXERCISE A**

1. rewrite  
2. unhealthy  
3. overturn  
4. immature  
5. misinform  
6. vetoes  
7. wolves  
8. boxes  
9. 10’s  
10. men

**EXERCISE B**

Some answers may vary.

11. In all fairness, the judge will hear the case.

12. Much to our astonishment, Manfred won a trophy!

13. Finally, the team has a chance for first place.


15. When did Henry VIII reign over England?

16. Who owns that adorable little kitten?

17. My cousin’s directions were worthless, so we got lost.

18. The clock in the hall chimes hourly.

19. What business do you have at the bank?

20. Aunt Thelma won the achievement award.

Review B: Words Often Confused, p. 278

**EXERCISE A**

1. capitol  
2. advice  
3. quite  
4. all ready  
5. piece  
6. weak  
7. plane  
8. hear  
9. course  
10. affect
Grammar, Usage, and Mechanics: Language Skills Practice Answer Key

EXERCISE B
11. principal
12. altogether
13. accepts
14. affects
15. course
16. their
17. past
18. alter
19. loses
20. peace

Review C: Spelling Rules, p. 279
EXERCISE A
1. unreal
2. retell
3. insecure
4. misspell
5. overrun
6. hoofs [or hooves]
7. deer
8. women
9. foxes
10. C’s

EXERCISE B
11. children
12. engagement
13. formally
14. joyous
15. happiness
16. veil
17. receive
18. succeed
19. precede
20. friends

Review D: Words Often Confused and Spelling Rules, p. 280
EXERCISE A
1. clothes
2. principles
3. whether
4. quite
5. passed
6. break
7. advice
8. It’s
9. peace
10. coarse

EXERCISE B
11. Most of us probably believe that food is one of the greatest subjects!
12. There’s no denying that wheat and barley were the leading grains in ancient Egypt.
13. The rich land in the Nile Valley allowed the Egyptians to succeed in farming.
14. Olives, raw beans, and figs were often included in Roman dishes long ago.
15. The daily diet of many Romans also included a cereal mixture called polenta.
16. Spices were extremely popular during the Middle Ages and the Renaissance.
17. Ships from the New World hauled potatoes to Europe.
18. To me, the strangest thing is that potatoes were not known in Europe before then.
19. The beginning of canned food is not unnoted in history books.
20. Truthfully, canned food was developed in the 1800’s; the can opener came later.
Chapter 17: Correcting Common Errors, pp. 281–315

Sentence Fragments and Run-on Sentences A, p. 281

**EXERCISE**

1. SF  
2. S  
3. RO  
4. SF  
5. S  
6. SF  
7. S  
8. RO  
9. SF  
10. SF  
11. RO  
12. S  
13. SF  
14. SF  
15. SF  
16. RO  
17. SF  
18. RO  
19. SF  
20. S

Sentence Fragments and Run-on Sentences B, p. 282

**EXERCISE A**

*Sentences will vary.*

1. I go to all the games at the school because I enjoy sports of any kind.
2. I have never played golf before.
3. Coach Mabry, the other players in seventh grade, and I met today to talk about our strategy for the next game.
4. I know that walking long distances is a part of golf.
5. I like to walk on the golf course on a beautiful, sunny day.

**EXERCISE B**

*Answers will vary slightly.*

6. I carefully study interior design magazines, and I then make sketches of my own ideas.
7. One of my specialties is window treatments. This category includes drapes and blinds.
8. You can’t forget about the details. For example, candlesticks or pillows brighten a room.
9. If I had to give one piece of advice, it would be about color. Choose neutral furniture colors.
10. Then, accent the room with colorful pillows or rugs; these items are less costly to update.

Sentence Fragments and Run-on Sentences C, p. 283

**EXERCISE**

*Sentences will vary slightly.*

1. SF: Earth was formed at the same time as the sun, from materials left over from the sun’s formation.
2. RO: At first, Earth was extremely hot; it then cooled.
3. RO: Earth maintained a central core of iron and nickel, and it developed a middle layer of liquid metal and an outer crust.
4. SF: Above the crust is an atmosphere, which constantly revolves.
5. RO: Earth’s oceans appeared quickly once the planet cooled, and they have existed ever since.
6. SF: Single-celled algae, the first form of life, appeared after about 3.5 billion years.
7. SF: Some fossils are 570 million years old.
8. RO: Dinosaurs lived in the Mesozoic Era, 225 million to 65 million years ago. *Mesozoic* means “middle life.”
9. S
10. RO: The present era is the Cenozoic. *Cenozoic* means “recent life.”

Subject-Verb Agreement A, p. 284

**EXERCISE A**

1. fears  
2. are  
3. do  
4. read  
5. has  
6. dies  
7. begins  
8. have  
9. create  
10. is

**EXERCISE B**

11. Winnie Foster, in *Tuck Everlasting*, face this exact choice.
12. Winnie, while playing in the woods, finds a beautiful, clear stream of water.
13. Before she can take a drink, however, she is kidnapped by a very nice family.
14. When the Tuck family *kidnaps* Winnie, she doesn’t expect magic.

15. The spring of water, these people tell her, *is* magical.

16. A tiny sip from this spring hidden among the trees *gives* everlasting life.

17. Every one of the Tucks *are* immortal because they drank from the spring.

18. Over the years they *have* formed a definite opinion about their situation.

19. Winnie, faced by the opportunity of drinking from the spring, *makes* a surprising decision.

20. Meanwhile, a mysterious stranger *suspects* Winnie’s secret.

Subject-Verb Agreement B, p. 285

EXERCISE A

1. Not everyone nowadays *have* a personal hero.

2. Some people just *hasn’t* thought about the subject.

3. Others *have* not found an ideal hero.

4. Either people from history or someone alive today *make* a good choice for a personal hero.

5. For example, Helen Keller or Anne Frank *may* inspire people in difficult circumstances.

6. On the other hand, one of your own classmates *are* also a good candidate for a hero.

7. Have someone in your school been an “unsung hero”?

8. Each day peoples’ decisions *affect* the lives of people around them.

9. Has someone affected your life in a positive way?

10. That are the sign of a hero!

EXERCISE B

11. One of the Apollo astronauts, Neil Armstrong, *was* the first human on the moon.

12. None of the early Soviet Sputnik satellites *were designed* for a moon landing.

13. Both Orville and Wilbur Wright *was responsible* for the first airplane flight, in North Carolina in 1903.

14. Computer-created images and touch sensations is often called virtual reality.

15. Pakistan, along with Bangladesh, *was freed* from British rule in 1947.

16. Neither Dan nor Jill *know* the capital of Canada.

17. The Philippines *is an island system in the southwestern Pacific.*

18. Qatar, one of many Middle Eastern countries, *have made* use of its oil resources.

19. Gu and Thy *is planning* a party for their uncle’s visit.

20. San Salvador, the largest of El Salvador’s cities, *have suffered* from recurring earthquakes.

Pronoun-Antecedent Agreement A, p. 286

EXERCISE A

1. It is

2. his

3. its

4. their

5. its

6. her

7. its

8. his or her

9. its

10. its
Exercise B
11. Each science student is choosing their own project.
12. Both Jorge and Diana chose insect study as his or her projects.
13. C
14. Jorge, unlike Diana, plans on making art his or her major in college.
15. Jorge will make sure that the photographs in their report provide good visual support.
16. Few of the other students are as sure about their career goals.
17. C
18. Many students view the project as a way to explore his or her interests.
19. Perhaps someone in our class will realize their dream to become a scientist.
20. The idea of studying the world around me appeals to me. It would be an interesting career.

Pronoun-Antecedent Agreement B, p. 287

Exercise A
1. his or her
2. their
3. her
4. her
5. its
6. their
7. his or her
8. their
9. their
10. it

Exercise B
11. Either Lucy or Maxine will lend you her encyclopedia.
12. Birds fascinate me because they have the freedom of flight.
13. I’m sure the Wright brothers, who invented the first successful airplane, spent some of their time watching and envying birds.
14. Everyone has his or her own hobby; mine is ornithology, which is the study of birds.
15. Encyclopedias are great sources of information because they have interesting articles and accurate drawings.
16. For example, I learned that penguins are birds, but they cannot fly.
17. In her oral presentation, Janice described a bird called the shoebill stork.
18. The shoebill stork has a distinctive bill; it resembles a scoop or shovel.
19. Janice said that the bird looks clumsy and slow on land, but it is graceful in flight.
20. A few of my classmates asked Janice questions; they share my interest in birds.

Verb Forms A, p. 288

Exercise A
1. LaShonda made the honor roll again this semester. (make)
2. Bright green leaves grew after last week’s rain. (grow)
3. Yesterday I ate sushi for the first time. (eat)
4. My uncle gave me a harmonica for my last birthday. (give)
5. Maria _______ me a card for Hanukkah last week. (send)
6. Has Mr. Kung already _______ you the story about that Chinese vase? (tell)
7. The principal has _______ highly of the seventh-graders’ charity work. (speak)
8. Last weekend, my family _______ to the opera. (go)
9. Pedro has _______ in this race each year since he was nine. (run)
10. I have _______ to my senator about the issue. (write)

**EXERCISE B**

11. She is only thirteen years old, but she _______ to develop a good reputation for hair care.
12. C
13. She has _______ enough sales to buy quality scissors and other equipment.
14. She says she has _______ for a long time that she will open her own salon after high school.
15. Pamela has _______ up a strong base of knowledge about hair care.
16. She has _______ her hair in the latest fashion.
17. Last year, I _______ her advice about cutting my bangs.
18. C
19. I _______ great about the new look!
20. I gladly _______ Pamela’s reasonable charge for the haircut.

**Verb Forms B, p. 289**

**EXERCISE A**

1. heard
2. swam
3. broke
4. held
5. became
6. set
7. won
8. lost
9. taught
10. left

**EXERCISE B**

11. The dog _______ into a friendly, helpful companion.
12. Tony _______ the dog to catch tennis balls.
13. C
14. During that time, Tony _______ information about Dalmatians.
15. People _______ that Dalmatians make good guard dogs.
16. Shepherds _______ Dalmatians to help herd flocks of sheep.
17. C
18. At one time in history, Dalmatians _______ to war as war dogs.
19. I _______ that Dalmatians’ spotted coats are beautiful.
20. C

**Pronoun Forms A, p. 290**

**EXERCISE**

1. him
2. them
3. me
4. us
5. them
6. they
7. I
8. them
9. they
10. them
11. us
12. us
13. them
14. them
15. her
16. him
17. we
18. I
19. they
20. We
**Pronoun Forms B, p. 291**

**Exercise A**

| 1. her  | 4. she  | 7. me  | 10. us  |
| 2. I    | 5. us   | 8. she |
| 3. He   | 6. she  | 9. him |

**Exercise B**

11. The football players congratulated **themselves** on their victory over our rivals.
12. This secret must remain between you and **I**.
13. C
14. Karen thanked me for helping her and Kevin with the science homework.
15. Whom is the singer who performed at the awards ceremony?
16. The principal himself will cut the ribbon at the building dedication.
17. Vicky and them are going to the frozen-yogurt shop after school.
18. C
19. Danny, David, and I are going to the ball field.
20. From who did you get these beautiful flowers?

**Comparative and Superlative Forms A, p. 292**

**Exercise A**

| 1. fluffier | fluffiest |
| 2. less impressive | most impressive |
| 3. good | best |
| 4. worse | worst |
| 5. less tempting | most tempting |
| 6. saltier | saltiest |
| 7. more entertaining | most entertaining |
| 8. more childlike | most childlike |
| 9. smoother | smoothest |
| 10. kinder | kindest |

**Exercise B**

11. better
12. most tragic
13. more thoroughly
14. mildest
15. mildest

**Comparative and Superlative Forms B, p. 293**

**Exercise A**

| 1. biggest |
| 2. highest |
| 3. better |
| 4. worst |
| 5. largest |
| 6. more important |

**Exercise B**

Decreasing forms are acceptable.

11. more gently; most gently
12. more possible; most possible
13. quieter; quietest
14. curlier; curliest
15. more interesting; most interesting
16. simpler; simplest
17. funnier; funniest
18. more foolish; most foolish
19. purpler; purplest [or more purple; most purple]
20. sunnier; sunniest

**Double Comparisons and Double Negatives, p. 294**

**Exercise**

Revisions of double negatives may vary.

1. You’ll never guess who ran farther than anyone else today!
2. I’m not going to **any** movies until I save up more of my allowance.
3. This dog’s coat is the **most** dirtiest I’ve ever seen it.
4. Miguel has hardly allowed any goals in **either** of his two seasons as goalkeeper.
5. Dwayne can’t hardly wait for the tennis state semifinals.
6. Don’t buy your CDs at that store—their prices are the **most** highest in town.
7. Mr. Ali doesn’t never let a day go by without exercising.
8. Wei-Lin is much more better at painting than she is at sculpting.
9. Both my parents drink coffee, but I don’t think I’ll never like this beverage.
10. On the final day of the school year, the students were more livelier than they had been all year.
11. Cynthia hasn’t never invited me to one of her parties.
12. Nobody wasn’t surprised when Mark’s cow won first place at the livestock show.
13. My new alarm clock has the most loudest alarm you can imagine.
14. We should mix more yellow with the green to make the paint more yellower.
15. I wasn’t scarcely ready for school when my dad shouted, “Time to leave!”
16. You will never find a more cuter puppy than Freckles.
17. The officers didn’t tell no one outside the police department about the new evidence.
18. I don’t feel like eating a fish sandwich, but a salad isn’t appetizing either.
19. I’m trying to keep my room cleaner now that my friends come over more often.
20. Don’t put the keys anywhere where I can’t find them, please.

Misplaced Modifiers A, p. 295

EXERCISE A
1. I learned in 1938 that Wilder wrote the play Our Town.
2. Set in the early 1900s, I enjoyed the play’s story line.
3. The play named Grover’s Corners is about everyday events that take place in a small town.
4. Doing homework in her room each evening, George can see Emily from his window.
5. Talking to him through her window, George gets some homework help from Emily.
6. Their mothers spend their days doing housework, cooking, and caring for their families who are Mrs. Gibbs and Mrs. Webb.
7. The teenagers’ fathers go off to work each day who are a doctor and a newspaper editor.
8. The events are intended to show what life was like in the early 1900s in the play.
9. I think that everyday life is—and will be—different from the play in the early 2000s.
10. Homework, housework, and office work will, however, remain familiar to people which occupy nearly everyone’s time at some point in life.

EXERCISE B
11. From our porch, we saw geese flying south.
12. Bryan saw the Buddhist monks, wearing their robes, enter the room.
13. Brenda found her sandwich sitting at the bottom of her lunch sack.
14. Ms. Chan admired the fence, recently given a fresh coat of paint.
15. On vacation, the Nguyens saw majestic buffaloes and huge moose.

Misplaced Modifiers B, p. 296

EXERCISE
1. This story is about a dog that helps his master solve mysteries.
2. The crowd cheered for the athletes running around the track.
3. I said I would be there on Tuesday. [or On Tuesday, I said I would be there.]
4. Students whose last names begin with the letters A–F may sign up for next semester’s classes.
5. The yellow-and-black butterfly on that flower would make a good specimen.
6. The photo captured a young man, clicking his heels together playfully.
7. The joke caused a wide grin to spread across her face.
8. Meet me under the oak tree by the school.
9. I thought the kitchen, painted a warm yellow now, was much brighter than before.
10. I placed a kitchen chair on the wide front porch to watch the falling rain.

Standard Usage A, p. 297

EXERCISE A
1. could have 6. as though
2. shouldn’t 7. try to
3. This type 8. those
4. themselves 9. their
5. as 10. It’s

EXERCISE B
11. We read where there’s going to be a Thanksgiving Day parade.
12. Them candles must have been difficult to make.
13. I can understand how come people view the United States as a land of opportunity.
14. My uncle is someone who’s interested in pioneer times.
15. “Let’s try and preserve our heritage,” he always says.
16. It looks like I’ll be going to the art exhibit on Saturday.
17. After recuperating from a long illness, Mr. Dahl finally felt well again.
18. Its complex rhythms are what makes Jamaican music so fun.
19. After running in the marathon, Julia felt kind of tired.
20. Tim would rather go swimming than spend the day indoors.

Standard Usage B, p. 298

EXERCISE A
1. inside 6. way
2. really 7. used to
3. than 8. who’s
4. unless 9. your
5. who 10. That

EXERCISE B
11. Yes, I’ll let you stay out a half hour later tonight.
12. I need someone to teach me how to fix a leaky faucet.
13. I thought the lecture today was kind of interesting.
14. Pick the leaves of the herb when its blossoms have just opened.
15. How come the game is canceled?
16. Yodeling is when you sing meaningless syllables.
17. I think we should get these kinds of pepper plants to grow at home.
18. Did we have less quizzes this month than last month?
19. I hear about that actress everywhere I go.
20. Is dinner already?

Capitalization A, p. 299

EXERCISE A
1. West Tenth Street
2. a Chinese proverb
3. winter in Alaska
4. C

Original content Copyright © by Holt, Rinehart and Winston. Additions and changes to the original content are the responsibility of the instructor.
5. American Indian
6. C
7. Senator Gonzales
8. the Far East
9. a pair of Nikes
10. West Hills Hiking Club

**EXERCISE B**

11. One great proponent of nonviolent protest was Mohandas K. Gandhi in India.
12. He was also known as Mahatma, which means “great soul.”
13. In History class, we learned that Gandhi’s peaceful methods led to India’s independence from Great Britain.
14. India finally gained independence after World War II.
15. Another great leader who advocated nonviolent methods was Dr. Martin Luther King, Jr.
16. In the United States during the 1950s and 1960s, Dr. King led nonviolent protests as a part of the movement for civil rights.
17. His famous publication “Letter from Birmingham Jail” outlined his peaceful strategies.
18. In 1964, the Civil Rights Act was passed by Congress, and in the same year King won a Nobel Peace Prize.
19. C
20. The Nineteenth-century American author Henry David Thoreau described many of the same principles in his essay “Civil Disobedience.”

**Capitalization B, p. 300**

**EXERCISE A**

1. C
2. *The Hunchback of Notre Dame*
Commas A, p. 301
Optional commas are underscored.

Exercise
1. Often called the father of history, Herodotus wrote an account of the Persian invasion of ancient Greece.
2. Julius Caesar supposedly described one of his victories by simply saying, “I came, I saw, I conquered.”
3. Montezuma II, a sixteenth-century Aztec emperor, was overthrown by the Spanish conquistadors.
4. The Japanese surrender that ended World War II occurred on September 6, 1945.
5. During World War II, more than 22 million people died, and more than 34 million were wounded.
6. Aren’t red, white, and blue also the colors of the French flag?
7. In 1992, Sarajevo came under a bloody siege by Bosnian Serbs.
8. The region of Indochina includes Cambodia, Laos, Malaysia, Myanmar, Thailand, and Vietnam.
9. How excited you must be about taking vacation in Santiago, Chile!
10. Well, I’m not sure who is the prime minister of England.
11. Dear Friends, Mr. Thompson’s seventh-grade class is hosting an international food fair.
12. I’d like to ask you, Ms. Robertson, about the field trip to Gettysburg, Pennsylvania.
13. On the shelf beneath the window, you’ll find the new globe.
14. Because I enjoy water sports and bright sunshine, I want to visit Hawaii this summer.
15. Imported tea was costly in 1773, yet colonists dumped shipments of tea into the Boston harbor in protest of British taxes on tea.
16. The Seven Hills of Rome, which are on the eastern bank of the Tiber, mark the site of ancient Rome.
17. The continents of the earth are Africa, Asia, Australia, Europe, North America, and South America.
18. C
19. You can address your letter to the President of the United States, 1600 Pennsylvania Ave., Washington, D.C. 20500.
20. On May 29, 1848, Wisconsin was granted statehood.

Commas B, p. 302
Optional commas are underscored.

Exercise
1. The letter she found was dated November 16, 1950.
2. If Leilani plans to go, she will need to sign up.
3. June, July, or August will be the best month for the swim party.
4. Since Hank is not very hungry, he will eat only half a bagel.
5. In my opinion, students should decide for themselves.
6. Most salmon, which live in salt water, swim upstream and lay eggs in fresh water.
7. C
8. Noticing a misspelled word, Raymond looked up the correct spelling in his dictionary.

9. Monica was vacationing in Toronto, Canada, but she has returned.

10. Captain Martinez, who owns the ship, has been sailing for thirty years.

11. Katrina, my sister’s college roommate, is spending the holidays with my family.

12. In the back corner of a dusty toy store, I found an antique marionette.

13. The soccer players, intent on their exciting game, did not notice the storm clouds approaching.

14. Chili powder, in my opinion, should be used sparingly.

15. I’ll sweep the floor, straighten the living room, and make sandwiches if you’ll pick up Cecilia from the airport.

16. Yes, these are the baseball cards I want to trade.

17. When you hear your cue, move to center stage, Aaron.

18. Jorge, who is an animal rights supporter, volunteers at the humane society, organizes pet adoptions, and always takes in stray dogs and cats.

19. Christie, you can go bowling with your brothers, or you can go to the opera with Sandy and me.

20. The drab, boring walls of my room were transformed when I hung posters, photos, awards, and a calendar.

Semicolons and Colons, p. 303

Exercise A

1. I’ll tell Ricky, Sue, and Rao about the field trip, and you tell the others.

2. The Spanish Club will meet in front of the school at 7:15.

3. Mr. Fuentes will be there earlier; [or:] he wants to oversee the loading of the bus.

4. The field trip should be a success; [or:] last year, it went very smoothly.

5. Bring the following items: lunch money, notepad, and a hat.

6. I would love to go; however, I have conflicting plans.

7. The chaperones are these parents: Mr. Kobek, Ms. Lee, and Mrs. Dayle.

8. I have pen pals in Monterrey, Mexico; San Juan, Puerto Rico; and Buenos Aires, Argentina.

9. This article, “In Demand: Bilingual Workers,” raises some interesting points.

10. Dear Members of the Spanish Club: Prepare for a day of fun, food, and friends.

Exercise B

Dear Ms. Simiyu:

Thank you for inviting me to speak to your class; I will be there on Tuesday promptly at 10:00 A.M. I plan to speak about the following people: Marshall Taylor, an African American cyclist; Solomon Butcher, a photographer in pioneer times; and Deborah Sampson, a woman who fought (disguised as a man) in the American Revolution. Your students are welcome to ask questions about other people from history; almost everyone has a favorite historical figure. They have probably heard at least a little about Molly Bloom, Anne Frank, and Captain Cook; and I can include some information on these people. Also, I will talk about a couple of my favorite books: *Astrid Lindgren: Storyteller to the World* by Johanna Hurwitz; and *Stonewall* by Jean Fritz, which is about General “Stonewall” Jackson.

Sincerely,

C. J. LeBeaux, Head Librarian
Centerville Public Library
Quotation Marks and Other Punctuation A, p. 304

EXERCISE A
1. “Do you have permission to go tomorrow?” Kate (smiling broadly) asked him.
2. “Go where?” Tranh replied. “Is there a field trip?”
3. “You’re kidding!” Kate exclaimed. “You don’t remember.”
5. “Tomorrow is the free concert,” Kate said. “I hear there will be a didgeridoo!”
7. The didgeridoo (a hollow wind instrument) originated in Australia.
9. If you’ve never heard a didgeridoo being played, you could listen to Didgeridoo Dreamtime, a CD of music performed by Mark Atkins.
10. The two friends (Tranh and Kate) enjoyed the didgeridoo concert.

EXERCISE B
11. These talented poets—Langston Hughes, Shel Silverstein, and Jean Little—wrote about friendship.
12. I see my ex—English teacher, Ms. Sellers, going into that bookstore.
13. This poem—I don’t know who wrote it—is about unrequited love.
14. The mayor announced, “They (the winners of the Young Poetry Contest) will be announced at noon tomorrow.”
15. I read twenty-five poems before I found the one I want to write about for class.
16. A two-thirds majority of my classmates prefer humorous poems to serious ones.
17. The president—elect of our writer’s guild is Emilio Bennett.
18. These poems—they’re known as limericks—are really funny!
19. Mr. Canon said, “You’ll find ‘Stopping by Woods on a Snowy Evening’ on page fifty.”
20. He continued, “All of these (the poems by Robert Frost) are well loved by many readers.”

Quotation Marks and Other Punctuation B, p. 305

EXERCISE A
1. “Did I ever tell you about my uncle Bernie?” Tina asked.
2. “Yes, you told me about his stamp collection,” said Isaac.
3. Tina said, “No, that was my grandfather.”
4. “Oh,” said her friend, “I thought your grandfather collected baseball cards.”
5. “He collects both,” Tina said, “but Uncle Bernie works for Amnesty International.”
6. Isaac nodded; he had read about Amnesty International in the Los Angeles Times.
7. He said, “I read about it (the organization) and thought it was interesting.”
8. He continued, “You have an active family. Didn’t one of your other relatives sail on the Queen Elizabeth II?”
9. “Yes, and he wrote a book about it called Sailing with the Queen.”
10. Do you see the pun (play on words) in the book title?

EXERCISE B
11. Have you ever eaten a cheese–free pizza?
12. Here is how you should divide competition at the end of a line: com—petition [or compe—tition or competi—tion].
13. Serve each guest a one-eighth portion of the quiche.

14. “I didn’t know anything about it [the donation to the school] until we received the check,” said a happy Principal Thomas.

15. You can get two notepads for ninety-nine cents at the Corner Cupboard.

16. Chad, would you prepare the turnips—I know they’re not your favorite vegetable—for dinner?

17. Sally proclaimed, “I don’t wear anything made of that substance [leather].”

18. The automatic sprinkler system—we installed it last summer—makes yard care much easier.

19. When I was a child, I was certain my mother was all-seeing and all-knowing!

20. Casey was proud of the score of eighty-eight that he earned on the math test.

**Apostrophes, p. 306**

**EXERCISE A**

1. didn’t study
2. Brandon’s skates
3. how you write r’s
4. women’s league
5. both of the books’ titles
6. C
7. the Chavez’s house
8. you’re my best friend
9. C
10. after they’re through

**EXERCISE B**

11. It’s been missing since the neighborhood party held at the Merrills’ house.

12. Their party wasn’t that long ago—only yesterday—but Juan couldn’t help worrying.

13. He played with the neighbor’s dog as much as if it were his.

14. It’s name is Boo-Boo, which Juan at first thought was spelled with two u’s.

15. The neighbors got Boo-Boo in ’95.

16. Finally, Juan found the dog in the backyard of the Changs’, whose hedge had been trimmed and shaped to form a maze.

17. The hedge, formed in a pattern of repeating s’s, had confused the dog.

18. Juan had called out several Boo-Boo’s when the dog finally responded.

19. Juan’s face relaxed into a smile he couldn’t repress.

20. At exactly four o’clock, Boo-Boo had been found!

**All Marks of Punctuation A, p. 307**

**EXERCISE A**

Optional commas are underscored.

1. Lange, a famous photographer, decided while still a teenager to pursue photography.

2. As a teenager in Manhattan, Lange explored the city with the eyes of a photographer; she promised herself she would one day take pictures for a living.

3. What an ambitious, admirable teenager she was!

4. Lange did, in fact, become a professional photographer; she took portraits of wealthy residents of San Francisco.

5. When the Great Depression struck the country, she began photographing migrant workers for the California State Emergency Relief Administration.

6. Her goal was this: to show the inhuman housing conditions in which these people lived.
7. In a similar job for the Farm Security Administration, she photographed farmers, sharecroppers, and other poverty-stricken groups.

8. Referring to photography, Lange once said, “You go in over your head, not just up to your neck.”

9. Do you feel this passionately about anything?

10. Go to the library, bookstore, or Internet; look at some of Lange’s work in *Dorothea Lange: Photographs of a Lifetime.*

EXERCISE B  Some answers may vary.

11. Duncan had been looking forward to the party—the one at the ice rink—for days.

12. When Chris—he’s Duncan’s best friend—had invited Duncan, he’d said, “I’d love to come.”

13. “I’ll meet you there (the party location).”

14. Chris’s great-uncle and two of his aunts—they are all quite friendly—had helped plan the party.

15. Everyone (all of the seventh-grade class) would enjoy three hours’ worth of skating, eating, and having fun.

All Marks of Punctuation B, p. 308

EXERCISE A

1. There are too many very’s in your paper, “A Day in the Life of the President.”

2. *Casablanca* (check listings for show times) is highly acclaimed by critics.

3. We have new students from Topeka, Kansas, and Portland, Oregon.

4. “When you pick up Ruthie from school,” Jane said, “would you also get some sandwiches?”


6. The stories in this book (I’m almost finished reading it) have been quite entertaining.


8. I sat in one of the swings in the park, and I watched my younger brother play.

9. John Hancock (1737–1793) was the first signer of the Declaration of Independence.

10. Hanging from the strongest limb of the tree, a swing made from an old tractor tire swayed in the breeze.

EXERCISE B

11. The children’s dance class is performing for their parents’ entertainment.

12. Last week—this is so funny—twenty-five clowns skated down Main Street.

13. My cousin said, “I’ll call and tell you about it [summer camp] after I get there.”

14. I didn’t know—you’re full of surprises—that you knew how to dance the salsa.

15. Everyone’s vote counts equally in the Students’ Choice Award.

16. The award—in case you don’t know—shows appreciation for a teacher’s outstanding work.

17. Are these 3’s or 2’s? I can’t tell.

18. His mother-in-law’s decision is final—she will not sell her house this year.

19. The final exam will be all-encompassing (that means comprehensive) and will have seventy-five questions on it.

20. Someone’s car alarm is going off, and it couldn’t be louder!

Spelling A, p. 309

EXERCISE A

1. shield

2. fathers-in-law

3. chief

4. wolves

5. putting

6. C

7. heroes

8. children

9. C

10. succeed
**EXERCISE B**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>11.</th>
<th>inoperable</th>
<th>16.</th>
<th>tanned</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>12.</td>
<td>dissatisfaction</td>
<td>17.</td>
<td>beautiful</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13.</td>
<td>openness</td>
<td>18.</td>
<td>misunderstand</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14.</td>
<td>illegible</td>
<td>19.</td>
<td>impossible</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15.</td>
<td>safely</td>
<td>20.</td>
<td>argument</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Spelling B, p. 310**

**EXERCISE A**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1.</th>
<th>statehood</th>
<th>6.</th>
<th>drive-ins</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2.</td>
<td>weigh</td>
<td>7.</td>
<td>ratings</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.</td>
<td>taxes</td>
<td>8.</td>
<td>1950’s</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.</td>
<td>business</td>
<td>9.</td>
<td>leaves</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.</td>
<td>purly</td>
<td>10.</td>
<td>trainable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.</td>
<td>knives</td>
<td>11.</td>
<td>past</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.</td>
<td>succeed</td>
<td>12.</td>
<td>present</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.</td>
<td>mischievous</td>
<td>13.</td>
<td>600's</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.</td>
<td>foxes</td>
<td>14.</td>
<td>leaves</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10.</td>
<td>Joneses</td>
<td>15.</td>
<td>past</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**EXERCISE B**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>11.</th>
<th>tomatoes; peas</th>
<th>12.</th>
<th>Wednesday’s; ones</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>13.</td>
<td>moose; wolves</td>
<td>14.</td>
<td>roses; pansies</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15.</td>
<td>fairies; elves</td>
<td>16.</td>
<td>sisters-in-law; pianos</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17.</td>
<td>women; 1800’s</td>
<td>18.</td>
<td>briefs; briefcases</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19.</td>
<td>mice; bushes</td>
<td>20.</td>
<td>really’s; choices</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Words Often Confused, p. 311**

**EXERCISE**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1.</th>
<th>principle</th>
<th>11.</th>
<th>principal</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2.</td>
<td>their</td>
<td>12.</td>
<td>stationery</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.</td>
<td>whether</td>
<td>13.</td>
<td>too</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.</td>
<td>It’s</td>
<td>14.</td>
<td>your</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.</td>
<td>loose</td>
<td>15.</td>
<td>accept</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.</td>
<td>affect</td>
<td>16.</td>
<td>altogether</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.</td>
<td>advice</td>
<td>17.</td>
<td>brake</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.</td>
<td>desert</td>
<td>18.</td>
<td>coarse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.</td>
<td>capitol</td>
<td>19.</td>
<td>council</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10.</td>
<td>past</td>
<td>20.</td>
<td>loses</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**EXERCISE**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1.</th>
<th>unreal</th>
<th>6.</th>
<th>drive-ins</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2.</td>
<td>journeys</td>
<td>7.</td>
<td>ratings</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.</td>
<td>curliness</td>
<td>8.</td>
<td>approximately</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.</td>
<td>leaves</td>
<td>9.</td>
<td>1950’s</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.</td>
<td>trainable</td>
<td>10.</td>
<td>business</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**EXERCISE B**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>11.</th>
<th>unnatural</th>
<th>16.</th>
<th>intercede</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>12.</td>
<td>believe</td>
<td>17.</td>
<td>dancing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13.</td>
<td>taxes</td>
<td>18.</td>
<td>envious</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14.</td>
<td>supersede</td>
<td>19.</td>
<td>tapping</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15.</td>
<td>openness</td>
<td>20.</td>
<td>argument</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16.</td>
<td>employable</td>
<td>60.</td>
<td>succeed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17.</td>
<td>admirable</td>
<td>61.</td>
<td>succeed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18.</td>
<td>chief</td>
<td>62.</td>
<td>weight</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19.</td>
<td>formally</td>
<td>63.</td>
<td>weight</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20.</td>
<td>loneliness</td>
<td>64.</td>
<td>weight</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Spelling and Words Often Confused, p. 312**

**EXERCISE A**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1.</th>
<th>unreal</th>
<th>6.</th>
<th>drive-ins</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2.</td>
<td>journeys</td>
<td>7.</td>
<td>ratings</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.</td>
<td>curliness</td>
<td>8.</td>
<td>approximately</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.</td>
<td>leaves</td>
<td>9.</td>
<td>1950’s</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.</td>
<td>trainable</td>
<td>10.</td>
<td>business</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**EXERCISE B**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>11.</th>
<th>unnatural</th>
<th>16.</th>
<th>intercede</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>12.</td>
<td>believe</td>
<td>17.</td>
<td>dancing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13.</td>
<td>taxes</td>
<td>18.</td>
<td>envious</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14.</td>
<td>supersede</td>
<td>19.</td>
<td>tapping</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15.</td>
<td>openness</td>
<td>20.</td>
<td>argument</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16.</td>
<td>employable</td>
<td>60.</td>
<td>succeed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17.</td>
<td>admirable</td>
<td>61.</td>
<td>succeed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18.</td>
<td>chief</td>
<td>62.</td>
<td>weight</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19.</td>
<td>formally</td>
<td>63.</td>
<td>weight</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20.</td>
<td>loneliness</td>
<td>64.</td>
<td>weight</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Review A: Standard Usage, p. 313

**EXERCISE A** Some answers will vary slightly.

1. The bird had a red crest on its head.
2. After wiping the tables, I swept the floor so that the diner would be ready to open.
3. Our football team is going to the conference playoffs.
4. Hot and fluffy from the oven, the delicious muffin filled with raisins.
5. The candle sits on the nightstand that smells of berries.
6. Either Sarah or Lisa will share their book with you, but please bring your own book tomorrow.
7. The pages are the ones I wanted you to read with the corners folded over.
8. We planned a theme for the Valentine's Day dance: it was "famous couples from literature."
9. Mr. McKay said that we volunteers are needed in the red tent.
10. All members of the debate team is expected to attend the practice session.

**EXERCISE B**

11. These jeans must have shrunk in the dryer.
12. Which of these four movies was most interesting?
13. In this fog I can hardly see the road before us.
14. Mr. McKay said that us volunteers are needed in the red tent.
15. Hockey practice today was the most longest it's ever been.
16. Which are warmer: wool coats, leather coats, or down-filled coats?

17. It is more rapid to write your paper on a computer than by hand.
18. Several eggs bursted when the carton fell to the ground.
19. The author of the lead story in the school newspaper is her.
20. I don’t remember nothing about the rules for playing solitaire. [or I don’t remember nothing about the rules for playing solitaire.]

Review B: Mechanics, p. 314

**EXERCISE A** Optional commas are underscored.

1. Have you ever read O. Henry’s story “The Gift Of The Magi”?
2. The ingredients are as follows: peanut butter, jelly, bread, and bananas.
3. Look out for the angry wasp!
4. Which street do you live on, JoEllen?
5. “I can offer you iced tea,” said our hostess, “Or I can offer you lemonade.”
6. My Mom works at Arlington Memorial Hospital.
7. Answer the first twenty-five questions in the third chapter of your History book.
8. I called Travis, Sela, and Gordon, but none of them were home.
9. One of my favorite books is Something Wicked This Way Comes by Ray Bradbury.
10. The calligraphy teacher’s instructions are to practice writing A’s, B’s, and C’s.

**EXERCISE B**

11. peace
12. truly
13. their
14. facilities
15. all ready
16. padded
17. shown
18. sleds
19. formerly
20. careful
Review C: Standard Usage and Mechanics, p. 315

EXERCISE A Some answers will vary slightly.

1. I watered the lawn before leaving for school, because the weather report said that the sun would be hot today.
2. Neither Frederick nor Heidi know when the package arrived.
3. Making a chain out of the paper clips in his desk.
4. Each of the gymnasts performed their routine for the coach.
5. Hidden in the bottom of a large red toolbox, Jamie finally found the pliers.
6. Someone rang the doorbell, and Felicity hurried to the door.
7. Shelby, Carrie, and I are playing miniature golf on Saturday.
8. Natasha asked Jamud why he decided against running for class treasurer.
9. Since the mail carrier had already delivered mail to the large yellow house.
10. Valued for their friendly personality, the golden retriever makes a good pet.

EXERCISE B Optional commas are underscored.

11. the teachers’ meeting included some announcements from the principal.
13. For everyone’s comfort, this is a smoke-free establishment.
15. The donations from my family are these: Ben’s skates, mom’s winter coat, and dad’s extra basketball.
16. the marching band put on a quiet show; the crowd loved the new routines.
17. Someday I plan to visit Paris, France; Rome, Italy; and London, England.
18. These boxes weigh too much; please help me lift each of them, Rodney.
19. Meet me at 7:30 in front of the school, and I’ll help you memorize Genesis 1:1–10.
20. For my report on coral reefs, I’m using a book called Underwater Life and an article titled “Coral in tropical seas.”